

---

---

# The Emulated Ensemble

Real-Time Simulation of Musical Instruments using  
Finite-Difference Time-Domain Methods

---

---

Ph.D. Dissertation  
Silvin Willemsen

Dissertation submitted July 26, 2021

Thesis submitted: July 26, 2021

PhD Supervisor: Prof. Stefania Serafin  
Aalborg University

PhD Committee: Assoc. Prof. Olga Timcenko  
Aalborg University

Prof. Julius O. Smith  
Stanford University

Prof. Augusto Sarti  
Politecnico di Milano

PhD Series: Technical Faculty of IT and Design, Aalborg University

Department: Department of Architecture, Design and Media Technology

ISSN: xxxx-xxxx

ISBN: xxx-xx-xxxx-xxx-x

Published by:

Aalborg University Press  
Skjernvej 4A, 2nd floor  
DK – 9220 Aalborg Ø  
Phone: +45 99407140  
[aauf@forlag.aau.dk](mailto:aauf@forlag.aau.dk)  
[forlag.aau.dk](http://forlag.aau.dk)

© Copyright: Silvin Willemsen

Printed in Denmark by Rosendahls, 2021

# Curriculum Vitae

Silvin Willemsen



Here is the CV text.

**Curriculum Vitae**

# Abstract

Over the past few decades, numerous strategies to virtualise traditional instruments have been developed. Although one could create digital musical instruments using pre-recorded samples of their real-life counterparts, the playability and interaction of the instruments will not be captured. Instead, a simulation of the underlying physics of the instrument could be created, and is much more flexible to player interaction. This *physical model* will allow a musician to be much more expressive when playing the digital instrument than if static samples were to be used. Using ad hoc hardware to control the simulation could potentially make the simulated instrument feel identical to the original.

Applications of physical modelling for musical instruments include simulating instruments that are unplayable as they are too rare or vulnerable. A model of the underlying physics of the instrument could potentially resurrect the instrument making it available to the public again. Furthermore, as a simulation is not restricted by the laws of physics, one could extend the possibilities of the original instrument. Properties such as the material or geometry of an instrument could be dynamically changed which broadens the range of expression of the musician. One could even imagine physically impossible musical instruments which still exhibit a natural sound due to the underlying models.

In this project, finite-difference time-domain FDTD methods have been chosen, as they have an advantage in terms of generality and flexibility regarding the systems they can model. A drawback of these methods is that they are quite computationally expensive, and although many highly accurate models based on these methods have existed for years, the computing power to run them in real time has only recently become available. The main challenge is thus to run the simulations in real time to allow for proper player interaction.

This work presents the development and real-time implementation of various physical models of traditional musical instruments based on FDTD methods. These instruments include the trombone, the violin and more obscure instruments such as the hurdy gurdy and the tromba marina. Furthermore, a novel method is presented that paves the way for dynamic FDTD-based

## Abstract

musical instrument simulations allowing for physically impossible instrument manipulations. Finally, this work doubles as an aid for beginners in the field of musical instrument simulations based on FDTD methods, and aims to provide a low-entry-level explanation of the literature and theory that the physical models are based on.

# Resumé

I løbet af de sidste årtier, er der blevet udviklet adskillige strategier til at lave virtuelle udgaver af traditionelle musikinstrumenter. Selvom digitale musikinstrumenter baseret på traditionelle musikinstrumenter, kan skabes ved hjælp af lydoptagelser af deres virkelige modstykke, er det ofte på bekostning instrumenternes spilbarhed og interaktion. En anden strategi ville være at implementere en digital simulering af instrumentets underliggende fysik, hvilket ville give en mere fleksibel og naturlig interaktion. Denne digitale simulering, en fysisk model af instrumentet, ville gøre det muligt for en musiker at være mere udtryksfuld når han eller hun spiller på det digitale musikinstrument end med statiske lydoptagelser. Derudover, ved at bruge ad hoc hardware til at styre simuleringen, kunne man potentielt få det digitale musikinstrument til at føles identisk med originalen.

Fysisk modellering af musikinstrumenter kan også anvendes til at simulere musikinstrumenter, der er sjældne eller for sårbar til at må spilles på. Her ville en model af instrumentets underliggende fysik potentielt kunne genoplive instrumentet ved gøre det tilgængeligt og spilbart igen. Ydermere, kunne man forbedre det originale instrument, eftersom en digital simulering ikke er begrænset af fysikkens love. Egenskaber som instruments materiale eller geometri kunne dynamisk ændres og udvide musikerens udtryksmuligheder. Man kunne endda forestille sig fysisk umulige musikinstrumenter, der stadig har en naturlig klang på grund af de underliggende modelleringsprincipper.

Til dette projekt er finite-difference time-domain (FDTD) metoderne blevet valgt som modelleringssteknik, siden disse metoder er generelle og fleksible og derfor har en fordel i forhold til de forskellige typer af systemer som de kan modellere. En ulempe ved FDTD metoderne er at de er beregningstunge, og selvom der har eksisteret nøjagtige modeller baseret på disse metoder i årevis, er computer regnekraften til at køre dem i realtid først blevet tilgængelig for nyligt. Den største udfordring er derfor at køre simuleringerne i realtid og at opnå naturlig interaktion imellem udøveren og simuleringen.

Denne afhandling beskriver udviklingen og implementeringen af forskellige fysiske modeller af traditionelle musikinstrumenter baseret på FDTD metoder i realtid. Disse instrumenter inkluderer trombone, violin og mindre

## Resumé

kendte instrumenter som drejelire og tromba marina. Desuden præsenteres en ny metode, der muliggør dynamiske parametre i FDTD-baserede musikinstrumentsimuleringer og tillader instrumentmanipulationer som er umulige i den virkelige verden. Derudover, kan denne afhandling bruges som et hjælpemiddel til begyndere inden for simuleringer af musikinstrumenter, og siger mod at give en begyndervenlig forklaring af den litteratur og teori, som de fysiske modeller er baseret på.

# Preface

Starting this Ph.D. project, I did not have a background in mathematics, physics or computer science, which were three equally crucial components in creating the result of this project. After the initial steep learning curve of notation and terminology, I was surprised to find that the methods used for physical modelling are actually quite straightforward!

Of course it should take a bit of time to learn these things, but

Many concepts that seemed impossible at the beginning

I feel that the literature lacks a lot of the intuition needed for readers without a background in any of these topics. Rather, much of the literature I came across assumes that the reader has a degree in at least one of the aforementioned topics. Stefan Bilbao's seminal work *Numerical Sound Synthesis*, which is the most complete work to date describing how to physically model musical instruments using finite-difference time-domain methods says that "A strong background in digital signal processing, physics, and computer programming is essential." Even though some basic calculus knowledge is assumed to understand the concepts used in this work, a degree in any of the aforementioned topics is (hopefully) unnecessary. **Furthermore, some experience with MATLAB and C++ is assumed for the code examples**

Some working titles: *Physical Modelling for Dummies* *Physical Modelling for the faint-hearted*

Also, I came across a lot of "it can be shown that's without derivations. This is why I decided to write this work a bit more pedagogical, and perhaps more elaborate than what could be expected.

I believe that anyone with some basic skills in mathematics and programming is able to create a simulation based on physics within a short amount of time, given the right tools, which I hope that this dissertation could be.

The knowledge dissemination of this dissertation is thus not only limited to the research done and publications made over the course of the project, but also its pedagogical nature hopefully allowing future (or past) students to benefit from.

As with a musical instrument itself, a low entry level, a gentle learning curve along with a high virtuosity level is desired. Take a piano, for instance.

Most will be able to learn a simple melody — such as “Frère Jacques” — in minutes, but to become virtuous requires years of practice.

This is the way I wanted to write this dissertation: easy to understand the basic concepts, but many different aspects touched upon to allow for virtuosity. Hopefully by the end, the reader will at least grasp some highly complex concepts in the fields of mathematics, physics and computer science (which will hopefully take less time than it takes to become virtuous at playing the piano).

As Smith states in his work *Physical Audio Signal Processing* [1] “All we need is Newton”, and indeed, all Newton’s laws of motion will make their appearance in this document.

I wanted to show my learning process and (hopefully) explain topics such as *Energy Analysis*, *Stability Analysis*, etc. in a way that others lacking the same knowledge will be able to understand.

Make physical modelling more accessible to the non-physicist. Also supports reproducibility of science and lowers the entry level

*Interested in physically impossible manipulations of now-virtual instruments.*

**Could be fun to include this :)** : “I’m a musician. Will I be out of a job if you keep making physical models?” Physical modelling is not here to replace the original instruments and the musicians playing them. Instead, it can be used as a tool to understand the physics of existing instruments and possibly go beyond. Simulated instruments are not restricted by physics anymore and could provide new ways of expression for the musician.

## Acknowledgements

I would like to thank my mom..

# List of Publications

Listed below are the publications made during the PhD project, (co)authored by the PhD student. These are grouped by: the main publications, which are also included in Part VII, papers with a supervisory role, and finally, other publications from various collaborative efforts.

## Main Publications

- [A] S. Willemesen, N. Andersson, S. Serafin, and S. Bilbao, “Real-time control of large-scale modular physical models using the sensel morph,” in *Proceedings of the 16th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, 2019, pp. 275–280.
- [B] S. Willemesen, S. Bilbao, N. Andersson, and S. Serafin, “Physical models and real-time control with the sensel morph,” in *Proceedings of the 16th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, 2019, pp. 95–96.
- [C] S. Willemesen, S. Bilbao, and S. Serafin, “Real-time implementation of an elasto-plastic friction model applied to stiff strings using finite difference schemes,” in *Proceedings of the 22nd International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-19)*, 2019, pp. 40–46.
- [D] S. Willemesen, S. Serafin, S. Bilbao, and M. Duccheschi, “Real-time implementation of a physical model of the tromba marina,” in *Proceedings of the 17th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, 2020, pp. 161–168.
- [E] S. Willemesen, R. Paisa, and S. Serafin, “Resurrecting the tromba marina: A bowed virtual reality instrument using haptic feedback and accurate physical modelling,” in *Proceedings of the 17th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, 2020, pp. 300–307.
- [F] S. Willemesen, A.-S. Horvath, and M. Nascimben, “Digidrum: A haptic-based virtual reality musical instrument and a case study,” in *Proceedings of the 17th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, 2020, pp. 292–299.

## Other Publications

- [G] S. Willemsen, S. Bilbao, M. Ducceschi, and S. Serafin, "Dynamic grids for finite-difference schemes in musical instrument simulations," in *Proceedings of the 23rd International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx2020in21)*, 2021.
- [H] S. Willemsen, S. Bilbao, M. Ducceschi, and S. Serafin, "A physical model of the trombone using dynamic grids for finite-difference schemes," in *Proceedings of the 23rd International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx2020in21)*, 2021.

## Publications with a Supervisory Role

- [S1] R. S. Alecu, S. Serafin, S. Willemsen, E. Parravicini, and S. Lucato, "Embouchure interaction model for brass instruments," in *Proceedings of the 17th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, 2020, pp. 153–160.
- [S2] T. Lasickas, S. Willemsen, and S. Serafin, "Real-time implementation of the shamisen using finite difference schemes," in *Proceedings of the 18th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, 2021, pp. 100–107.
- [S3] M. G. Onofrei, S. Willemsen, and S. Serafin, "Implementing physical models in real-time using partitioned convolution: An adjustable spring reverb," in *Proceedings of the 18th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, 2021, pp. 108–114.
- [S4] M. G. Onofrei, S. Willemsen, and S. Serafin, "Real-time implementation of a friction drum inspired instrument using finite difference schemes," in *Proceedings of the 23rd International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx2020in21)*, 2021.

## Other Publications

- [O1] J. M. Hjerrild, S. Willemsen, and M. G. Christensen, "Physical models for fast estimation of guitar string, fret and plucking position," *IEEE Workshop on Applications of Signal Processing to Audio and Acoustics (WASPAA)*, pp. 155–159, 2019.
- [O2] K. Prawda, S. Willemsen, S. Serafin, and V. Välimäki, "Flexible real-time reverberation synthesis with accurate parameter control," in *Proceedings of the 23rd International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-20)*, 2020.
- [O3] M. Ducceschi, S. Bilbao, S. Willemsen, and S. Serafin, "Linearly-implicit schemes for collisions in musical acoustics based on energy quadratisation," *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America (JASA)*, vol. 149, pp. 3502–3516, 2021.

# List of Symbols

The list of symbols found below contains often-used symbols in the thesis in the context that they are normally used. Depending on the context they might carry a different meaning ( $y$  being displacement of the lip-reed in Chapter 16 but the vertical spatial coordinate for 2D systems in fx. Chapter 6). Some might also be accompanied by a subscript in the main document

Symbol	Description	Unit
$\alpha$	Fractional part of	
$A$	Cross-sectional area of string	$\text{m}^2$
$c$	Wave speed	$\text{m/s}$
$\frac{d^n}{dt^n}$	$n^{\text{th}}$ order derivative with respect to $t$	-
$\partial_t^n$	$n^{\text{th}}$ order partial derivative with respect to $t$	-
$\delta_{t+}, \delta_{t-}, \delta_t.$	Forward, backward and centred difference in time operator	-
$\delta_{x+}, \delta_{x-}, \delta_x.$	Forward, backward and centred difference in space operator	-
$\delta_{tt}$	Second order difference in time operator	-
$\delta_{xx}$	Second order difference in space operator	-
$\delta_{xxxx}$	Fourth order difference in space operator	-
$\mu_{t+}, \mu_{t-}, \mu_t.$	Forward, backward and centred average in time operator	-
$\mu_{x+}, \mu_{x-}, \mu_x.$	Forward, backward and centred average in space operator	-
$\mu_{tt}$	Second order average in time operator	-
$\mu_{xx}$	Second order average in space operator	-
$E$	Young's Modulus	$\text{Pa} (\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-2})$
$f$	Force	N
$f$	Frequency	Hz

Symbol	Description	Unit
$f_s$	Sample rate	Hz
$h$	Grid spacing	m
$H$	Membrane / Plate thickness	m
$I$	Area moment of inertia	$m^4$
$l$	Spatial index of a grid function	-
$l, m$	Spatial index of a 2D grid function	-
$L$	Length	m
$L_x$	Length in $x$ -direction (2D)	m
$L_y$	Length in $y$ -direction (2D)	m
$k$	Time step ( $= 1/f_s$ )	s
$K$	Spring coefficient	N/m
$\kappa$	Stiffness coefficient	$m^2/s$
$n$	Sample index to grid function	-
$N$	Number of points string	-
$N_x$	Number of points $x$ -direction (2D)	-
$N_y$	Number of points $y$ -direction (2D)	-
$\mathbb{N}^0$	Set of non-negative integers	-
$p$	Pressure	Pa
$r$	Radius	m
$S$	Cross-sectional area (brass)	$m^2$
$t$	Time	s
$T$	Tension	N (1D) N/m (2D)
$u$	State variable	m
$v$	Particle velocity	$m/s$
$x$	Spatial dimension	m
$y$	Spatial dimension (2D)	m
$\gamma$	Scaled wave speed	$s^{-1}$
$\lambda$	Courant number for 1D wave eq. ( $= ck/h$ )	-
$\mu$	Stiffness <b>free parameter</b>	-
$\nu$	Poisson's ratio	-
$\eta$	Relative displacement	m
$\rho$	Material density	$kg \cdot m^{-3}$

---

**Operations**

---

$\Im(\cdot)$       Imaginary part of

## Other Publications

Symbol	Description	Unit
$\Re(\cdot)$	Real part of	
$\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$	Flooring operation	
$\lceil \cdot \rceil$	Ceiling operation	

---

Subscripts
c
p
s

## Other Publications

# List of Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
1D	one-dimensional or one dimension
2D	two-dimensional or two dimensions
3D	three-dimensional
DoF	Degrees of freedom
DSP	Digital signal processing
Eq.	Equation
Eqs.	Equations
FD	Finite-difference
FDTD	Finite-difference time-domain
LSI	Linear shift-invariant
LTI	Linear time-invariant
ODE	Ordinary differential equation
PDE	Partial differential equation
VR	Virtual reality

## Other Publications

# Contents

<b>Abstract</b>	<b>v</b>
<b>Resumé</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>Preface</b>	<b>ix</b>
<b>List of Publications</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>Contents</b>	<b>xix</b>
<b>I Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Physical Modelling of Musical Instruments</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 A brief history . . . . .	4
1.2 Exciter-resonator approach . . . . .	5
1.3 Physical modelling techniques . . . . .	5
1.4 Applications of physical modelling . . . . .	8
1.5 Project objectives and main contributions . . . . .	9
1.6 Thesis outline . . . . .	11
<b>2 Introduction to Finite-Difference Time-Domain Methods</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1 Differential equations . . . . .	15
2.2 Discretisation using FDTD methods . . . . .	18
2.3 The mass-spring system . . . . .	26
2.4 The 1D wave equation . . . . .	30
<b>3 Analysis Techniques</b>	<b>43</b>
3.1 Matrices in a FDTD context . . . . .	43
3.2 Mathematical tools and product identities . . . . .	46
3.3 Frequency domain analysis . . . . .	51
3.4 Energy analysis . . . . .	56
3.5 Modal analysis . . . . .	67

3.6 Conclusion . . . . .	70
<b>II Resonators</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>4 The Stiff String</b>	<b>75</b>
4.1 Continuous time . . . . .	75
4.2 Discrete time . . . . .	78
4.3 von Neumann analysis and stability condition . . . . .	85
4.4 Energy analysis . . . . .	87
4.5 Modal analysis . . . . .	90
4.6 Implicit scheme . . . . .	91
<b>5 Acoustic Tubes</b>	<b>97</b>
5.1 Webster's equation . . . . .	97
5.2 First-order system . . . . .	109
<b>6 2D Systems</b>	<b>119</b>
6.1 PDEs and FD schemes in 2D . . . . .	119
6.2 The 2D wave equation . . . . .	121
6.3 The thin plate . . . . .	132
6.4 The stiff membrane . . . . .	140
6.5 Radial coordinates . . . . .	143
<b>III Exciters</b>	<b>145</b>
<b>7 Physically-Inspired Excitations</b>	<b>149</b>
7.1 Initial conditions . . . . .	149
7.2 Time-varying excitations . . . . .	154
<b>8 The Bow</b>	<b>157</b>
8.1 Brief history of bowed-string simulation . . . . .	158
8.2 Interpolation and spreading operators . . . . .	159
8.3 The Newton-Raphson method . . . . .	162
8.4 Static friction models . . . . .	164
8.5 Dynamic friction models . . . . .	170
8.6 Discussion and conclusion . . . . .	178
<b>9 Lip Reed</b>	<b>181</b>
9.1 Mass-spring systems revisited: Damping . . . . .	182
9.2 Continuous time . . . . .	183
9.3 Discrete time . . . . .	185
9.4 Energy analysis . . . . .	188

<b>IV Interactions</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>10 Collisions</b>	<b>197</b>
10.1 The mass – rigid barrier collision . . . . .	199
10.2 Mass-spring – string collision . . . . .	204
10.3 Two-sided collision: A connection . . . . .	209
<b>11 Connections</b>	<b>211</b>
11.1 Interpolation and spreading in 2D . . . . .	211
11.2 Connected ideal strings . . . . .	213
11.3 Rigid connection . . . . .	215
11.4 Spring connection . . . . .	220
11.5 String-plate connection . . . . .	224
<b>V Contributions</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>12 Dynamic Grid</b>	<b>235</b>
12.1 Background and motivation . . . . .	235
12.2 Summary . . . . .	237
12.3 Iterations . . . . .	241
12.4 Displacement correction implementation . . . . .	245
12.5 Analysis and experiments . . . . .	248
12.6 Discussion and conclusion . . . . .	248
<b>13 Real-Time Implementation</b>	<b>249</b>
13.1 MATLAB vs. C++ . . . . .	249
13.2 Do's and don'ts in real-time FD schemes . . . . .	250
13.3 Optimisation strategies . . . . .	253
13.4 Graphics . . . . .	253
13.5 Matrices . . . . .	255
13.6 Control . . . . .	256
13.7 Discussion and Conclusion . . . . .	256
<b>14 Large Scale Modular Physical Models</b>	<b>259</b>
14.1 Models . . . . .	259
14.2 Esraj: bowed sitar . . . . .	259
14.3 Hammered dulcimer . . . . .	260
14.4 Hurdy gurdy . . . . .	260
<b>15 Tromba Marina</b>	<b>261</b>
15.1 Summary . . . . .	261
15.2 Physical model . . . . .	263
15.3 Implementation details . . . . .	268

## Contents

<b>16 Trombone</b>	<b>273</b>
16.1 Introduction . . . . .	273
16.2 Physical model . . . . .	273
16.3 Real-Time implementation . . . . .	276
16.4 Discussion . . . . .	277
<b>VI Conclusions and Perspectives</b>	<b>279</b>
<b>17 Conclusions and Perspectives</b>	<b>281</b>
17.1 Applications . . . . .	281
17.2 Realism . . . . .	281
17.3 Dynamic grid . . . . .	282
<b>References</b>	<b>293</b>
<b>VII Papers</b>	<b>295</b>
<b>A Real-Time Control of Large-Scale Modular Physical Models using the Sensel Morph</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>B Physical Models and Real-Time Control with the Sensel Morph</b>	<b>299</b>
<b>C Real-Time Implementation of an Elasto-Plastic Friction Model applied to Stiff Strings using Finite-Difference Schemes</b>	<b>301</b>
<b>D Real-time Implementation of a Physical Model of the Tromba Marina</b>	<b>303</b>
<b>E Resurrecting the Tromba Marina: A Bowed Virtual Reality Instrument using Haptic Feedback and Accurate Physical Modelling</b>	<b>305</b>
<b>F DigiDrum: A Haptic-based Virtual Reality Musical Instrument and a Case Study</b>	<b>307</b>
<b>G Dynamic Grids for Finite-Difference Schemes in Musical Instrument Simulations</b>	<b>309</b>
<b>H A Physical Model of the Trombone using Dynamic Grids for Finite-Difference Schemes</b>	<b>311</b>
<b>VIII Appendix</b>	<b>313</b>
<b>A Paper Errata</b>	<b>315</b>

## Contents

<b>B Matrices</b>	<b>317</b>
B.1 Operations . . . . .	317
B.2 Matrix inverse . . . . .	319
B.3 Systems of linear equations . . . . .	320
B.4 Eigenvalue problems . . . . .	321
<b>C Code Snippets</b>	<b>323</b>
C.1 Mass-spring system (Section 2.3) . . . . .	323
C.2 1D wave equation (Section 2.4) . . . . .	324
C.3 2D wave equation (Section 6.2) . . . . .	325
<b>D Intuition for the Damping Terms in the Stiff String PDE</b>	<b>327</b>
<b>E Derivations</b>	<b>329</b>
E.1 Webster's update equation (Eq. (5.9)) . . . . .	329
E.2 Boundary terms Webster's equation (Eq. (5.31)) . . . . .	330
E.3 Derivatives for Newton-Raphson for the elasto-plastic friction model (Eq. (8.41)) . . . . .	331

## Contents

# Todo list

■ Find double words: using the following commented 'regular expression': . . . . .	3
■ set tocdepth back after doing capitalisation and dashes . . . . .	3
■ FULL DOC SWEEP: this work clear about referencing to the PhD project . . . . .	5
■ Maybe add table of pros and cons OR when to use which . . . . .	7
■ check all of this . . . . .	7
■ Maybe move to the introduction, or make more formal. . . . .	8
■ maybe chapters in parentheses such that the story is more fluent . . . . .	11
■ COLLISION CONNECTION (figure) . . . . .	13
■ think about references to this project/ work in this chapter that should only be focused on background . . . . .	17
■ FULL DOC SWEEP: check capitalisation of headings throughout document (DOING NOW) . . . . .	19
■ many figures for shift and FD operators . . . . .	20
■ FULL DOC SWEEP: check centred instead of centered . . . . .	21
■ these spacings are different in overleaf... . . . . .	21
■ figure here visualising operators (with reference to grid figure) . . . . .	21
■ in energy analysis, interleaved grids, etc. . . . .	22
■ move section up (stefan's comment) . . . . .	27
■ FULL DOC SWEEP: check hyphen in titles (DOING) . . . . .	30
■ unit? . . . . .	30
■ different wording in caption . . . . .	31
■ add why this is relevant? . . . . .	32
■ check whether still correct . . . . .	33
■ FULL DOC SWEEP: check straightforward or straight-forward . . . . .	33
■ look at this . . . . .	36
■ figure? . . . . .	41
■ is this how you explain it? . . . . .	44
■ check with Stefan . . . . .	47
■ will it though? . . . . .	49
■ check reference . . . . .	51

## Contents

check . . . . .	52
only the denominator of the transfer function . . . . .	53
check if the sum should indeed go until $n - 1$ and why . . . . .	59
long sentence . . . . .	64
some citation here . . . . .	67
more explanation, perhaps refer to von neumann analysis in 3.3 . . .	67
check with Stefan . . . . .	67
etc. . . . .	77
FULL DOC SWEEP: check wavespeed or wave speed (entire document)	77
insert figure showing virtual grid points somewhere in this section .	80
virtual grid points needed for freq-dep damping term.. . . . .	87
Add to appendix or refer to a gist . . . . .	89
maybe refer to chapter/section instead . . . . .	102
look at wording . . . . .	109
check whether this wording is right.. . . . .	122
check if this is still true . . . . .	126
FULL DOC SWEEP: check what equations have numbers when per- forming energy analysis (and stability for that matter) . . . . .	129
check hyphens after 'frequency' . . . . .	133
FULL DOC SWEEP: check figure alignment . . . . .	137
FULL DOC SWEEP: check for SWcomments . . . . .	139
true? . . . . .	140
look at this . . . . .	153
check references here . . . . .	164
FULL DOC SWEEP: check figure centering . . . . .	165
state the stability stuff here? . . . . .	174
check . . . . .	181
check . . . . .	239
create . . . . .	241
These sections are taken from the JASA appendix . . . . .	242
Figure with programming languages sorted by speed . . . . .	249
klopt dit? . . . . .	265
title is the exact same as [2] . . . . .	281
check whether all references are used . . . . .	283
check whether to sort references or not . . . . .	293
format the blurb . . . . .	333

# **Part I**

# **Introduction**



# Chapter 1

## Physical Modelling of Musical Instruments

At the time of writing, an uncountable number of digital musical instruments exists. This range encompasses both digital keyboards that can create sounds from various real (and non-real) instruments, as well as digital instrument plug-ins used by music producers in Digital Audio Workstations (DAWs). Many of these digital instruments are based on samples, or recordings, of their real-life counterparts, while others use computationally cheap methods to generate sounds, some inspired by physical musical instruments. The earliest sound synthesis techniques date back to the late 1950s where Max Mathews proposed a technique called wavetable synthesis [3]. Not long after, in the 1960s, efficient sinusoidal-based and filter-based sound synthesis techniques such as additive synthesis, subtractive synthesis, and FM (frequency modulation) synthesis were invented [4, 5]. The latter became widely popular through the Yamaha DX7 synthesiser created in 1983 that synthesised sounds based solely on this technique [6]. Through a simple change of variables, FM synthesis can generate sounds ranging from brass instruments to drums.

These techniques are referred to as *spectral modelling* methods, where the manipulation of sinusoids or filtering noise would produce (harmonic) sounds, that could be perceived by the listener as originating from a physical instrument. This top-down approach which starts at the perception of the listener, has advantages in terms of computational efficiency, but is quite limited by the systems it can model [7].

As computing power increased over the last few decades, using *physical models* rather than samples or spectral modelling methods gained an increased popularity. Physical modelling, in the context of sound and music, is a way to generate sound based on physical processes, including string vibrations in a guitar, air propagation in a trumpet, or even the reflections in a concert

Find double words: using the following commented 'regular expression':

set tocdepth back after doing capitalisation and dashes

hall. When compared to spectral modelling, this is a bottom-up approach that attempts to model the sound from the source.

This work focuses on simulating<sup>1</sup> traditional musical instruments using physical modelling. The interest in physically modelling traditional musical instruments is twofold: 1) sound generation, and 2) understanding of the underlying physical processes. The main focus of this PhD project has been the former. One of the reasons why one would use physical models rather than samples of the real instrument, is that a model is much more flexible to player control. Consider the violin as an example, where the performer controls the bow force, velocity and position along the string, as well as the finger determining the pitch of the string. A physical model can generate the sound in real time based on these performance parameters. If samples were to be used, every single combination of these parameters would need to be recorded in order to capture the entire instrument.<sup>2</sup> A more in-depth reasoning behind using physical models for sound generation will be given in Section 1.4.

This chapter continues by giving a brief overview of the history of physical modelling for sound synthesis.

## 1.1 A brief history

Most likely the very first example of a physically modelled musical sound is the “Bicycle Built for Two” by Kelly, Lochbaum, and Matthews in 1961<sup>3</sup>. It uses what later got known as the Kelly-Lochbaum vocal-tract model to generate a voice and was published the year thereafter [10].

The very first musical instrument simulations were based on discretisation of differential equations using *finite-difference time-domain* (FDTD) methods. These were carried out around 1970 by Hiller and Ruiz [11, 12, 13] and applied to the wave equation to simulate string sounds. The sound generation, however, was far from real-time and it took several minutes to generate only 1 second of sound. In 1983, Cadoz et al. introduced CORDIS, a real-time sound generating system based on *mass-spring networks* [14]. The first physical model of the bowed string was due to McIntyre et al. in their 1983 publication [15]. In the same year Karplus and Strong devised an extremely efficient way to generate a string sound in [16] later known as the Karplus-Strong algorithm. Based on these ideas, Smith coined the term *digital waveguides* around the late 1980s and early 1990s in [17, 18] and continued to develop the method [1]. Around

---

<sup>1</sup>The term *emulated* is only used in the title of this work (because of the alliteration), but is synonymous to *simulated* in this context.

<sup>2</sup>This was actually done in 2019 for four century-old bowed-string instruments in the Italian city of Cremona. The recordings lasted five weeks, six days a week, eight hours a day, and required the city center to be as quiet as possible to record the instruments [8, 9].

<sup>3</sup><http://ccrma.stanford.edu/~jos/wav/daisy-klm.wav>

## 1.2. Exciter-resonator approach

the same time, Adrien in [19] and later Morrison and Adrien in [20] introduced *modal synthesis*, a way to synthesise an object's sound by decomposing it into its modes of vibration.

Although more techniques have been developed in the last 20-30 years, most of the developments in the field of physical modelling for musical instruments are based on those presented in this section. Before moving on to further details about these methods in Section 1.3, a modular approach to subdivide a musical instrument will be presented.

## 1.2 Exciter-resonator approach

Nearly any musical instrument can be subdivided into a resonator component and an exciter component, both of which can be simulated individually. This modular approach to musical instruments was first introduced by Borin, De Poli and Sarti in [21] and later developed by De Poli and Rocchesso in [22] and is used to structure this work. Examples of resonator-exciter combinations are the violin and the bow, or the trumpet and the lips of the player.

A resonator is a passive system, in this project mostly assumed to be linear, and does not emit sound unless triggered by an external source. Exciters can be seen as these external sources, and generally have a nonlinear element.<sup>4</sup> Exciters insert energy into a resonator and cause it to vibrate and emit sound, and the method of excitation greatly influences the sound of the resonator. In the real world, the interaction between the exciter and the resonator is bidirectional. In other words, the exciter not only affects the state of the resonator, but the resonator affects the exciter as well. For the most part, this is also what is attempted to model in this work.

The next section will talk about various techniques that can be used to implement the resonator. Details on excitation modelling are left for Part III.

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: this  
work clear  
about refer-  
encing to the  
PhD project

## 1.3 Physical modelling techniques

The time-evolution of dynamic systems, including that of musical instruments, can be well described by partial differential equations (PDEs) [23, 2]. Examples of dynamic systems are a guitar string, a drum-membrane, or air propagation in a concert hall; three very different concepts, but all based on the same types

<sup>4</sup>The difference between linear and non-linear systems is in their response to input level or amplitude. The behaviour of linear systems does not change with the level of the input. Instead, it only scales (linearly) with the input level, i.e., an input to a linear system with twice the amplitude yields an output of twice the amplitude. The behaviour of nonlinear systems, however, does change depending on the level of the input. Although linear systems are rarely found in the real world, under low amplitude excitations most systems can still be considered linear and their nonlinear effects can be ignored.

of equations of motion. Many of these equations and other knowledge currently available on the physics of musical instruments have been collected by Fletcher and Rossing in [23]. Though these equations are very powerful, only few have a closed-form solution, and in order for them to be implemented, they need to be approximated. In the past decades, much research has been done on implementing these PDEs to model and simulate different musical instruments. Great overviews of implementation techniques are given by, for example, Vesa Välimäki et al. in [24] and Julius O. Smith in [7, 1].

The most popular physical modelling techniques that are described in this literature can be found below:

*Modal Synthesis* decomposes a system into a series of uncoupled ‘modes of vibration’ and can be seen as a physically-based additive synthesis technique. First used in a musical context by Morrison and Adrien in [20], it is a technique that is still used today due to its computational efficiency, especially when simulating higher-dimensional systems such as (two-dimensional) plates or (three-dimensional) rooms. It is especially effective when used to describe a linear system with a small number of long-resonating modes [25, 7]. When used to describe nonlinear systems, however, the modes become ‘coupled’ and the system will quickly become more computationally expensive. Recent developments using the FAUST programming language allow a 3D-mesh model of any three-dimensional object to directly be decomposed into its modes of vibration and used as a sound-generating physical model [26].

*Finite-Difference Time Domain* methods (FDTD) aim to solve PDEs by approximating them with difference equations, discretising a continuous system into grid-points in space and time. In a musical context, this technique was first used for the case of string vibration by Hiller and Ruiz in [11, 12, 13] and later by Chaigne in [27, 28]. Bilbao extensively describes this method in [2, 25]. Although computationally expensive, especially when working with higher-dimensional systems, this technique could potentially accurately model any system, whether it is linear or nonlinear, time-invariant or time-variant.

*Digital Waveguide Modelling* (or Digital Waveguides (DWGs)) is a technique that discretises wave propagation and scattering. The technique was first presented by Smith in [17, 18], and is mostly used for one-dimensional systems, such as strings and acoustic tubes and decomposes their system into travelling wave components. This technique has also been used in higher-dimensional systems, but is superior in efficiency when used in the one-dimensional case [24]. Some authors have combined DWGs with FDTD methods (such as in [29, 30]) to accurately model nonlinear behaviour while maintaining high-speed implementation.

### 1.3. Physical modelling techniques

*Mass-spring networks* can be similar in nature to FDTD methods, but treat each grid point as an individual mass connected to other masses through springs in a network. Pioneered in a musical context by Cadoz in [31, 14, 32] it is currently being further developed by Leonard and Villeneuve in a real-time, interactive environment [33, 34].

## Discussion

This work focuses on physical modelling using FDTD methods. The main advantage of these methods is that they are extremely general and flexible in terms of the types and number of systems they can model. They allow any set of PDEs to be directly numerically simulated without making any assumptions regarding travelling wave solutions or modes. Moreover, FDTD methods allow for various PDEs, fx. a violin body and four strings, to be connected in a fairly straightforward manner. DWGs, for example, assume a travelling wave solution, which makes complex nonlinear effects extremely hard to model using this technique. To use modal synthesis for modelling a PDE, it requires the system to have closed-form or analytical solution. If this is not available, (finite-element) analysis of the system could be performed to obtain the modal shapes and frequencies of the system. This in itself is very computationally expensive and requires a lot of storage if the modal data needs to be saved.

Maybe add table of pros and cons OR when to use which

The main drawback of FDTD methods is the fact that they require great attention to numerical stability of the solution [2]. For a wrong choice of parameters, the implemented system could become unstable and “explode”<sup>5</sup>. Stability analysis as well as energy analysis techniques are invaluable in the process of ensuring a stable implementation and much attention to this will be given throughout this work.

check all of this

A final drawback of using FDTD methods is that – especially for higher-dimensional systems – they are much more computationally heavy than other methods, such as DWGs or modal synthesis techniques. The bright side – if one believes in Moore’s law [35] – is that it can be assumed that computing power will continue to increase and that within several years, running high-quality simulations of musical instruments based on FDTD methods in real time, will not be an issue.

---

<sup>5</sup>I learned the hard way that one should always implement a limiter when working with real-time physical models to avoid dangerously loud sounds.

## 1.4 Applications of physical modelling

It might not be clear why one would go through all the hassle of modelling musical instruments? Could we not use a recording of the original instrument and play that back at the right moment? Or taking another step back, why not buy a real instrument and learn to play that instead? This section aims to answer those questions, by providing some applications of physical modelling for musical instrument simulations. *Very informal section, but I kinda like it*

Maybe move to the introduction, or make more formal.  
:)

### 1.4.1 Samples vs. physical modelling

Despite the existence of many techniques to simulate musical instruments mentioned in the previous section, the bulk of the currently available digital musical instruments are still based on samples. This is mainly due to the computational power needed to generate sounds as opposed to simple playback of recordings. Furthermore, digital musical instruments based on samples, have an optimally realistic sound. As the output of the digitised instrument is exactly that of the original instrument, the digital version should thus sound indistinguishable from the original.

That said, it can be argued that these are the only advantages of using samples over physical models in this context. Samples are in essence static and unable to adapt to changes in performance; the recording is made by one player with one playing style or technique, using one specific microphone to record the sample, etc. Even if one accepts this, capturing the entire interaction space of an instrument is nearly impossible. Imagine recording a violin with every single combination of bowing force, velocity, position, duration and other aspects such as vibrato, pizzicato. Even if a complete sample library could be created, this would contain an immense amount of data and take an incredible amount of time to record.

Using physical models to simulate the musical instrument instead, allows the sound to be generated on the spot based on all the aforementioned interaction parameters. One is not stuck to a single recording of the instrument and, given the right tools or controller, one can alter the sound just as one can with its real-life counterpart.

A drawback of physical models is that, in order to generate a realistic sound, a highly accurate physical description of the original instrument is needed. Apart from (potentially) taking a lot of time to develop this model and tuning its parameters, the eventual implementation will be (much) more computationally expensive than if samples were to be used. Generally, the more accurate the model is, and thus the more true the sound is to the original, the higher the computational cost becomes.

## 1.5. Project objectives and main contributions

The main trade-off between samples and physical models is thus storage versus speed, or hard-disk versus CPU. Whether one method should be used over the other depends on the situation. If efficiency is required and the lack of flexibility in the sound is not an issue, samples might be the better choice. If, on the other hand, one wants to create a full digital version of a traditional instrument that responds to player-interaction in the same way as the original instrument would, a physical model should be chosen instead.

### 1.4.2 Resurrect old or rare instruments

Many instruments exist that are too old, too rare, or too valuable to be played. Some live behind museum glass only to be looked at by visitors, never to be played again. In these cases, it might even be hard to record samples of the musical instrument. If, however, the physics (geometry and material properties) of the instrument are available, a physical model of the instrument could be created, bringing its sound back to life.

However, applications of physical modelling are not limited to old or rare instruments. Popular musical instruments also require maintenance and might need to be replaced after years of usage. A simulation of these instruments will not age, unless that is of course desired and included in the model.

### 1.4.3 Go beyond what is physically possible

As a digital simulation is not restricted by the laws of physics of the real world, this opens up a substantial amount of possibilities. Musical instrument simulations make it possible for parameters like shape, size, material properties, etc. to be dynamically changed, which is physically impossible or very hard to do. A physical model of a violin could potentially change size and ‘morph’ into a cello while the simulation is running and a player is interacting with it. New ways of interaction and expression could be devised that control the physics of the instrument, expanding the range of possibilities for the musician.

Furthermore, different instrument components can be combined to create hybrid instruments. For example, one could bow the air in a trumpet, or lip-excite a string (similar to what Smith states in [7]). This could potentially result in unique sounds that can only be created using physical models.

## 1.5 Project objectives and main contributions

This section presents several research questions and provides the main objectives and contributions of the project.

### **How can computationally expensive physical models be made playable in real-time?**

Even though physical modelling has been a popular research field in the past few decades, relatively little research has been done on making the models work in real-time, i.e., ‘playable’ [36]. Several virtual string instruments and different electric pianos have been made real-time by Pfeifle and Bader in [37, 38, 39]. The authors used field programmable gate arrays (FPGAs) for implementing models based on FDTD methods. Furthermore, Roland’s V-series use COSM (Composite Object Sound Modelling) technology [40] that implement real-time physical models in hardware instruments. In the NESS project, Stefan Bilbao and his team focused on implementing systems using FDTD methods in real-time using parallelisation techniques and the GPU [41, 42].

The biggest challenge in real-time audio applications, as opposed to those only involving graphics for example, is that the sample rate required is extremely high. As Nyquist’s sampling theory states, a sampling rate of at least 40 kHz is necessary to produce frequencies up to the human hearing limit of 20 kHz [43]. Most graphics applications are made with a temporal sample rate (mostly referred to as frames per second (FPS)) of around 60 Hz [44], which is orders of magnitude smaller than the auditory sample rate. For comparison, for a commonly used auditory sample rate of 44100 Hz, running a simulation for audio requires 735x as many iterations as if this simulation was done for graphics only.

The main objective of this work is to implement physical models using FDTD methods in real time without the need of special hardware, i.e., on a regular personal computer or laptop. The objective is not to renew the underlying models themselves, but novel combinations of existing were made to simulate relatively unknown instruments as test cases for this objective. The instruments modelled over the course of this project are the esraj (Bowed Sitar), hammered dulcimer and hurdy gurdy presented in paper [A], the tromba marina presented in paper [D] and the trombone presented in paper [H], all implemented in real time using FDTD methods. An extended summary of these papers can be found in Part V.

### **How can (the sound of) traditional instruments be extended upon?**

As mentioned in Section 1.4.3, using physical modelling to simulate real-life instruments relieves the physical limitations that the real world imposes on them. As FDTD methods are quite rigid, dynamically changing parameters while the instrument simulation is running, is a challenge. Other techniques, such as modal synthesis, are much more suitable for this, but come with the drawbacks mentioned in Section 1.3. Therefore, one of the main objectives of

## 1.6. Thesis outline

this project was to devise a method to allow parameters in musical instrument simulations based on FDTD methods to be dynamically varied.

Indeed, during this PhD project, a novel method was devised to smoothly change parameters over time, introducing this to FDTD methods. This method was published in [G] and will be elaborated on in Chapter 12.

### How can the now-virtual instruments be controlled in an expressive way?

A great challenge in musical instrument simulations is their control. In many physical instruments, one interacts immediately with the sound-creating object, such as a string on a guitar or a membrane on a drum. This allows the musician to be much more expressive than if they only used the keyboard and mouse. Expressivity, however, is not the only thing that makes an instrument interesting and enjoyable to play. The interaction with a musical instrument simulations could feel very 'dry' or unnatural as there is no haptic feedback; something present in (nearly) all physical musical instruments.

The last objective of this PhD project is thus to find ways to control the instrument simulations in an expressive way. Over the course of this PhD project, the Sensel Morph, or Sensel for short, has been used extensively [45]. The Sensel is a controller containing ca. 20,000 pressure sensors in a small area that allow for highly expressive control of the instruments. This controller has been used in papers [A], [B], [C] and [D].

Although the Sensel allows for more expressive control than a keyboard and mouse, it does not resemble any of the interaction paradigms of the original instruments. It was thus attempted to include a controller that would be more suited for controlling the musical instrument simulation and allow for a more intuitive control. For one of the projects, a virtual-reality implementation of the tromba marina is controlled by the PHANTOM Omni [46] which is a six-degrees-of-freedom haptic device. The controller contains a hand-held pen-like object that is attached to a robotic arm and can be linked to a virtual environment to provide force and vibrotactile feedback through the arm based on this environment. Paper [E] presents this project containing an evaluation and be touched upon in Chapter 15.

## 1.6 Thesis outline

**not done:** Although a collection of papers format has been used for the structure of this thesis, the introductory part to the papers has been written in a monographic style. This hybrid format

maybe chapters in parentheses such that the story is more fluent

This thesis is divided into several parts which in their turn are divided in chapters. See Figure 1.1 for a visual overview of the thesis structure.

## **Part I: Introduction**

This part introduces the field of physical modelling for musical instruments in Chapter 1, by giving a brief history of the field and providing background for the project. Furthermore, the project objectives and contributions to the field are detailed. Chapter 2 provides a thorough introduction to finite-difference time-domain methods using simple sound-generating systems as examples, after which Chapter 3 introduces several analysis techniques in a tutorial-like fashion.

## **Part II: Resonators**

The resonator component of a musical instrument, as introduced in Section 1.2, can – for most instruments – be further decomposed into more basic resonators. In order to model the violin, for example, one can decompose the entire resonator into four strings and its body. Chapter 4 presents a model for the stiff string, Chapter 5 introduces acoustic tubes that can be used to model brass instruments and Chapter 6 introduces two-dimensional systems such as membranes and plates which can be used to simulate simplified instrument bodies.

## **Part III: Exciters**

As stated in Section 1.2, the excitation greatly determines the behaviour of the resonator. This part presents various ways in which the resonators introduced in Part II can be excited. Chapter 7 introduces ‘physically inspired’ excitations, Chapter 8 introduces the bow and presents the contribution made in paper [C], and finally, Chapter 9 presents the lip reed used to excite brass instruments.

## **Part IV: Interactions**

As mentioned before, most musical instruments consist of many individual resonators, and to properly model these, their interaction must be taken into account. This part describes two different ways that the resonators can interact with each other; collisions between various resonators are presented in Chapter 10 and connections between them in Chapter 11.

The above parts are used as an introduction for the main contributions of the PhD project and – with the exception of Chapter 8 – do not contain any novelty. Much effort has been put in explaining the existing methods and models from the literature used in this project in a way that is slightly more in-depth and pedagogical than might be common for a PhD thesis (specifically Part I). It is the hope of the PhD student that going this extra mile could make this

## 1.6. Thesis outline

work (and the above parts in particular) be a contribution in itself: to put this research field into reach for beginners in the field of physical modelling for sound synthesis using FDTD methods without the need of much experience in the fields of physics, mathematics or computer science.

### Part V: Contributions

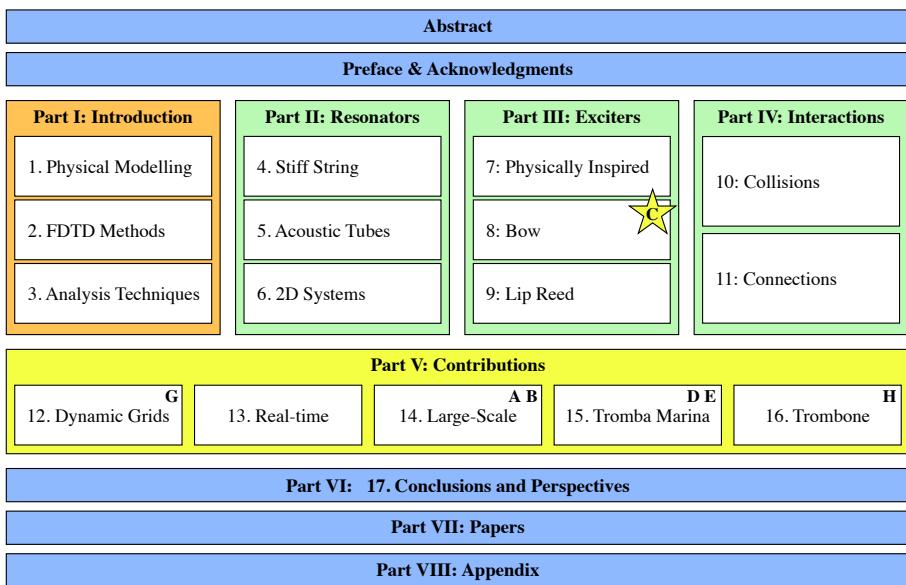
This part contains extended summaries of the main contributions of the PhD project. Chapter 12 summarises paper [G] and extends it by providing some design considerations. Chapter 13 explains the considerations necessary for real-time implementation of physical models. Chapters 14, 15 and 16, summarise papers [A], [D] and [H] respectively and extend the papers mainly with more implementation details.

### Part VI: Conclusions and Perspectives

This part concludes the thesis and puts the contributions into context of the physical modelling field. Future perspectives and possible continuations of this work are given as well.

Finally, **Part VII: Papers** contains the main publications made over the course of this PhD project and an appendix appears in **Part VIII: Appendix**.

COLLISION  
CONNEC-  
TION (figure)



**Fig. 1.1:** The outline of this thesis. The contributions made throughout the PhD project are marked in yellow. Most are collected in Part V, though the novel work done on the bow will already appear in Chapter 8. Marked in green are the parts that describe the physical models which the contributions are based on. The basics of the methods used for these models are introduced in Part I marked in orange. The chapters that can be seen as an extended summary of the papers in Part VII are indicated by the letter of the respective paper.

## Chapter 2

# Introduction to Finite-Difference Time-Domain Methods

*"Since Newton, mankind has come to realize that the laws of physics are always expressed in the language of differential equations."*  
- Steven Strogatz

This chapter introduces some important concepts needed to understand finite-difference time-domain (FDTD) methods. These techniques are what the implementation of the physical models presented later on in this document are based on. By means of a simple mass-spring system and the 1D wave equation, the notation and terminology used throughout this document will be explained. Unless denoted otherwise, the theory presented in this chapter and the notation have been taken from [2].

### 2.1 Differential equations

Differential equations are used to describe the motion of dynamic systems, including vibrations in musical instruments. In this work, these equations are used to describe, among others, the movement of a string, an instrument body and the air pressure in an acoustic tube.

A characteristic feature of these equations is that, rather than an absolute value or *state* of a system, such as displacement from the equilibrium of a string, or the pressure in a tube, the time derivative of its state – its velocity – or the second time derivative – its acceleration – is described. From this,

the absolute state of the system can then be computed. This state is usually described by the variable  $u$  which is always a function of time, i.e.,  $u = u(t)$ . If the system is distributed in space,  $u$  also becomes a function of space, i.e.,  $u = u(x, t)$ , or with two spatial dimensions,  $u = u(x, y, t)$ , etc. Though this work only describes systems of up to two spatial dimensions, one can easily extend to three dimensions [47] and potentially higher-dimensional systems. See Section 2.1.1 for more information on dimensions.

If  $u$  is univariate, and only a function of time, the differential equation that describes the motion of the system is called an *ordinary differential equation* (ODE). Various ways to describe the second derivative in time of  $u$ , or the acceleration of  $u$  are

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^2u}{dt^2} & \quad (\text{Leibniz's notation}), \\ \ddot{u} & \quad (\text{Newton's notation}), \\ D_t^2 u & \quad (\text{Euler's notation}). \end{aligned}$$

Leibniz's notation could be considered the most standard notation but is not necessarily compact. Newton's notation on the other hand allows for an ultra compact notation using dots above the function to denote time-derivatives. For this reason, Newton's notation will be used for ODEs in isolation. The drawback of this notation is that it can only be used for univariate functions. Finally, Euler's notation indicates a derivative using an operator which can be applied to a function.

If  $u$  is also a function of at least one spatial dimension, the equation of motion is called a *partial differential equation* (PDE). The literature uses different types of notation for taking (continuous-time) partial derivatives. Applied to a state variable  $u$  these can look like

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} & \quad (\text{Leibniz's notation}), \\ u_{tt} & \quad (\text{subscript notation}), \\ \partial_t^2 u & \quad (\text{Euler's notation}), \end{aligned}$$

where the subscript notation could be seen as the partial derivative counterpart to Newton's notation due to its compactness. In the remainder of this document, Euler's notation will be used for PDEs, due to their similarity to operators in discrete time (introduced in Section 2.2.2). Also, it allows for more compactness when creating bigger operators with multiple (connected) systems (see e.g. Chapter 15). Moreover, state-of-the-art literature in the field of FDTD methods for sound synthesis use this notation as well [25].

### 2.1.1 Dimensions and degrees of freedom

All objects in the physical world are three-dimensional (3D) as they have a non-zero width, length and depth. Moreover, these objects can move in these three dimensions and thus have three translational *degrees of freedom (DoF)* (the three rotational DoF are ignored here). To reduce the complexity of the models describing physical systems as well as computational complexity (computational cost), simplifications can be made to reduce both the dimensionality of the spatial distribution of a physical object as well as that of the translational DoF.

Generally, the spatial distribution of an object can be simplified if one (or more) of the dimensions are small, relative to the wavelengths of interest. A guitar string, for instance, has much greater length than its width or depth and can therefore be reduced to a one-dimensional (1D) system. If a 3D description were to be kept, the relative displacement between two locations on one cross-section along the length of the string would be taken into account. One could imagine that this displacement will always be orders of magnitude smaller than the relative displacement of two points along the string length and is thus negligible. Similarly, the thickness of a drum membrane is much smaller than its length and width and can therefore be simplified to a two-dimensional (2D) system.<sup>1</sup>

The translational DoF, on the other hand, describe now many “coordinates” a state variable includes. In much of the literature on FDTD methods in the field of musical acoustics, the state variable only has one coordinate. In most string models, for example, only the transverse displacement in one polarisation is considered (see Chapter 4) and the other polarisation as well as the longitudinal motion of the string (motion along the string length) are ignored. In other words, every point along the string can only move up and down, not side-to-side and not forward and back. Although this greatly simplifies the system at hand and reduces computational complexity, this is not what happens in reality. Nonlinear effects such as pitch glides due to tension modulation caused by high-amplitude string vibration are not present in the simplified model and have not been included in this project.

Work has been done on strings with dual (transverse) polarisation by Desvages [48] and Desvages and Bilbao [49] using FDTD methods. Models including longitudinal string vibration, where the longitudinal and transversal displacements are coupled can be found in [2, 50]. In [33], Villeneuve and Leonard present a mass-spring network where the state of every individual mass has three translational DoF. Due to these additional DoF, these networks do capture the aforementioned effects, but greatly increase the computational complexity of the models.

think about  
references to  
this project/-  
work in this  
chapter that  
should only  
be focused on  
background

<sup>1</sup>In this work, ‘1D’ and ‘2D’ will also be used to abbreviate ‘one dimension’ and ‘two dimensions’.

Although the dimensionality reduction ignores some of the physical processes, surprisingly realistic sounding models can be made despite these simplifications. Due to computational considerations, all models used in this work thus only have 1 translational DoF.

## Notation

When describing the state of a system, the spatial dimensions it is distributed over appear in the argument of the state variable. For example, the state of a 2D system with 1 translational DoF, is written as  $u(x, y, t)$ .

The translational DoF, on the other hand, determines the number of coordinates that the state variable describes. A 1D system with 3 translational DoF can thus be written as  $\mathbf{u}(x, t)$  where  $\mathbf{u}$  is a vector containing the coordinates for all three translational DoF.

### 2.1.2 Ranges of definition and domains

When modelling physical systems, one needs to provide a *range of definition* over which they are defined. For a 1D system  $u = u(x, t)$ , ranges of definition must be given for  $x$  and  $t$ . Usually, the temporal range  $t \geq 0$ , meaning that the system is defined for non-negative time.

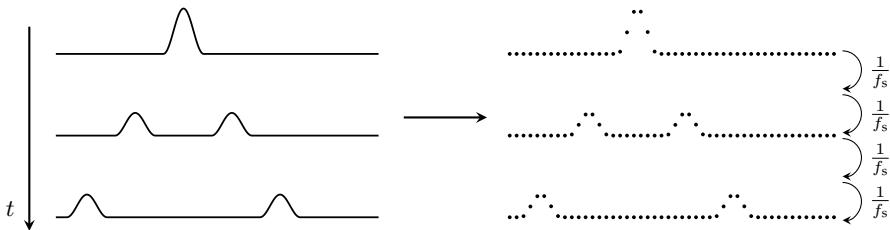
In space, the range of definition is usually referred to as a (spatial) *domain*, denoted by the symbol  $\mathcal{D}$ . Using the example above,  $x$  may be defined over  $\mathcal{D}$ , which is written as  $x \in \mathcal{D}$ . For analysis purposes, infinite domains ( $\mathcal{D} = \mathbb{R} = (-\infty, \infty)$ ) or semi-infinite domains ( $\mathcal{D} = \mathbb{R}^+ = [0, \infty)$ ) may be used, but for implementation purposes, a finite domain needs to be established. For higher dimensional systems, one needs to define higher dimensional domains. A 2D system  $u = u(x, y, t)$ , for simplicity assumed to be rectangular, may be defined over ‘horizontal domain’  $\mathcal{D}_x$  and ‘vertical domain’  $\mathcal{D}_y$ , which are both 1D domains. The system is then defined for  $(x, y) \in \mathcal{D}$  where  $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}_x \times \mathcal{D}_y$ .

## 2.2 Discretisation using FDTD methods

Differential equations are powerful tools to describe the motion of physical systems. Despite this, only few of these have a closed-form, or analytical, solution. More complex systems require methods that do not perfectly solve, but rather *approximate* the solutions to these equations. FDTD methods are the most straightforward approach to numerically approximate differential equations. These methods are considered to be among the most general and flexible techniques in terms of the systems they can model, and frankly, relatively simple to understand once some familiarity with them is obtained. The main concern with these methods is the numerical stability of the eventual

approximation. Conditions for stability can be mathematically derived and will be introduced in Section 3.3.

FDTD methods essentially subdivide a continuous differential equation into discrete points in time and space, a process called *discretisation*. Once an ODE or PDE is discretised using these methods it is now called a *finite-difference (FD) scheme* which approximates the original differential equation. See Figure 2.1. In the following, for generality and ease of explanation, a 1D system will be used, and (again) the theory and notation follows [2].



**Fig. 2.1:** A continuous PDE is discretised to a FD scheme. In a PDE, time passes continuously, whereas for a FD scheme, time passes in finite increments with a duration of the reciprocal of the sample rate  $f_s$ .

### 2.2.1 Grid functions

The first step to approximate continuous PDEs, is to define a discrete *grid* over time and space. See Figure 2.2. A system described by state  $u = u(x, t)$  defined over time  $t$  and one spatial dimension  $x$ , can be discretised to a *grid function*  $u_l^n$ . Here, integers  $l$  and  $n$  describe the spatial and temporal indices respectively, and arise from the discretisation of the continuous variables  $x$  and  $t$ , according to  $x = lh$  and  $t = nk$ . The spatial step  $h$ , also called the *grid spacing* describes the distance (in m) between two neighbouring *grid points*, and is closely related to the stability of the FD scheme. The temporal step  $k$ , or *time step*, is the time (in s) between two consecutive temporal indices and can be calculated  $k = 1/f_s$  for a sample rate  $f_s$  (in Hz). In many audio applications  $f_s = 44100$  Hz, which is the sample rate that will be used in this work (unless denoted otherwise).

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: check capitalisation of headings throughout document (DOING NOW)

As mentioned in Section 2.1.2, a 1D system needs to be defined over a temporal range of definition and one spatial domain. In discrete time,  $t \geq 0$  is discretised to  $n \in \mathbb{N}^0$ .<sup>2</sup> The spatial domain  $\mathcal{D}$  can be subdivided into  $N$  equal sections, or intervals, of length  $h$  (see Figure 2.2). The grid points describing the state of the system are placed at the edge of each interval, including the end points. The spatial range of interest then becomes  $l \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  and the

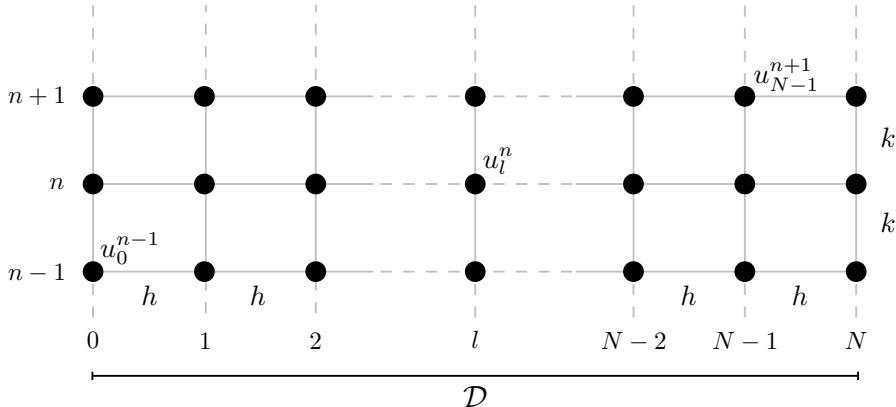
<sup>2</sup>In this work,  $\mathbb{N}^0$  is used to denote the set of non-negative integers ( $\mathbb{N}^0 = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ ).

total number of grid points is  $N + 1$ , which is one more than the number of intervals.

To summarise, for a 1D system

$$u(x, t) \approx u_l^n \quad \text{with} \quad x = lh \quad \text{and} \quad t = nk,$$

$$l \in \{0, \dots, N\} \quad \text{and} \quad n \in \mathbb{N}^0.$$



**Fig. 2.2:** The spatio-temporal grid that appears when a 1D system  $u(x, t)$  with  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  is discretised to a grid function  $u_l^n$ . The spatial domain  $\mathcal{D}$  is divided into  $N$  intervals of length  $h$  and spatial range of interest  $l = \{0, \dots, N\}$ . Time is subdivided into time steps of duration  $k$  and together with the discretised domain, forms a grid over space and time. Some grid points are labelled with the appropriate grid function.

## 2.2.2 Finite-difference operators

Now that the state variable has a discrete counterpart, this leaves the derivatives to be discretised, or approximated. We start by introducing *shift operators* that can be applied to a grid function and ‘shift’ its indexing, either temporally or spatially. Forward and backward shifts in time, together with the identity operation are

$$e_{t+}u_l^n = u_l^{n+1}, \quad e_{t-}u_l^n = u_l^{n-1}, \quad \text{and} \quad 1u_l^n = u_l^n. \quad (2.1)$$

Similarly, forward and backward shifts in space are

$$e_{x+}u_l^n = u_{l+1}^n, \quad \text{and} \quad e_{x-}u_l^n = u_{l-1}^n. \quad (2.2)$$

These shift operators are rarely used in isolation, though they do appear in energy analysis techniques detailed in Section 3.4. The operators do, however, form the basis of commonly used *finite-difference (FD) operators*. The first-order

many figures  
for shift and  
FD operators

## 2.2. Discretisation using FDTD methods

derivative in time can be discretised in three different ways. The forward, backward and centred difference operators are

$$\partial_t \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{t+} \triangleq \frac{1}{k} (e_{t+} - 1), \\ \delta_{t-} \triangleq \frac{1}{k} (1 - e_{t-}), \\ \delta_{t.} \triangleq \frac{1}{2k} (e_{t+} - e_{t-}), \end{cases} \quad (2.3a)$$

$$\partial_t \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{t+} \triangleq \frac{1}{k} (e_{t+} - 1), \\ \delta_{t-} \triangleq \frac{1}{k} (1 - e_{t-}), \\ \delta_{t.} \triangleq \frac{1}{2k} (e_{t+} - e_{t-}), \end{cases} \quad (2.3b)$$

$$\partial_t \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{t+} \triangleq \frac{1}{k} (e_{t+} - 1), \\ \delta_{t-} \triangleq \frac{1}{k} (1 - e_{t-}), \\ \delta_{t.} \triangleq \frac{1}{2k} (e_{t+} - e_{t-}), \end{cases} \quad (2.3c)$$

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: check  
centred instead  
of centered

these spacings  
are different in  
overleaf...

where “ $\triangleq$ ” means “equal to by definition”. These operators can then be applied to grid function  $u_l^n$  to get

$$\partial_t u \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{t+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{k} (u_l^{n+1} - u_l^n), \\ \delta_{t-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{k} (u_l^n - u_l^{n-1}), \\ \delta_{t.} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2k} (u_l^{n+1} - u_l^{n-1}), \end{cases} \quad (2.4a)$$

$$\partial_t u \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{t+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{k} (u_l^{n+1} - u_l^n), \\ \delta_{t-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{k} (u_l^n - u_l^{n-1}), \\ \delta_{t.} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2k} (u_l^{n+1} - u_l^{n-1}), \end{cases} \quad (2.4b)$$

$$\partial_t u \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{t+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{k} (u_l^{n+1} - u_l^n), \\ \delta_{t-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{k} (u_l^n - u_l^{n-1}), \\ \delta_{t.} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2k} (u_l^{n+1} - u_l^{n-1}), \end{cases} \quad (2.4c)$$

and all approximate the first-order time derivative of  $u$ . Note that the centred difference has a division by  $2k$  as the time difference between  $n + 1$  and  $n - 1$  is, indeed, twice the time step.

Similar operators exist for a first-order derivative in space, where the forward, backward and centred difference are

$$\partial_x \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{x+} \triangleq \frac{1}{h} (e_{x+} - 1), \\ \delta_{x-} \triangleq \frac{1}{h} (1 - e_{x-}), \\ \delta_{x.} \triangleq \frac{1}{2h} (e_{x+} - e_{x-}), \end{cases} \quad (2.5a)$$

$$\partial_x \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{x+} \triangleq \frac{1}{h} (e_{x+} - 1), \\ \delta_{x-} \triangleq \frac{1}{h} (1 - e_{x-}), \\ \delta_{x.} \triangleq \frac{1}{2h} (e_{x+} - e_{x-}), \end{cases} \quad (2.5b)$$

$$\partial_x \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{x+} \triangleq \frac{1}{h} (e_{x+} - 1), \\ \delta_{x-} \triangleq \frac{1}{h} (1 - e_{x-}), \\ \delta_{x.} \triangleq \frac{1}{2h} (e_{x+} - e_{x-}), \end{cases} \quad (2.5c)$$

figure here vi-  
sualising op-  
erators (with  
reference to  
grid figure)

and when applied to  $u_l^n$  are

$$\partial_x u \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{x+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{h} (u_{l+1}^n - u_l^n), \\ \delta_{x-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{h} (u_l^n - u_{l-1}^n), \\ \delta_{x.} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2h} (u_{l+1}^n - u_{l-1}^n). \end{cases} \quad (2.6a)$$

$$\partial_x u \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{x+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{h} (u_{l+1}^n - u_l^n), \\ \delta_{x-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{h} (u_l^n - u_{l-1}^n), \\ \delta_{x.} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2h} (u_{l+1}^n - u_{l-1}^n). \end{cases} \quad (2.6b)$$

$$\partial_x u \approx \begin{cases} \delta_{x+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{h} (u_{l+1}^n - u_l^n), \\ \delta_{x-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{h} (u_l^n - u_{l-1}^n), \\ \delta_{x.} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2h} (u_{l+1}^n - u_{l-1}^n). \end{cases} \quad (2.6c)$$

Higher-order differences can be approximated through a composition of first-order difference operators where their definitions are multiplied.<sup>3</sup> The second-order difference in time may be approximated using

$$\partial_t^2 \approx \delta_{t+} \delta_{t-} = \delta_{tt} \triangleq \frac{1}{k^2} (e_{t+} - 2 + e_{t-}), \quad (2.7)$$

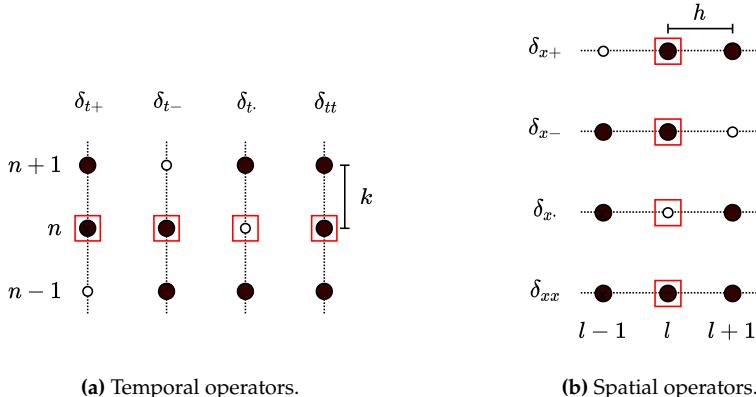
where “2” is the identity operator applied twice. This can be done similarly

<sup>3</sup>Alternatively, one could first apply one operator to a grid function, expand it, and apply the other operator to all individual grid functions in the result of the first expansion thereafter.

for the second-order difference in space

$$\partial_x^2 \cong \delta_{x+} \delta_{x-} = \delta_{xx} \triangleq \frac{1}{h^2} (e_{x+} - 2 + e_{x-}), \quad (2.8)$$

both of which can be applied to a grid function  $u_l^n$  in a similar fashion. Figure 2.3 shows the *stencils* of the operators introduced above. A stencil shows the grid points needed to perform the operation of a FD operator.



**Fig. 2.3:** The stencils of various FD operators applied to the grid point highlighted with a red square. Black grid points are used in the calculation, and white grid points are not. The averaging operators follow the same pattern.

Also useful are averaging operators, all of which approximate the identity operation. The temporal forward, backward and centred averaging operators are

$$1 \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{t+} \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (e_{t+} + 1), \\ \mu_{t-} \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (1 + e_{t-}), \\ \mu_t. \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (e_{t+} + e_{t-}). \end{cases} \quad (2.9a)$$

$$1 \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{t+} \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (e_{t+} + 1), \\ \mu_{t-} \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (1 + e_{t-}), \\ \mu_t. \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (e_{t+} + e_{t-}). \end{cases} \quad (2.9b)$$

$$1 \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{t+} \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (e_{t+} + 1), \\ \mu_{t-} \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (1 + e_{t-}), \\ \mu_t. \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (e_{t+} + e_{t-}). \end{cases} \quad (2.9c)$$

Notice how these definitions are different than the difference operators in (2.3): the terms in the parentheses are added rather than subtracted, and rather than a division by the time step  $k$  there is a division by 2. Finally, the centred averaging operator does not have an extra division by 2 as in (2.3c). Applied to  $u_l^n$ , Eqs. (2.9) become

$$u_l^n \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{t+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^{n+1} + u_l^n), \\ \mu_{t-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^n + u_l^{n-1}), \\ \mu_t. u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^{n+1} + u_l^{n-1}). \end{cases} \quad (2.10a)$$

$$u_l^n \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{t+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^{n+1} + u_l^n), \\ \mu_{t-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^n + u_l^{n-1}), \\ \mu_t. u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^{n+1} + u_l^{n-1}). \end{cases} \quad (2.10b)$$

$$u_l^n \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{t+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^{n+1} + u_l^n), \\ \mu_{t-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^n + u_l^{n-1}), \\ \mu_t. u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^{n+1} + u_l^{n-1}). \end{cases} \quad (2.10c)$$

in energy analysis, inter-leaved grids, etc.

## 2.2. Discretisation using FDTD methods

Similarly, spatial averaging operators are

$$1 \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{x+} \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (e_{x+} + 1), \\ \mu_{x-} \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (1 + e_{x-}), \end{cases} \quad (2.11a)$$

$$\mu_x \triangleq \frac{1}{2} (e_{x+} + e_{x-}), \quad (2.11b)$$

$$1 \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{x+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_{l+1}^n + u_l^n), \\ \mu_{x-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n), \\ \mu_x u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_{l+1}^n + u_{l-1}^n). \end{cases} \quad (2.12a)$$

$$u_l^n \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{x+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_{l+1}^n + u_l^n), \\ \mu_{x-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n), \\ \mu_x u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_{l+1}^n + u_{l-1}^n). \end{cases} \quad (2.12b)$$

$$u_l^n \approx \begin{cases} \mu_{x+} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_{l+1}^n + u_l^n), \\ \mu_{x-} u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n), \\ \mu_x u_l^n = \frac{1}{2} (u_{l+1}^n + u_{l-1}^n). \end{cases} \quad (2.12c)$$

Finally, using forward and backward averaging operators, second-order temporal and spatial averaging operators can be created according to

$$1 \approx \mu_{tt} = \mu_{t+} \mu_{t-} \triangleq \frac{1}{4} (e_{t+} + 2 + e_{t-}), \quad (2.13)$$

and

$$1 \approx \mu_{xx} = \mu_{x+} \mu_{x-} \triangleq \frac{1}{4} (e_{x+} + 2 + e_{x-}). \quad (2.14)$$

Operators and derivatives in 2D will be discussed in Chapter 6.

### Accuracy

As FDTD methods approximate continuous systems, the resulting solution is rarely 100% accurate. To determine the accuracy of the FD operators above, one can perform a *Taylor series analysis*. The Taylor series is an infinite sum and its expansion of a function  $f$  about a point  $a$  is defined as

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(x-a)^n}{n!} f^{(n)}(a) \quad (2.15)$$

where superscript  $(n)$  denotes the  $n^{\text{th}}$  derivative of  $f$  with respect to  $x$ . The analysis will be performed on the temporal operators in this section, but also applies to the spatial operators presented.

Using continuous function  $u = u(t)$  and following Bilbao's "slight abuse of notation" in [2], one may apply FD operators to continuous functions according to

$$\delta_{t+} u(t) = \frac{u(t+k) - u(t)}{k}. \quad (2.16)$$

Assuming that  $u$  is infinitely differentiable,  $u(t+k)$ , i.e.,  $u$  at the next time step (in continuous time), can be approximated using a Taylor series expansion of

$u$  about  $t$  according to

$$u(t+k) = u(t) + k\dot{u} + \frac{k^2}{2}\ddot{u} + \frac{k^3}{6}\dot{\ddot{u}} + \mathcal{O}(k^4). \quad (2.17)$$

Here, (following Newton's notation introduced in Section 2.1) the dot describes a single temporal derivative and  $\mathcal{O}$  includes additional terms in the expansion. The power of  $k$  in the argument of  $\mathcal{O}$  describes the order of accuracy, the higher the power of  $k$  the more accurate the approximation. Equation (2.17) can be rewritten to

$$\frac{u(t+k) - u(t)}{k} = \dot{u} + \frac{k}{2}\ddot{u} + \frac{k^2}{6}\dot{\ddot{u}} + \mathcal{O}(k^3),$$

and using Eq. (2.16) can be written to

$$\delta_{t+}u(t) = \dot{u} + \mathcal{O}(k). \quad (2.18)$$

This says that the forward difference operator approximates the continuous first order derivative with an additional error term that depends on  $k$ . As the power of  $k$  in  $\mathcal{O}$ 's argument is 1, the forward operator is first-order accurate. One can also observe that, as expected, the error gets smaller as the time step  $k$  gets smaller and indicates that higher sample rates result in more accurate simulations (through  $k = 1/f_s$ ).

One can arrive at a similar result for the backward operator. Applying Eq. (2.3b) to  $u(t)$  yields

$$\delta_{t-}u(t) = \frac{u(t) - u(t-k)}{k}. \quad (2.19)$$

One can then approximate  $u(t-k)$  by performing a Taylor series expansion of  $u$  about  $t$  according to

$$u(t-k) = u(t) + (-k)\dot{u} + \frac{(-k)^2}{2}\ddot{u} + \frac{(-k)^3}{6}\dot{\ddot{u}} + \mathcal{O}(k^4), \quad (2.20)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{u(t-k) - u(t)}{k} &= -\dot{u} + \frac{k}{2}\ddot{u} - \frac{k^2}{6}\dot{\ddot{u}} + \mathcal{O}(k^3), \\ \delta_{t-}u(t) &= \dot{u} + \mathcal{O}(k). \end{aligned} \quad (2.21)$$

Notice that the sign of  $\mathcal{O}$  does not matter.

Applying the centred operator in Eq. (2.3c) to  $u(t)$  yields

$$\delta_t.u(t) = \frac{u(t+k) - u(t-k)}{2k}, \quad (2.22)$$

indicating that to find the order of accuracy for this operator, both Eqs. (2.17) and (2.20) are needed. Subtracting these and substituting their definitions

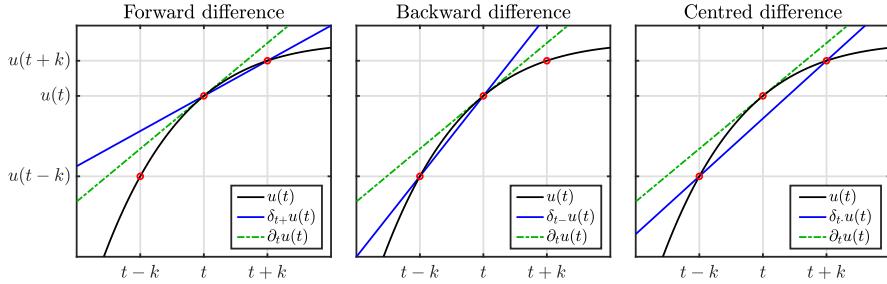
## 2.2. Discretisation using FDTD methods

yields

$$\begin{aligned} u(t+k) - u(t-k) &= 2k\dot{u} - \frac{2k^3}{6}\ddot{u} + \mathcal{O}(k^5), \\ \frac{u(t+k) - u(t-k)}{2k} &= \dot{u} + \mathcal{O}(k^2), \\ \delta_t u(t) &= \dot{u} + \mathcal{O}(k^2), \end{aligned} \quad (2.23)$$

and shows that the centred difference operator is second-order accurate.

As a first-order derivative indicates the *slope* of a function, the differences in accuracy between the above operators can be visualised as in Figure 2.4. It can be observed that the derivative approximation – the slope – of the centred operator matches much more closely the true derivative of  $u$  at  $t$ .



**Fig. 2.4:** The accuracy of the forward, backward and centred difference operators in (2.3) visualised. The centred difference operator much more closely approximates the derivative, or the slope, of  $u$  at  $t$  when compared to the forward and backward difference operators.

Higher-order differences, such as the second-order difference in time operator in Eq. (2.7) can also be applied to  $u(t)$  to get

$$\delta_{tt} u(t) = \frac{u(t+k) - 2u(t) + u(t-k)}{k^2}, \quad (2.24)$$

and can be proven to be second-order accurate by adding Eqs. (2.17) and (2.20):

$$\begin{aligned} u(t+k) + u(t-k) &= 2u(t) + k^2\ddot{u} + \mathcal{O}(k^4), \\ \frac{u(t+k) - 2u(t) + u(t-k)}{k^2} &= \ddot{u} + \mathcal{O}(k^2), \\ \delta_{tt} u(t) &= \ddot{u} + \mathcal{O}(k^2). \end{aligned} \quad (2.25)$$

The accuracy of averaging operators can be found in the same way and follow a similar pattern.

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{t+} u(t) &= u(t) + \mathcal{O}(k), & \mu_{t-} u(t) &= u(t) + \mathcal{O}(k), \\ \mu_{t.} u(t) &= u(t) + \mathcal{O}(k^2), & \mu_{tt} u(t) &= u(t) + \mathcal{O}(k^2). \end{aligned} \quad (2.26)$$

### 2.2.3 Identities

For working with FD schemes, either for implementation or analysis, it can be extremely useful to rewrite the operators presented above to equivalent versions of themselves. These are called *identities* and for future reference, some useful ones are listed below:<sup>4</sup>

$$\delta_{tt} = \frac{2}{k} (\delta_{t.} - \delta_{t-}), \quad (2.27a)$$

$$\delta_{t.} = \delta_{t+} \mu_{t-} = \delta_{t-} \mu_{t+}, \quad (2.27b)$$

$$\mu_{t\pm} = \pm \frac{k}{2} \delta_{t\pm} + 1, \quad (2.27c)$$

$$\delta_{t\pm} = \pm \frac{2}{k} (\mu_{t\pm} - 1), \quad (2.27d)$$

$$\mu_{t.} = k \delta_{t.} + e_{t-}. \quad (2.27e)$$

That these equalities hold, can easily be proven by expanding the operators defined in Section 2.2.2. Naturally, these identities also hold for spatial operators by simply substituting the ‘ $t$ ’ subscripts for ‘ $x$ ’.

## 2.3 The mass-spring system

Though a complete physical modelling field on their own (see Chapter 1), mass-spring systems are also sound-generating systems and lend themselves well to illustrating and explaining FDTD methods in practice. Starting with the continuous-time ODE, the current section follows the discretisation process to a FD scheme using the operators described in Section 2.2.2. Finally, the scheme is rewritten to an update equation that can be implemented and the output of the system is shown.

### 2.3.1 Continuous time

Using dots to indicate a temporal derivative, the ODE of a simple mass-spring system is defined as

$$M \ddot{u} = -K u, \quad (2.28)$$

where  $u = u(t)$  is the distance from the equilibrium position (in m),  $M > 0$  is the mass of the mass (in kg) and  $K \geq 0$  is the spring constant (in N/m). Equation (2.28) can be written as

$$\ddot{u} = -\omega_0^2 u, \quad (2.29)$$

---

<sup>4</sup>The  $\pm$  operators in a single equation are either all ‘+’ or all ‘-’ and are used for a more compact notation.

### 2.3. The mass-spring system

with angular frequency (in rad/s)

$$\omega_0 = \sqrt{K/M}. \quad (2.30)$$

This way of writing the mass-spring ODE is more compact and can more directly be related to the fundamental frequency  $f_0 = \omega_0/2\pi$  (in Hz) of the system.

Apart from the choices of  $K$  and  $M$ , the behaviour of the mass-spring system is determined by its *initial conditions*, being  $u(0)$  and  $\partial_t u(0)$ , i.e., the displacement and velocity of the mass at  $t = 0$ . If the initial conditions are non-zero, the path that the displacement of the mass follows over time is sinusoidal (see Figure 2.5), which is also why the mass-spring system is often referred to as the *simple harmonic oscillator*. The amplitude of the sinusoid is determined by the initial conditions, whereas the frequency is determined by  $M$  and  $K$ .

#### Intuition

The behaviour of the mass-spring system in Eq. (2.28) arises from two basic laws of physics: *Newton's second law* and *Hooke's law*.

move section up (stefan's comment)

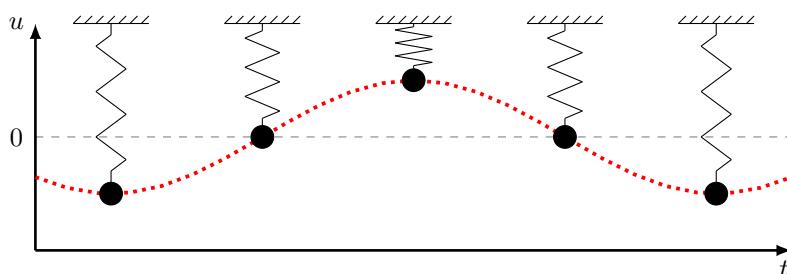
Starting with Newton's second law – *force equals mass times acceleration* – and relating this to the variables used in Eq. (2.28) yields an expression for force

$$F = M\ddot{u}. \quad (2.31)$$

This equation in isolation can be used to, for example, calculate the force necessary to accelerate a mass of  $M$  kg to  $\ddot{u}$  m/s<sup>2</sup>. Next, the force generated by the spring follows Hooke's law:

$$F = -Ku, \quad (2.32)$$

which simply states that the force generated by a spring with stiffness  $K$  is



**Fig. 2.5:** Mass-spring system over time. The system follows a harmonic (sinusoidal) motion.

negatively proportional to the value of  $u$ . In other words, the further the spring is extended (from the equilibrium  $u = 0$ ), the more force will be generated in the opposite direction. Finally, as the sole force acting on the mass is the one generated by the spring, the two expressions for the force  $F$  can be set equal to each other and yield the equation for the mass-spring system in (2.28).

The sinusoidal behaviour of the mass-spring system, or at least the fact that the mass “gets pulled back” to the equilibrium, is apparent from the minus-sign in Eq. (2.32). The frequency of the sinusoid, depends on the value of  $K$  as the “pull” happens to a higher degree for a higher spring stiffness. That the frequency of the system is also dependent on the mass  $M$  can be explained by the fact that a lighter object is more easily moved and vice versa, which is apparent from Eq. (2.31). In other words, the pull of the spring has a greater effect on the acceleration of a lighter object than a heavier one.

Finally, if  $u = 0$  there is no spring force present and the acceleration remains unchanged. This is exactly what Newton’s first law states: if the net force acting on an object is zero, its velocity will be constant. If the mass is not in motion, this means that it remains stationary. If it is, at the exact moment that  $u = 0$ , the velocity is unchanged.

### 2.3.2 Discrete time

Following the discretisation process introduced in Section 2.2, one can approximate the PDE in Eq. (2.28). The displacement of the mass is approximated using

$$u(t) \approx u^n, \quad (2.33)$$

with time  $t = nk$ , time step  $k = 1/f_s$ , sample rate  $f_s$  and temporal index and  $n \in \mathbb{N}^0$ . Note that the “grid function” does not have a subscript  $l$  as  $u$  is not distributed in space and is now simply called a *time series*.

Using the operators found in Section 2.2.2, Eq. (2.28) can be discretised as follows:

$$M\delta_{tt}u^n = -Ku^n, \quad (2.34)$$

which is the first appearance of a FD scheme in this work. Expanding the  $\delta_{tt}$  operator yields

$$\frac{M}{k^2} (u^{n+1} - 2u^n + u^{n-1}) = -Ku^n,$$

and solving for  $u^{n+1}$  results in the following recursion or *update equation*:

$$u^{n+1} = \left( 2 - \frac{Kk^2}{M} \right) u^n - u^{n-1}, \quad (2.35)$$

which can be implemented in a programming language such as MATLAB.

### 2.3.3 Implementation and output

A simple MATLAB script implementing the mass-spring system described in this section is shown in Appendix C.1. The most important part of the algorithm happens in a for-loop recursion, where update equation (2.35) is implemented. At the end of each loop, the system states are updated and prepared for the next iteration.

To be able to start the simulation of the scheme, the initial conditions given in Section 2.3.1 must be discretised at  $n = 0$ . As  $n$  is only defined for values greater than zero, the forward difference operator is used. A simple way to obtain a sinusoidal motion with an amplitude of 1, is to set the initial conditions as follows:

$$u^0 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \delta_{t+} u^0 = 0. \quad (2.36)$$

The latter equality can be expanded and solved for  $u^1$  to obtain its definition:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{k} (u^1 - u^0) &= 0, \\ \xleftarrow{u^0=1} u^1 - 1 &= 0, \\ u^1 &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

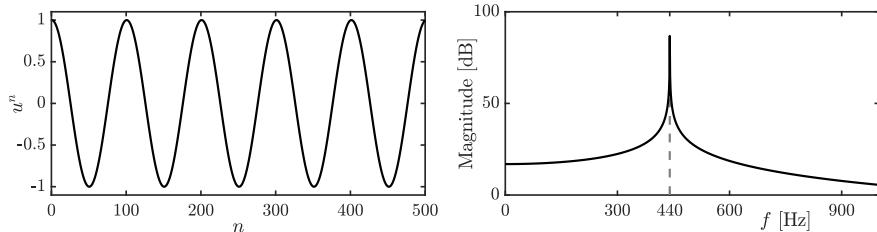
In short, setting  $u^0 = u^1 \neq 0$  yields an oscillatory behaviour with an amplitude of 1. Note that any other non-zero initial condition will also yield oscillatory behaviour, but likely with a different amplitude.

The values for  $K$  and  $M$  are restricted by a stability condition

$$k < 2\sqrt{\frac{M}{K}}, \quad (2.37)$$

which will be elaborated on in Section 3.3. If this condition is not satisfied, the system will exhibit (exponential) growth and is *unstable*.

The output of the system can be obtained by ‘recording’ the displacement



**Fig. 2.6:** The time domain and frequency domain output of a mass-spring system with  $f_0 = 440$  Hz.

of the mass and listening to this at the given sample rate  $f_s$ . An example of this can be found in Figure 2.6 where the frequency of oscillation  $f_0 = 440$  Hz.

## 2.4 The 1D wave equation

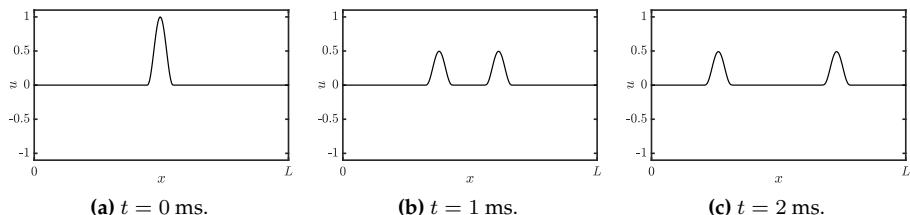
Arguably the most important PDE in the field of physical modelling for sound synthesis is the 1D wave equation. It can be used to describe transverse vibration in an ideal string, longitudinal vibration in an ideal bar or the pressure in an acoustic tube (see Chapter 5). Although the behaviour of this equation alone does not appear in the real world as such – as no physical system is ideal – it is extremely useful as a test case and a basis for more complicated models.

### 2.4.1 Continuous time

The 1D wave equation is a PDE that describes the motion of a system distributed in one dimension of space. Consider the state of a 1D system  $u = u(x, t)$  of length  $L$  (in m) defined for time  $t \geq 0$  and  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  with  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$ . The PDE describing its motion is

$$\partial_t^2 u = c^2 \partial_x^2 u, \quad (2.38)$$

where  $c$  is the wave speed of the system (in m/s). If the PDE is used to model an ideal string, the wave speed can be defined as  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho A}$ , with tension  $T$  (in N), material density  $\rho$  (in kg/m<sup>3</sup>) and cross-sectional area  $A$ . If instead, it is used to model pressure in an acoustic tube  $c$  is the speed of sound in air. Figure 2.7 shows the wave propagation of the 1D wave equation excited using a raised cosine.



**Fig. 2.7:** Wave propagation in the 1D wave equation in Eq. (2.38) with  $c \approx 127$  m/s.

### Intuition

As with the mass-spring system in Section 2.3 the working of the PDE in (2.38) arises from Newton's second law, even though this connection might be less apparent.

The 1D wave equation in (2.38) states that the acceleration of  $u(x, t)$  at location  $x$  is determined by the second-order spatial derivative of  $u$  at that same location (scaled by a constant  $c^2$ ). In the case that  $u$  describes the transverse displacement of an ideal string, this second-order derivative denotes the *curvature* of this string. As  $c^2$  is always positive, the sign (or direction) of the acceleration is fully determined by the sign of the curvature. In other words, a ‘positive’ curvature at location  $x$  along the ideal string yields a ‘positive’ or upwards acceleration at that same location.

What a ‘positive’ or ‘negative’ curvature implies is more easily seen when we take a simple function describing a parabola,  $y(x) = x^2$ , and take its second derivative to get  $y''(x) = 2$ . The answer is a positive number which means that  $y$  has a positive curvature.

So, what does this mean for the 1D wave equation? As a positive curvature implies a positive or upwards acceleration as per Eq. (2.38),  $u$  with a positive curvature at a location  $x$  will start to move upwards and vice versa. Of course, the state of a physical system such as  $u$  will rarely have a perfect parabolic shape, but the argument still applies. See Figure 2.8 for a visualisation of the forces acting on  $u$  due to curvature.

How the 1D wave equation relates to Newton’s second law, becomes apparent by slightly rewriting Eq. (2.38). Recalling the definition of  $c$  for an ideal string, one can rewrite the 1D wave equation to

$$\rho A \partial_t^2 u = T \partial_x^2 u,$$

where  $\rho A$  describes the *mass per unit length* of the string. As the forces present in the system act on infinitesimally small portions of the string Newton’s second law appears by a multiplication of  $dx$

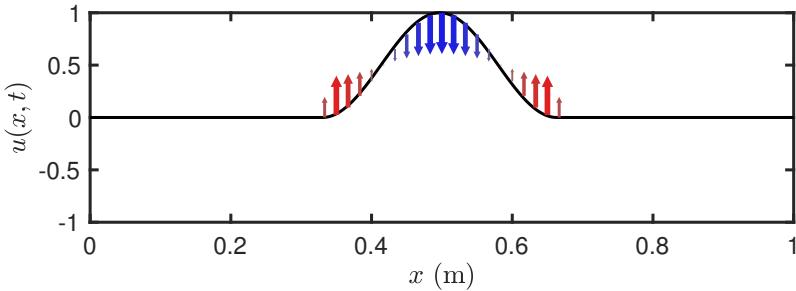
$$\underbrace{\rho A \partial_t^2 u dx}_{ma} = \underbrace{T \partial_x^2 u dx}_F,$$

where  $\rho A dx$  is the mass of a (tiny) portion of the string of length  $dx$  (in m),  $\partial_t^2 u$  is the acceleration of that portion and  $T \partial_x^2 u dx$  describes the force acting on that portion, yielding Newton’s second law.

different wording in caption

### Boundary conditions

When a system is distributed in space, *boundary conditions* must be determined. Recalling that  $x$  is defined over domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$ , the boundaries, or end points of the system are located at  $x = 0$  and  $x = L$ . Two often-used alternatives



**Fig. 2.8:** The forces acting on the 1D wave equation described by  $u(x, t)$  due to curvature. The arrows indicate the direction and magnitude of the force, and simultaneously the acceleration as these are connected through Eq. (2.38).

for the boundary conditions are

$$u(0, t) = u(L, t) = 0 \quad (\text{Dirichlet, fixed}), \quad (2.39\text{a})$$

$$\partial_x u(0, t) = \partial_x u(L, t) = 0 \quad (\text{Neumann, free}). \quad (2.39\text{b})$$

The Dirichlet boundary condition says that at the end points of the system, the state is 0 at all times. The Neumann condition on the other hand, says that rather the slope of these points needs to be 0, but that the end points are free to move transversely. In the former case, incoming waves invert after reaching the boundary whereas in the latter incoming waves are reflected un-inverted. See Figure 2.9.

If both boundaries of the 1D wave equation share the same condition, the fundamental frequency of the simulation can be calculated using

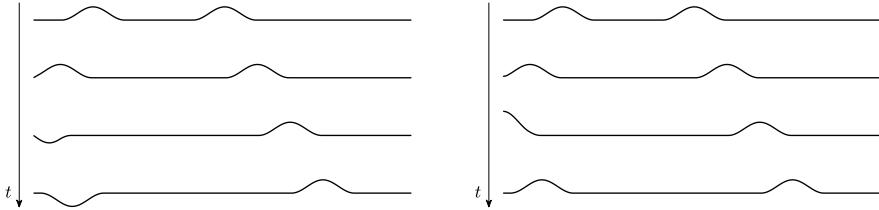
$$f_0 = \frac{c}{2L} . \quad (2.40)$$

## Scaling

As this work follows much of Bilbao's *Numerical Sound Synthesis* [2], it might be good to talk about a major discrepancy between the PDEs and FD schemes that appear there and those used here. Non-dimensionalisation, or *scaling*, is extensively used in [2] and much of the literature published around that time (fx. [51, 50]) and can be useful to reduce the number of parameters used to describe a system.

Scaling techniques normalise the domain  $x \in [0, L]$  to  $x' \in [0, 1]$  with  $x' = x/L$ . The 1D wave equation in (2.38) can then be rewritten to

$$\partial_t^2 u = \gamma^2 \partial_{x' x'} u, \quad (2.41)$$



(a) The Dirichlet boundary condition in Eq. (2.39a) fixes the boundary, which causes the incoming waves to invert.

(b) The Neumann or free boundary condition in Eq. (2.39b) fixes the slope at the boundary, causing the incoming waves to not invert.

**Fig. 2.9:** The behaviour of the 1D wave equation with (a) Dirichlet or (b) Neumann boundary conditions.

where scaled wave speed  $\gamma = c/L$  has units of frequency. The scaling has removed the necessity for both  $c$  and  $L$  and simply specifying the scaled wave speed  $\gamma$  is enough to parametrise the behaviour of the system. The parameter reduction gets more apparent for more complex systems and could greatly simplify the models used, at least in notation and parameter control.

Although this parameter reduction might be useful for resonators in isolation, when multiple resonators interact with each other (see Part IV), it is better to keep the systems dimensional. As a big part of this work includes interaction between multiple resonators, only dimensional systems will appear here.

check whether  
still correct

## 2.4.2 Discrete time

Coming back to the PDE presented in Eq. (2.38), we continue by finding a discrete-time approximation for it. As explained in Section 2.2.1, a continuous state variable  $u = u(x, t)$  can be discretised using  $x = lh$  with grid spacing  $h$  (in m) and  $t = nk$  with time step  $k$  (in s). The grid function  $u_l^n$  approximating  $u$  can then be indexed by spatial index  $l \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  with number of intervals between the grid points  $N$  and temporal index  $n \in \mathbb{N}^0$ . Continuing with the approximations of the derivatives in the 1D wave equation, the most straightforward discretisation of Eq. (2.38) is the following FD scheme

$$\delta_{tt} u_l^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} u_l^n. \quad (2.42)$$

Other schemes exist (see e.g. [2]), but are excluded as they have not been used in this work. Expanding the operators using the definitions given in Section

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: check  
straightforward  
or straight-  
forward

2.2.2 yields

$$\frac{1}{k^2} (u_l^{n+1} - 2u_l^n + u_l^{n-1}) = \frac{c^2}{h^2} (u_{l+1}^n - 2u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n). \quad (2.43)$$

and solving for  $u_l^{n+1}$  yields

$$u_l^{n+1} = (2 - 2\lambda^2) u_l^n + \lambda^2 (u_{l+1}^n + u_{l-1}^n) - u_l^{n-1}. \quad (2.44)$$

Here,

$$\lambda = \frac{ck}{h} \quad (2.45)$$

is called the *Courant number* and plays a big role in stability and quality of the FD scheme. More specifically,  $\lambda$  needs to abide the (famous) Courant-Friedrichs-Lowy or *CFL condition* for short [52]

$$\lambda \leq 1, \quad (2.46)$$

which acts as a stability condition for scheme (2.42). More details on this are given in Section 2.4.4.

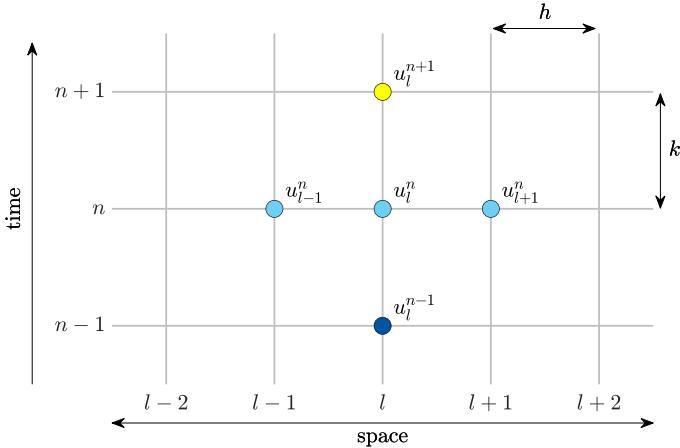
As  $c$ ,  $k$  and  $h$  are interdependent due to the CFL condition, it is useful to rewrite Eq. (2.46) in terms of known variables. As the time step  $k$  is based on the sample rate and thus (usually) fixed, and  $c$  is a user-defined wave speed, the CFL condition can be rewritten in terms of the grid spacing  $h$ :

$$h \geq ck, \quad (2.47)$$

which, in implementation, is used as a stability condition for the scheme. See Section 3.3 for more information on how to derive a stability condition from a FD scheme.

## Stencil

As was done for several FD operators in Figure 2.3, it can be useful to visualise the *stencil*, or region of operation, of a FD scheme. A stencil of a scheme visualises what grid values are necessary to calculate the state at the next time step  $u_l^{n+1}$ . Figure 2.10 shows the stencil for scheme (2.42) and – in essence – visualises the various shifts of the grid function in Eq. (2.44). One could visualise this stencil to be placed on the left-most points of the grid shown in Figure 2.2. The update equation then iterates this stencil over the entire domain and calculates all values of  $u_l^{n+1}$  based on known values of  $u_l^n$  and  $u_l^{n-1}$ .



**Fig. 2.10:** The stencil, or region of operation, for the FD scheme in (2.42). The time steps of the various grid points are colour-coded by yellow ( $n + 1$ ), light blue ( $n$ ) and dark blue ( $n - 1$ ).

### Boundary conditions and virtual grid points

The end points of the discrete domain are located at  $l = 0$  and  $l = N$ . Substituting these locations into Eq. (2.44) shows that grid points outside of the defined domain are needed, namely  $u_{-1}^n$  and  $u_{N+1}^n$ . These can be referred to as *virtual grid points* and can be accounted for by discretising the boundary conditions in Eq. (2.39). Discretising these (using the most accurate centred spatial difference operator for the Neumann condition) yields

$$u_0^n = u_N^n = 0 \quad (\text{Dirichlet, fixed}), \quad (2.48a)$$

$$\delta_x \cdot u_0^n = \delta_x \cdot u_N^n = 0 \quad (\text{Neumann, free}). \quad (2.48b)$$

If Dirichlet boundary conditions are used, the states of the boundary points will always be zero and can therefore be excluded from the calculations. The range of calculation then simply becomes  $l \in \{1, \dots, N - 1\}$  and no virtual grid points are needed when performing the update.

If, on the other hand, Neumann conditions are used, the range of calculation remains  $l \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  and definitions for the virtual grid points need to be found. Expanding the operators in Eq. (2.48b) and solving for  $u_{-1}^n$  and  $u_{N+1}^n$  provides the definitions for these virtual grid points based on values inside the defined domain:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2h} (u_1^n - u_{-1}^n) &= 0, & \frac{1}{2h} (u_{N+1}^n - u_{N-1}^n) &= 0, \\ u_1^n - u_{-1}^n &= 0, & u_{N+1}^n - u_{N-1}^n &= 0, \\ u_{-1}^n &= u_1^n. & u_{N+1}^n &= u_{N-1}^n. \end{aligned}$$

At the boundaries, the update equation in Eq. (2.44) will then have the above definitions for the virtual grid points substituted and will become

$$u_0^{n+1} = (2 - 2\lambda^2) u_0^n + 2\lambda^2 u_1^n - u_0^{n-1}, \quad (2.49)$$

and

$$u_N^{n+1} = (2 - 2\lambda^2) u_N^n + 2\lambda^2 u_{N-1}^n - u_N^{n-1}, \quad (2.50)$$

at the left and right boundary respectively.

### 2.4.3 Implementation

This section provides information on the excitation and output of the system. See Appendix C.2 for a MATLAB implementation of the 1D wave equation.

#### Excitation

A simple way to excite the system is to initialise the state using a raised cosine, or Hann window. More information on excitations will be given in Part III, but for completeness, the formula for a discrete raised cosine will be given here.

The discrete raised cosine can be parametrised by its center location  $l_0$  and width  $w$  (in' grid spacings') from which the start index  $l_s$  and end index  $l_e$  can be calculated, according to

$$l_s = l_0 - \lfloor w/2 \rfloor \quad \text{and} \quad l_e = l_0 + \lfloor w/2 \rfloor, \quad (2.51)$$

where  $\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$  denotes the flooring operation and needs to be used as all the above variables are integers. Furthermore, both  $l_s$  and  $l_e$  must fall into the defined spatial range of calculation. Then, a raised cosine with an amplitude of 1 can be calculated and used as an initial condition for the system according to

$$u_l^1 = u_l^0 = \begin{cases} 0.5 - 0.5 \cos\left(\frac{2\pi(l-l_s)}{w}\right), & l_s \leq l \leq l_e, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (2.52)$$

As done for the implementation of the mass-spring system in Section 2.3.3, both  $u_l^0$  and  $u_l^1$  are initialised with the same state, as to only have an initial displacement, and not an initial velocity.

In MATLAB, an easier way to obtain a raised cosine is to use the `hann(w)` function which returns a raised cosine (or Hann window) of width  $w$  (in grid

look at this

points).

### Output and modes

After the system is excited, one can retrieve the output of the system by selecting a grid point  $l_{\text{out}}$  and listening to that at the given sample rate  $f_s$ . An example using the parameters in Table 2.1 and Dirichlet boundary conditions is shown in Figure 2.11.

Name	Symbol (unit)	Value
<b>User-defined parameters</b>		
Length	$L$ (m)	1
Wave speed	$c$ (m/s)	1470
Sample rate	$f_s$ (Hz)	44100
<b>Derived parameters</b>		
Fundamental frequency	$f_0$ (Hz)	735
No. of intervals	$N$ (-)	30
Time step	$k$ (s)	$\approx 2.27 \cdot 10^{-5}$
Grid spacing	$h$ (m)	$\approx 0.033$
Courant number	$\lambda$ (-)	1
<b>Excitation and output</b>		
Center location	$l_0$ (-)	$0.2N$
Width	$w$ (-)	4
Output location	$l_{\text{out}}$	3

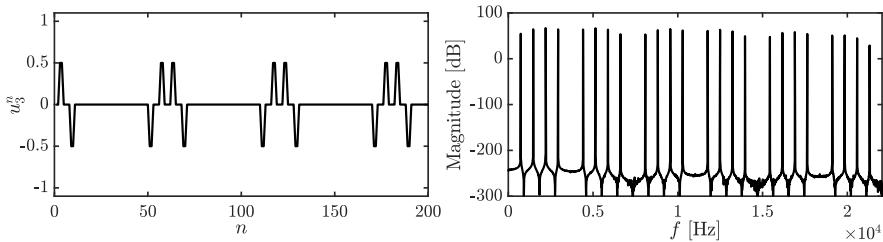
**Table 2.1:** Parameters used for 1D wave equation example used in this section. The user-defined parameters have been chosen such that  $\lambda = 1$ .

As can be seen from Figure 2.11, the output of the 1D wave equation contains many peaks in the frequency spectrum on top of the fundamental frequency. These are called *harmonic partials* or *harmonics* for short and arise from the various modes of vibration present in the system (see Figure 2.12). Although the PDE has not been implemented using modal synthesis (discussed in Chapter 1), the system can still be decomposed into different modes of vibration, each corresponding to a harmonic frequency. These modes are assumed to vibrate independently, and their weighted sum yields the eventual behaviour of the system.<sup>5</sup>

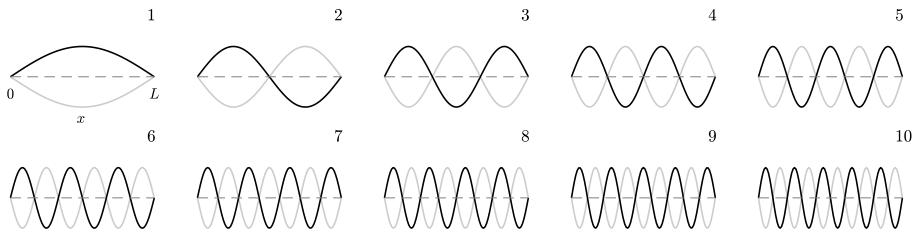
The number of modes present in the continuous PDE of the 1D wave equation is theoretically infinite. The number present in the discrete FD scheme, however, is determined by the number of moving points in the system. If Dirichlet boundary conditions are used, this means that there are  $N - 1$  modes,

---

<sup>5</sup>Modes of the vibrating string were first discovered by Sauveur in 1701 who said that “especially at night” he observed “other small sounds” on top of the fundamental frequency and coined the terms ‘node’ and ‘harmonic’ [53].



**Fig. 2.11:** The time-domain and frequency domain output of the 1D wave equation with  $f_0 = 735$  Hz and  $f_s = 44100$  Hz ( $N = 30$  and  $\lambda = 1$ ) and Dirichlet boundary conditions. The system is initialised with a raised cosine described in Eq. (2.52) with  $l_0 = 0.2N$ ) and  $w = 4$  and the output is retrieved at  $l_{\text{out}} = 3$ .



**Fig. 2.12:** The first 10 modal shapes of the 1D wave equation with Dirichlet boundary conditions defined for  $x \in [0, L]$  (only shown for mode 1). The modes are normalised to have the same amplitude and vibrate at their respective modal frequencies with the extremes indicated by the black and the grey plot. The number of the shape can be determined by the number of antinodes present in the shape.

and  $N + 1$  modes for Neumann boundary conditions. If the CFL condition is satisfied with equality, the frequencies of these modes are integer multiples of the fundamental:  $f_m = m f_0$  for mode number  $m \in \{1, \dots, N - 1\}$  for Dirichlet and  $m \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  when using Neumann boundary conditions. The frequency of the harmonics – and even the modal shapes – can be analytically derived using modal analysis as will be explained in Section 3.5.

The amplitude of the different modes depends on the excitation location (and type) and the output location. Figure 2.11, for example, seemingly shows that the system only exhibits 24 modes, rather than the 29 ( $N - 1$ ) predicted. As the system is excited at  $0.2N$ , or in other words,  $1/5^{\text{th}}$  of the length of the system, this means that every  $5^{\text{th}}$  mode will be attenuated. To understand how and/or why this happens, one can refer to Figure 2.12 and see that every  $5^{\text{th}}$  modal shape has a node at  $1/5^{\text{th}}$  of its length. If the system is excited exactly there, this modal shape will not obtain any energy and will thus not resonate. Similarly, if the system is excited exactly in the middle, every  $2^{\text{nd}}$  modal frequency will be attenuated as there is a node present in the corresponding modal shape.

The output would then only contain odd-numbered modes.

#### 2.4.4 Stability and simulation quality

As shown in Eq. (2.46), the Courant number needs to abide the CFL condition in order for the scheme to be stable. A system is regarded *unstable* if it exhibits (exponential) unbounded growth. If Neumann boundary conditions (free) are used, it is possible that the system drifts off over time. This does not mean that the system is unstable, it is actually entirely physically possible!<sup>6</sup>

Besides stability, the value of  $\lambda$  is closely related to the quality of the simulation. If  $\lambda = 1$ , Eq. (2.42) is actually an exact solution to Eq. (2.38), which is quite uncommon in the realm of differential equations! See Figure 2.13a. Identically, if Eq. (2.47) is satisfied with equality, the FD scheme is an exact solution to the PDE, and if  $h$  deviates from this condition, the quality of the simulation decreases.

If  $\lambda < 1$ , the quality of the simulation decreases in an effect called *numerical dispersion*. Dispersion is a phenomenon where some frequencies travel faster through a medium than others, which is desired in some models (see fx. Chapter 4). Numerical dispersion, however, which is due to numerical inaccuracy, never is! Figure 2.13b shows an example when  $\lambda = 0.9$ , and one can observe that the wave propagation does not match the ideal case as Figure 2.13a shows. Moreover, bandlimiting effects occur, meaning that the highest frequency that the system can generate decreases. See Figure 2.14. Higher modes get ‘squished’ together and are not exact multiples of the fundamental anymore. Section 3.5 elaborates on how to calculate the exact modal frequencies of a FD implementation of the 1D wave equation.

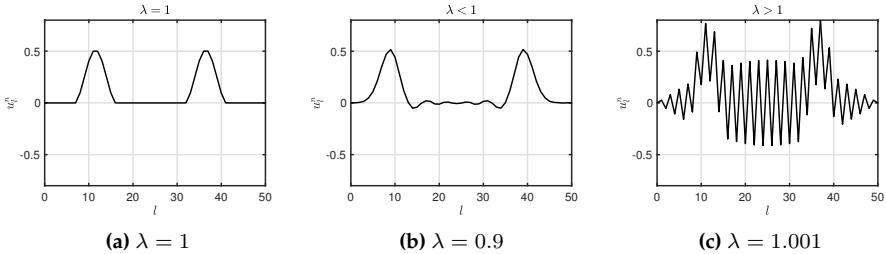
Finally, if  $\lambda > 1$  the system becomes unstable. An example is shown in Figure 2.13c. Unstable behaviour usually comes in the form of high frequencies (around the Nyquist frequency of  $f_s/2$ ) growing without bounds.

In what situation would the stability condition then not be satisfied with equality? As mentioned in Section 2.2.1, a continuous domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$  for a system of length  $L$  needs to be divided into  $N$  equal sections of length  $h$  in the discretisation process. A logical step to calculate  $N$  would be to divide  $L$  by  $h$  calculated using Eq. (2.47) satisfied with equality to get the highest possible simulation quality. However, this calculation might not result in an integer value, which  $N$  should be! To stay as close to the stability condition as possible, the following calculations are performed in order:

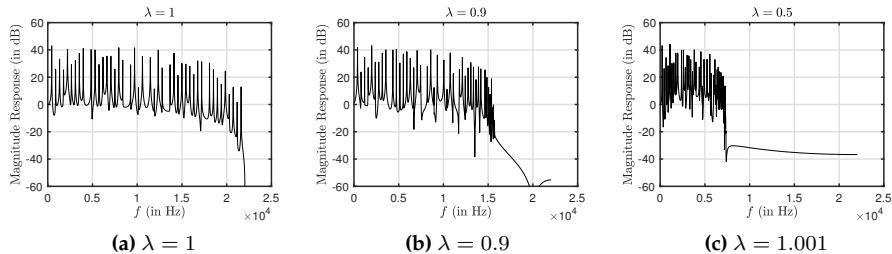
$$h := ck, \quad N := \left\lfloor \frac{L}{h} \right\rfloor, \quad h := \frac{L}{N}, \quad \lambda := \frac{ck}{h}. \quad (2.53)$$

---

<sup>6</sup>Imagine a ‘free’ guitar string where the ends are not connected to the nut and bridge of a guitar. The string can be taken far away from the guitar without it breaking or exploding.



**Fig. 2.13:** Grid function  $u_i^n$  visualised  $\sim 100$  samples after excitation. (a) If  $\lambda = 1$ , the solution is exact. (b) If  $\lambda < 1$  dispersive behaviour shows. (c) If  $\lambda > 1$  the CFL condition in Eq. (2.46) is not satisfied and the system is unstable.



**Fig. 2.14:** Frequency spectra of the simulation output. The Courant number is set to (a)  $\lambda = 1$ , (b)  $\lambda = 0.9$  and (c)  $\lambda = 0.5$ . One can observe that for lower values of  $\lambda$  the bandwidth of the output decreases drastically.

In other words, Eq. (2.47) is satisfied with equality and used to calculate integer  $N$ . After this,  $h$  is recalculated based on  $N$  and used to calculate the Courant number using Eq. (2.45). This process assures that  $N$  is an integer and that the CFL condition is satisfied, though not necessarily with equality.

To understand why  $h$  needs to be recalculated, consider the following example. Consider the 1D wave equation defined over domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$  where  $L = 1$ . Furthermore, we say that the system should produce a fundamental frequency of  $f_0 = 750$  Hz which requires a wave speed of  $c = 1500$  m/s according to Eq. (2.40). If we use the commonly-used sample rate of  $f_s = 44100$  Hz, and recalling that  $k = 1/f_s$ , these values can be filled into (2.47) satisfied with equality and yields  $h \approx 0.034$ . If we divide the length by the grid spacing, we get  $L/h = 29.4$ , meaning that exactly 29.4 intervals of size  $h$  fit in the domain  $\mathcal{D}$ . However, the number of intervals needs to be an integer and – using Eq. (2.53) – we get  $N = 29$ . If  $h$  is not recalculated according to (2.53), the total length will be 29 times the grid spacing  $h$ . This results in  $L \approx 0.986$  and is slightly less than the original length of 1. Although the CFL condition will be satisfied with equality, the fundamental frequency will be slightly higher than

desired:  $f_0 \approx 760.34$  Hz. If  $h$  is recalculated based on  $N$ , then  $L$  and  $f_0$  will be unchanged, and the system will have the correct fundamental frequency. The Courant number  $\lambda \approx 0.986$  is still very close to satisfying the condition in Eq. (2.46), and the decrease in quality will be perceptually irrelevant – or at the very least, less perceptually relevant than the change in  $f_0$  if  $h$  is not recalculated.

## Intuition

It might not be immediately clear why a too low value for  $h$  might cause instability. Some intuition is provided in [2, Fig. 6.9], but here I would like to provide an alternative, hopefully more tangible way to see this.

In a FD implementation of the 1D wave equation, grid points can only affect their neighbours as seen in update equation (2.44). Using the values in Table 2.1 as an example,  $N = 30$  and if  $\lambda = 1$ , it takes exactly 30 samples, or iterations of Eq. (2.44), for a wave to travel from one boundary to the other.

If  $h$  were to be chosen to be twice as big so that there are only half as many intervals between the grid points as per Eq. (2.53) ( $N = 15$ ), the grid points could be set to ‘affect’ their neighbours to a lesser degree. This way, the wave still takes the same amount of time to travel between the boundaries and the fundamental frequency stays approximately the same. This is essentially what happens when  $\lambda < 1$  (in this case  $\lambda = 0.5$ ) and can be observed from the update equation in Eq. (2.44); the effect that the neighbouring grid points have on each other will indeed be less. The output of the system will have approximately the same fundamental frequency as if  $\lambda = 1$ , but its partials will be detuned due to numerical dispersion as explained in this section.

If, on the other hand,  $h$  were to be chosen to be twice as small so that there are twice as many intervals between grid points ( $N = 60$ ), it is impossible for the waves to travel from one boundary to the other in 30 samples. If they could interact with their second neighbour, this would be possible, but the FD scheme in (2.42) does not allow for this. Indeed, as  $\lambda = 2$  in this case, the effect that the grid points have on each other will be disproportionate. In a way, grid points have too much energy that they can not lose to their neighbours, because their effect should have reached their second neighbour over the course of one sample. The way to solve this would be to halve the time step  $k$  (or double the sample rate  $f_s$ ), which would allow grid points to interact with their second neighbours over the course of once the old time step (as this is now divided into two time steps). This also shows in the fact that  $\lambda = 1$  again (as halving  $k$  cancels out halving  $h$ ) and grid points transfer their energy to their neighbours proportionately again.

figure?

### Possible solution

One of the main contributions of the PhD project is published in paper [G] and summarised in Chapter 12, where a ‘fractional’ number of intervals is introduced. This removes the necessity of the flooring operation in Eq. (2.53) and circumvents the recalculation of  $h$  to always satisfy the stability condition with equality while retaining the correct fundamental frequency.

# Chapter 3

# Analysis Techniques

This chapter provides some useful techniques to analyse FD schemes. Techniques to analyse PDEs also exist, but the focus here is of a practical nature and will especially revolve around the discrete schemes. This chapter can be seen as a ‘tutorial’ on how to use these techniques. Starting off with some necessary theory on matrices in a FDTD context and other mathematical tools, this chapter continues to introduce

- *Frequency domain analysis*, which can be used to determine stability conditions of (linear and time-invariant) FD schemes,
- *Energy analysis*, which can both be used to debug implementations of FD schemes, as well as determine stability conditions in a more general fashion, and
- *Modal analysis* which can be used to determine the modal frequencies (and damping per mode) that a FD scheme exhibits.

## 3.1 Matrices in a FDTD context

For several purposes, such as implementation in MATLAB and several analysis techniques described shortly, it is useful to write a FD scheme in *matrix form*.<sup>1</sup> Matrix multiplication when working with FDTD methods usually involves multiplying a square matrix (with equal rows and columns) onto a column vector. Consider a  $(N + 1) \times (N + 1)$  square matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  and a  $(N + 1) \times 1$  column vector  $\mathbf{u}$ . Multiplying these results in a  $(N + 1) \times 1$  column vector  $\mathbf{w}$ :

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{w}. \quad (3.1)$$

---

<sup>1</sup>Appendix B provides some basic knowledge on matrices and linear algebra for those unfamiliar with this.

Expanding this operation results in

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} a_{00} & a_{01} & \dots & a_{0N} \\ a_{10} & a_{11} & \dots & a_{2N} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{N0} & a_{N1} & \dots & a_{NN} \end{bmatrix}}_A \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} u_0 \\ u_1 \\ \vdots \\ u_N \end{bmatrix}}_u = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} a_{00}u_0 + a_{01}u_1 + \dots + a_{0N}u_N \\ a_{10}u_0 + a_{11}u_1 + \dots + a_{1N}u_N \\ \vdots \\ a_{N0}u_0 + a_{N1}u_1 + \dots + a_{NN}u_N \end{bmatrix}}_w \quad (3.2)$$

where the indexing of the matrix elements starts at 0 rather than 1 here, as it relates better to operations used in a FDTD context.

### 3.1.1 FD operators in matrix form

FD operators approximating spatial derivatives and averages introduced in Section 2.2.2 can be written in matrix form and applied to a column vector  $\mathbf{u}^n$  containing the state of the system at time index  $n$ . These matrices are square and their sizes depend on the number of grid points the system is described for and on the boundary conditions. Not assuming a specific size for now, the FD operators in (2.6) can be written in matrix form according to

$$\mathbf{D}_{x+} = \frac{1}{h} \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & \ddots & & 0 \\ & -1 & 1 & & \\ & & -1 & 1 & & \\ & & & -1 & 1 & & \\ & & & & -1 & \ddots & & \\ 0 & & & & & & \ddots & \ddots \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{D}_{x-} = \frac{1}{h} \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & & & 0 \\ & \ddots & 1 & & \\ & & -1 & 1 & & \\ & & & -1 & 1 & & \\ & & & & -1 & 1 & & \\ 0 & & & & & & \ddots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{D}_{x\cdot} = \frac{1}{2h} \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & \ddots & & 0 \\ & \ddots & 0 & 1 & & \\ & & -1 & 0 & 1 & & \\ & & & -1 & 0 & 1 & & \\ & & & & -1 & 0 & \ddots & & \\ 0 & & & & & & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}$$

where the diagonal dots denote that the values on the respective diagonals continue until the top-left and bottom-right corners of the matrix. A 0 indicates that the rest of the values in the matrix are zeros.

Averaging operators  $\mu_{x+}$ ,  $\mu_{x-}$  and  $\mu_{x\cdot}$  are defined in a similar way:

is this how you  
explain it?

### 3.1. Matrices in a FDTD context

$$\mathbf{M}_{x+} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & \ddots & & \mathbf{0} \\ & 1 & 1 & & \\ & & 1 & 1 & & \\ & & & 1 & 1 & & \\ & & & & 1 & \ddots & \\ \mathbf{0} & & & & & & \ddots \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{M}_{x-} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & & & \mathbf{0} \\ & \ddots & 1 & & \\ & & 1 & 1 & & \\ & & & 1 & 1 & & \\ & & & & 1 & 1 & & \\ \mathbf{0} & & & & & & \ddots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{M}_{x\cdot} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & \ddots & & \mathbf{0} \\ & 0 & 1 & & \\ & & 1 & 0 & 1 & & \\ & & & 1 & 0 & 1 & & \\ & & & & 1 & 0 & \ddots & \\ \mathbf{0} & & & & & & \ddots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}$$

It is important to notice that only spatial operators are written in this matrix form and then applied to state vectors at different time steps ( $\mathbf{u}^{n+1}$ ,  $\mathbf{u}^n$  and  $\mathbf{u}^{n-1}$ ).

Finally, the identity matrix is a matrix with only 1s on the diagonal and 0s elsewhere:

$$\mathbf{I} = \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & & & \mathbf{0} \\ & 1 & & & \\ & & 1 & & & \\ & & & 1 & & & \\ \mathbf{0} & & & & & & \ddots \end{bmatrix},$$

and has the following special property

$$\mathbf{IA} = \mathbf{AI} = \mathbf{A}.$$

#### 3.1.2 Schemes and update equations in matrix form

With the spatial operators in matrix form presented above, the FD scheme of the 1D wave equation in Eq. (2.42) can be written in matrix form.

If the Dirichlet boundary conditions in (2.48a) are used, the end points of the system do not have to be included in the calculation. The values of the grid function  $u_l^n$  for  $l \in \{1, \dots, N-1\}$  can then be stored in a column vector according to  $\mathbf{u}^n = [u_1^n, \dots, u_{N-1}^n]^T$ . Furthermore,  $(N-1) \times (N-1)$  matrix

$\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  is defined as

$$\mathbf{D}_{xx} = \frac{1}{h^2} \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 & & & \mathbf{0} \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & 1 & -2 & 1 \\ \mathbf{0} & & & 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.3)$$

If instead, Neumann boundary conditions in Eq. (2.48a) are used, the values of  $u_l^n$  for the full range  $l \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  need to be stored as  $\mathbf{u}^n = [u_0^n, \dots, u_N^n]^T$  and the  $(N+1) \times (N+1)$  matrix  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  will be

$$\mathbf{D}_{xx} = \frac{1}{h^2} \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 & & & \mathbf{0} \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & 1 & -2 & 1 \\ \mathbf{0} & & & 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (3.4)$$

where the 2s in the top and bottom row correspond to the multiplication by 2 with  $u_1^n$  and  $u_{N-1}^n$  in update equations (2.49) and (2.50) respectively.

Regardless of the boundary conditions, the FD scheme in (2.42) can be written in matrix form as

$$\frac{1}{k^2} (\mathbf{u}^{n+1} - 2\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{u}^{n-1}) = c^2 \mathbf{D}_{xx} \mathbf{u}^n, \quad (3.5)$$

and rewritten to a matrix form of the update equation analogous to Eq. (2.44)

$$\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = (2\mathbf{I} + c^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{xx}) \mathbf{u}^n - \mathbf{u}^{n-1}. \quad (3.6)$$

The identity matrix is necessary here for correct matrix addition.

## 3.2 Mathematical tools and product identities

Some useful mathematical tools used for the energy analysis techniques presented in Section 3.4 will be shown here. The tools shown here can be applied to 1D systems. These will be extended to 2D systems in Chapter 6. Unless denoted otherwise, the notation and theory will follow [2].

### 3.2.1 Inner product

For two functions  $f = f(x, t)$  and  $g = g(x, t)$  defined for  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  where  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$ , their  $l_2$  inner product and  $l_2$  norm are defined as

$$\langle f, g \rangle_{\mathcal{D}} = \int_{\mathcal{D}} f g dx \quad \text{and} \quad \|f\|_{\mathcal{D}} = \sqrt{\langle f, f \rangle_{\mathcal{D}}}. \quad (3.7)$$

These functions do not have to be time-dependent (i.e., they can also simply be  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$ ), but as all functions used in this work are in fact time-dependent, this is left for coherence. It is also important to note that these functions do not have to be ‘isolated’ state variables per se (such as  $u(x, t)$  used in the previous chapter), but could also be state variables with a derivative applied to it (such as  $\partial_t u(x, t)$ ).

The discrete inner product of any two (1D) functions  $f_l^n$  and  $g_l^n$  defined for  $l \in d$ , with discrete domain  $d = \{0, \dots, N\}$ , is

$$\langle f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_d = \sum_{l=0}^N h f_l^n g_l^n, \quad (3.8)$$

where the multiplication by  $h$  is the discrete counterpart of  $dx$  in the continuous definition in (3.7). Also useful are the primed inner product

$$\langle f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle'_d = \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} h f_l^n g_l^n + \frac{h}{2} f_0^n g_0^n + \frac{h}{2} f_N^n g_N^n, \quad (3.9)$$

and the more general weighted inner product

$$\langle f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} = \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} h f_l^n g_l^n + \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} h f_0^n g_0^n + \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} h f_N^n g_N^n, \quad (3.10)$$

where free parameters  $0 < \epsilon_l, \epsilon_r \leq 2$  scale the boundary points of the regular inner product. Naturally, if  $\epsilon_l = \epsilon_r = 1$ , Eq. (3.10) reduces to Eq. (3.9), and if  $\epsilon_l = \epsilon_r = 2$ , (3.10) reduces to (3.8).

check with Stefan

### 3.2.2 Summation by parts

Extremely useful when performing energy analysis on distributed systems is *summation by parts*, which is the discrete counterpart of integration by parts. Although its application will only be apparent when actually performing an energy analysis (see fx. Sections 3.4.3 and 4.4), some definitions will be presented here for future reference.

Here, the same functions as in the previous section,  $f(x, t)$  and  $g(x, t)$  and domain  $\mathcal{D}$ , will be used. Applying a spatial derivative to  $g$ , and using Eq. (3.7),

integration by parts is defined as

$$\langle f, \partial_x g \rangle_{\mathcal{D}} = -\langle \partial_x f, g \rangle_{\mathcal{D}} + fg|_0^L \quad (3.11)$$

where  $fg|_0^L$  describes the boundary terms that appeared in the process. One can observe that the spatial derivative switched functions, and is now applied to  $f$  rather than  $g$ .

In discrete time, using the same two (1D) functions as before:  $f_l^n$  and  $g_l$  and are defined for  $l \in d$  with discrete domain  $d = \{0, \dots, N\}$ . Then, using the discrete inner product in Eq. (3.8), two variants of summation by parts are defined as

$$\langle f_l^n, \delta_{x+} g_l^n \rangle_d = -\langle \delta_{x+} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_d + f_{N+1}^n g_N^n - f_0^n g_{-1}^n, \quad (3.12a)$$

$$\langle f_l^n, \delta_{x+} g_l^n \rangle_d = -\langle \delta_{x-} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_d + f_N^n g_{N+1}^n - f_{-1}^n g_0^n. \quad (3.12b)$$

A derivation of Eq. (3.12a) is given below. As in the case of integration by parts in Eq. (3.11), the process of summation by parts causes the derivative to be applied to the other function and the sign of the resulting inner product changes. Important to note, is that the sign (forward / backward) of the derivative operator has also changed. Lastly, discrete boundary terms have appeared and it can be seen that values outside of the defined domain are needed, i.e.,  $g_{N+1}^n$  and  $f_{-1}^n$ . These can be accounted for by the boundary conditions imposed on the system (see Section 2.4.2 as an example).

One could also choose to work with reduced domains after summation by parts. Domains that have one fewer point at the boundaries are defined as  $\underline{d} = \{0, \dots, N-1\}$ ,  $\bar{d} = \{1, \dots, N\}$  and  $\bar{\underline{d}} = \{1, \dots, N-1\}$ . The following identities can be shown to hold

$$\langle f_l^n, \delta_{x-} g_l^n \rangle_d = -\langle \delta_{x+} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_{\underline{d}} + f_N^n g_N^n - f_0^n g_{-1}^n, \quad (3.13a)$$

$$\langle f_l^n, \delta_{x+} g_l^n \rangle_d = -\langle \delta_{x-} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_{\bar{d}} + f_N^n g_{N+1}^n - f_0^n g_0^n, \quad (3.13b)$$

and, using the primed inner product in Eq. (3.9),

$$\langle f_l^n, \delta_{x-} g_l^n \rangle'_d = -\langle \delta_{x+} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_{\underline{d}} + f_N^n \mu_{x-} g_N^n - f_0^n \mu_{x-} g_0^n, \quad (3.14a)$$

$$\langle f_l^n, \delta_{x+} g_l^n \rangle'_d = -\langle \delta_{x-} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_{\bar{d}} + f_N^n \mu_{x+} g_{N+1}^n - f_0^n \mu_{x+} g_0^n, \quad (3.14b)$$

### 3.2. Mathematical tools and product identities

or the more general weighted inner product in Eq. (3.10)

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f_l^n, \delta_{x-} g_l^n \rangle_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} &= -\langle \delta_{x+} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_{\underline{d}} + f_N^n g_{N-1}^n - f_0^n g_0^n \\ &\quad + \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} f_N^n (g_N^n - g_{N-1}^n) + \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} f_0^n (g_0^n - g_{-1}^n), \end{aligned} \quad (3.15a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f_l^n, \delta_{x+} g_l^n \rangle_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} &= -\langle \delta_{x-} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_{\bar{d}} + f_N^n g_N^n - f_0^n g_1^n \\ &\quad + \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} f_N^n (g_{N+1}^n - g_N^n) + \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} f_0^n (g_1^n - g_0^n), \end{aligned} \quad (3.15b)$$

all of which will prove useful in energy analysis techniques later on. A derivation of (3.13a) is given below. will it though?

Finally, recalling that  $\delta_{xx} = \delta_{x+} \delta_{x-}$ , one can apply summation by parts twice to get the following identities

$$\langle f, \delta_{xx} g \rangle_d = \langle \delta_{xx} f, g \rangle_d + f_N \delta_{x+} g_N - g_N \delta_{x+} f_N - f_0 \delta_{x-} g_0 + g_0 \delta_{x-} f_0, \quad (3.16a)$$

$$\langle f, \delta_{xx} g \rangle_d = \langle \delta_{xx} f, g \rangle_{\underline{d}} + f_N \delta_{x+} g_N - g_N \delta_{x-} f_N - f_0 \delta_{x-} g_0 + g_0 \delta_{x+} f_0, \quad (3.16b)$$

$$\langle f, \delta_{xx} g \rangle'_d = \langle \delta_{xx} f, g \rangle'_d + f_N \delta_{x+} g_N - g_N \delta_{x-} f_N - f_0 \delta_{x-} g_0 + g_0 \delta_{x+} f_0. \quad (3.16c)$$

#### Derivations

To see why the above identities hold true, it is useful to briefly go through a derivation. As an example, Eqs. (3.12a) and (3.13a) are derived as they have the same inner product as a starting point, but yield different results. In the following,  $d = \{0, \dots, N\}$  and  $N = 2$  are used.

Starting with Eq. (3.12a), suppressing the  $n$  superscript for brevity, and using the definition for the discrete inner product in Eq. (3.8), yields

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f_l, \delta_{x-} g_l \rangle_d &= \sum_{l=0}^2 h f_l \frac{1}{h} (g_l - g_{l-1}), \\ &= f_0 g_0 - f_0 g_{-1} + f_1 g_1 - f_1 g_0 + f_2 g_2 - f_2 g_1, \\ &= g_0 (f_0 - f_1) - f_0 g_{-1} + g_1 (f_1 - f_2) + g_2 (f_2 - f_3) + f_3 g_2, \\ &= -g_0 (f_1 - f_0) - g_1 (f_2 - f_1) - g_2 (f_3 - f_2) + f_3 g_2 - f_0 g_{-1}, \\ &= -\sum_{l=0}^2 h g_l \frac{1}{h} (f_{l+1} - f_l) + f_3 g_2 - f_0 g_{-1}, \\ &= -\langle \delta_{x+} f_l, g_l \rangle_d + f_3 g_2 - f_0 g_{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

As  $N = 2$ , the result is identical to Eq. (3.12a).

Similarly, identity (3.13a) can be proven to hold:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \langle f_l, \delta_{x-} g_l \rangle_d &= \sum_{l=0}^2 h f_l \frac{1}{h} (g_l - g_{l-1}), \\
 &= f_0 g_0 - f_0 g_{-1} + f_1 g_1 - f_1 g_0 + f_2 g_2 - f_2 g_1, \\
 &= -f_0 g_{-1} + g_0(f_0 - f_1) + g_1(f_1 - f_2) + f_2 g_2, \\
 &= -g_0(f_1 - f_0) - g_1(f_2 - f_1) + f_2 g_2 - f_0 g_{-1}, \\
 &= \sum_{l=0}^1 h g_l \frac{1}{h} (f_{l+1} - f_l) + f_2 g_2 - f_0 g_{-1}, \\
 &= -\langle \delta_{x+} f_l, g_l \rangle_d + f_2 g_2 - f_0 g_{-1},
 \end{aligned}$$

where the resulting inner product has a reduced domain of  $\underline{d} = \{0, \dots, N-1\}$ . Similar processes can be used to prove the other identities presented in this section.

### 3.2.3 Product identities

Some useful identities used in this work are

$$(\delta_{t+} u_l^n)(\delta_{tt} u_l^n) = \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{1}{2} (\delta_{t-} u_l^n)^2 \right), \quad (3.17a)$$

$$(\delta_{t+} u_l^n) u_l^n = \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{1}{2} u_l^n e_{t-} u_l^n \right), \quad (3.17b)$$

$$(\delta_{t+} u_l^n)(\mu_{t+} u_l^n) = \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{1}{2} (u_l^n)^2 \right), \quad (3.17c)$$

$$(\delta_{t+} u_l^n)(\mu_{t-} u_l^n) = \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{1}{2} \mu_{t-} (u_l^n)^2 \right), \quad (3.17d)$$

$$(\delta_{t+} u_l^n)(\mu_{tt} u_l^n) = \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{1}{8} (u_l^n + e_{t-} u_l^n)^2 \right) \quad (3.17e)$$

$$u_l^n e_{t-} u_l^n = (\mu_{t-} u_l^n)^2 - \frac{k^2}{4} (\delta_{t-} u_l^n)^2 \quad (3.17f)$$

These identities can be used for spatial derivatives as well by substituting the ‘ $t$ ’ subscripts for ‘ $x$ ’.

When an operator is applied to a product of two grid functions, the discrete counterpart of the product rule needs to be used according to

$$\delta_{t+}(u_l^n w_l^n) = (\delta_{t+} u_l^n)(\mu_{t+} w_l^n) + (\mu_{t+} u_l^n)(\delta_{t+} w_l^n). \quad (3.18)$$

The same rule applies when the backward operator  $\delta_{t-}(u_l^n w_l^n)$  or centred operator  $\delta_{t.}(u_l^n w_l^n)$  is used. In that case, the forward operators  $\delta_{t+}$  and  $\mu_{t+}$  in

### 3.3. Frequency domain analysis

Eq. (3.18) need to be substituted for the backward or centred versions of the operators respectively.

## 3.3 Frequency domain analysis

Frequency domain analysis, also called Fourier analysis, is a way to determine various properties of a FD scheme, including conditions for stability. The process is similar to finding stability for digital filters. In essence, a FD scheme can be seen as a complex filter of which its coefficients are defined by physical parameters. This section will explain how to obtain a frequency domain representation of a scheme and will mainly follow [2], albeit in a slightly more practical manner.

### Frequency domain representation and ansatz

Frequency domain analysis of FD schemes starts by performing a *z-transform* on the scheme. The z-transform converts a discrete signal into a frequency domain representation, and is extensively used in the field of digital signal processing (DSP) to analyse the behaviour and especially stability of digital filters. To not go too much into detail here, the interested reader is referred to the very comprehensive explanation on the z-transform given in [54, Ch. 5].

If a system is distributed in space, one can perform a spatial Fourier transform on a grid function. Frequency domain analysis in the distributed case is called *von Neumann analysis* which first appeared in [55] co-authored by John von Neumann. Later, this technique got a more general treatment in [56] and is heavily used in [2]. The discrete-time z-transform and discrete spatial Fourier transform performed on a 1D grid function are defined as [2]

$$\hat{u} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} u_l^n z^{-n} \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{u} = \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} u_l^n e^{-jl\beta h} \quad (3.19)$$

with complex number  $z = e^{sk}$ , complex frequency  $s = j\omega + \sigma$  (more elaborated on in 3.5) and real wavenumber  $\beta$ . Frequency domain analysis in 2D will be elaborated on in Section 6.2.4.

A shortcut to performing a full frequency domain analysis is to use a test solution, or *ansatz*, and replace the grid functions by their transforms. The grid function for a 1D system can be replaced by an ansatz of the form (1D) [56]

$$u_l^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} z^n e^{jl\beta h} \quad (3.20)$$

check reference

where " $\xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}}$ " indicates to replace the grid function with the ansatz (the shortcut to taking the full z-transform and spatial Fourier transform).

Like in the DSP realm, the power of  $z$  indicates a temporal shift, i.e.,  $z^{-1}$  is a one-sample delay. In a FDTD context, this corresponds to a time shift as seen in Section 2.2.2. For spatially distributed systems, a shift in  $l$  can be interpreted as a phase shift of a frequency with wavenumber  $\beta$ . See Table 3.1 for the frequency domain representation of grid functions with their temporal and spatial indices shifted in different ways.

Grid function	Ansatz	Result
$u_l^n$	$z^0 e^{j0\beta h}$	1
$u_l^{n+1}$	$z^1 e^{j0\beta h}$	$z$
$u_l^{n-1}$	$z^{-1} e^{j0\beta h}$	$z^{-1}$
$u_{l+1}^n$	$z^0 e^{j1\beta h}$	$e^{j\beta h}$
$u_{l-1}^n$	$z^0 e^{j(-1)\beta h}$	$e^{-j\beta h}$
$u_{l+2}^n$	$z^0 e^{j2\beta h}$	$e^{j2\beta h}$
$u_{l-2}^n$	$z^0 e^{j(-2)\beta h}$	$e^{-j2\beta h}$
$u_{l+1}^{n-1}$	$z^{-1} e^{j1\beta h}$	$z^{-1} e^{j\beta h}$
$u_{l-1}^{n-1}$	$z^{-1} e^{j(-1)\beta h}$	$z^{-1} e^{-j\beta h}$

**Table 3.1:** Frequency domain representation of a grid function using ansatz (3.20) with frequently appearing temporal and spatial shifts.

Using these definitions, the effect of various operators on a grid function can be written in their frequency domain representation. For systems distributed in space, the following trigonometric identities are extremely useful when performing the analyses [57, p. 71]:

$$\sin(x) = \frac{e^{jx} - e^{-jx}}{2j} \Rightarrow \sin^2(x) = \frac{e^{j2x} + e^{-j2x}}{-4} + \frac{1}{2}, \quad (3.21a)$$

$$\cos(x) = \frac{e^{jx} + e^{-jx}}{2} \Rightarrow \cos^2(x) = \frac{e^{j2x} + e^{-j2x}}{4} + \frac{1}{2}. \quad (3.21b)$$

Take for example

$$\delta_{xx} u_l^n = \frac{1}{h^2} (u_{l+1}^n - 2u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n) \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} \frac{1}{h^2} (e^{j\beta h} - 2 + e^{-j\beta h}).$$

Then, using  $x = \beta h/2$ , identity (3.21a) can be rewritten to

$$e^{j\beta h} - 2 + e^{-j\beta h} = -4 \sin^2(\beta h/2),$$

and substituted into the above to get

$$\delta_{xx} u_l^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} -\frac{4}{h^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2).$$

### 3.3. Frequency domain analysis

Examples of various temporal FD operators applied to grid functions in their frequency domain representation are

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{t+} u_l^n &\xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} \frac{1}{k} (z - 1), & \delta_{t-} u_l^n &\xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} \frac{1}{k} (1 - z^{-1}), \\ \delta_{t\cdot} u_l^n &\xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} \frac{1}{2k} (z - z^{-1}), & \delta_{tt} u_l^n &\xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} \frac{1}{k^2} (z - 2 + z^{-1})\end{aligned}\quad (3.22)$$

and for spatial operators identity (3.21a) can be used to obtain

$$\delta_{xx} u_l^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} -\frac{4}{h^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2), \quad (3.23a)$$

$$\delta_{xxxx} u_l^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} \frac{16}{h^4} \sin^4(\beta h/2). \quad (3.23b)$$

#### Proving stability

Similar to digital filters, the system is stable when the roots of the characteristic polynomial in  $z$  are bounded by 1 (unity)

$$|z| \leq 1. \quad (3.24)$$

only the denominator of the transfer function

In the FDTD context, the frequency domain representation of a FD scheme results in a *characteristic equation* – which is usually a second-order polynomial – in  $z$  and needs to satisfy condition (3.24) for all wave numbers  $\beta$ . It can be shown that for a polynomial of the form

$$z^2 + a^{(1)}z + a^{(2)} \quad (3.25)$$

its roots satisfy condition (3.24) when it abides the following condition [2]

$$|a^{(1)}| - 1 \leq a^{(2)} \leq 1. \quad (3.26)$$

If  $a^{(2)} = 1$ , the simpler condition

$$|a^{(1)}| \leq 2, \quad (3.27)$$

suffices.

#### 3.3.1 Mass-spring system

Recalling the FD scheme of the mass-spring system in Eq. (2.35)

$$M\delta_{tt} u^n = -Ku^n$$

a frequency domain representation can be obtained using the ansatz in (3.20) with  $l = 0$ . Using Table 3.1 and Eqs. (3.22) as a reference and substituting the definitions yields

$$\frac{M}{k^2} (z - 2 + z^{-1}) = -K.$$

Gathering the terms and moving all to the left-hand side, the characteristic equation for the mass-spring system can be obtained:

$$z - \left(2 - \frac{Kk^2}{M}\right) + z^{-1} = 0. \quad (3.28)$$

To begin to prove stability, this equation needs to be written in the form found in (3.25). Multiplying all the terms by  $z$ , and noticing that  $a^{(2)} = 1$ , one could continue with condition (3.27). However, the scheme used here is a special case where the roots of the characteristic equation can not be identical [2]. When this happens, the output of the system will grow linearly and is called “marginally unstable”. This means that  $|a^{(1)}| \neq 1$  and the condition in (3.27) becomes  $|a^{(1)}| < 2$ . Continuing with this conditions yields

$$\begin{aligned} \left| -2 + \frac{Kk^2}{M} \right| &< 2, \\ -2 < -2 + \frac{Kk^2}{M} &< 2, \\ 0 < \frac{Kk^2}{M} &< 4. \end{aligned}$$

If only non-zero values are chosen for  $K$ ,  $k$  and  $M$  they are positive (as they are already defined as being non-negative) and the first condition is always satisfied. The second condition is then easily solved for  $k$  by

$$k < 2\sqrt{\frac{M}{K}}. \quad (3.29)$$

Recalling that  $\omega_0 = \sqrt{K/M}$ , Eq (3.29) can be more compactly written as

$$k < \frac{2}{\omega_0}. \quad (3.30)$$

### 3.3.2 1D wave equation

This section will derive the stability condition for the 1D wave equation presented in Section 2.4 using von Neumann analysis.

### 3.3. Frequency domain analysis

Recalling the FD scheme in (2.42):

$$\delta_{tt} u_l^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} u_l^n,$$

its frequency domain representation can be obtained using the definitions in Eqs. (3.22) and (3.23a):

$$\frac{1}{k^2} (z - 2 + z^{-1}) = -\frac{4c^2}{h^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2). \quad (3.31)$$

Also recalling that

$$\lambda = \frac{ck}{h},$$

the characteristic equation of the 1D wave equation is

$$z + (4\lambda^2 \sin^2(\beta h/2) - 2) + z^{-1} = 0. \quad (3.32)$$

The scheme is then stable if the roots satisfy condition (3.24). As the characteristic equation is of the form in (3.25) (after multiplication with  $z$ ) with  $a^{(2)} = 1$ , stability is shown by abiding condition (3.27) for all  $\beta$  and when applied to the characteristic equation (3.32), it can be seen that

$$\begin{aligned} |4\lambda^2 \sin^2(\beta h/2) - 2| &\leq 2, \\ |2\lambda^2 \sin^2(\beta h/2) - 1| &\leq 1, \\ -1 \leq 2\lambda^2 \sin^2(\beta h/2) - 1 &\leq 1, \\ 0 \leq 2\lambda^2 \sin^2(\beta h/2) &\leq 2, \\ 0 \leq \lambda^2 \sin^2(\beta h/2) &\leq 1. \end{aligned}$$

Observing that all terms in  $\lambda^2 \sin^2(\beta h/2)$  are squared, this term will always be non-negative and therefore always satisfy the first condition. Continuing with the second condition, and knowing that the  $\sin^2(\beta h/2)$ -term is bounded by 1 for all  $\beta$ , yields the following stability condition:

$$\lambda \leq 1.$$

This is the CFL condition given in Eq. (2.46). To obtain the stability condition in terms of the grid spacing, the definition for  $\lambda$  is substituted and written in terms of the grid spacing

$$h \geq ck, \quad (3.33)$$

which is the stability condition given in Eq. (2.47).

### 3.3.3 Discussion

Although frequency domain analysis is very useful, it can only be applied to linear and time-invariant (LTI) systems and linear and shift-invariant (LSI) systems. These, respectively, describe systems whose properties do not change over time (LTI) and space (LSI).<sup>2</sup> Furthermore, the analysis assumes systems with infinite domains, so boundary conditions are not included. Energy analysis techniques, on the other hand, allow these types of systems, even nonlinear systems, to be analysed, as well as being able to handle boundary conditions. This will be presented below.

## 3.4 Energy analysis

Of all analysis techniques described in this chapter, energy analysis is without a doubt the most important when working with FDTD methods. First of all, from a practical point of view, it is essential for debugging implementations of FD schemes. Especially when trying to model more complex systems, programming errors are unavoidable, and energy analysis can be extremely helpful in pinpointing where the error lies. Secondly, energy analysis techniques can be used to obtain stability conditions in a much more general sense than the frequency domain analysis techniques presented in Section 3.3. Where frequency domain analysis is restricted to LTI and LSI systems with infinite domains (for distributed systems), energy analysis can be applied to nonlinear systems and include boundary conditions [2].

Gustafsson et al. in (the first edition of) [58] worked with energy to find stability conditions for FD schemes. This, they referred to as ‘the energy method’ and it effectively circumvented the need of a frequency domain representation to find stability conditions (as presented in Section 3.3). Later, energy, or more specifically ‘energy as a conserved quantity’, was used to determine stability and passivity of systems. Bilbao gives an extensive overview in [2] where this has been extensively used to show stability of the FD schemes used.

One of the main goals when performing energy analysis is to find an expression for the total energy present in the system. This is referred to as the *Hamiltonian* and denoted by  $\mathcal{H}$  in continuous time and  $\mathfrak{h}$  in discrete time. In this work, the focus of the energy analysis will be in discrete time.

In this section, four steps are presented and can be followed to perform a full energy analysis of a FD scheme and implement it afterwards. Then, the analysis will be performed on the mass-spring system and the 1D wave equation presented in Chapter 2. Finally, it will be shown how to obtain stability conditions through the techniques presented in this section.

---

<sup>2</sup>Acoustic tubes with a spatially-varying cross-section presented in Chapter 5 are examples of non-LSI systems.

### 3.4.1 Energy analysis: A 4-step tutorial

#### Step 1: Obtain the rate of change of the total energy $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}$

The first step to energy analysis is to take the appropriate *norm* of the scheme (see Eq. (3.7)), which yields an expression for the rate of change of the energy of the system:  $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}$ . Usually, this means to take the inner product of the scheme with  $(\delta_t, u_l^n)$  over a discrete domain  $d$ . See Section 3.2.1 for more details on the inner product. Note that the forward time difference  $\delta_{t+}$  is used (and not the backwards or centred) because of convention and preference.<sup>3</sup>

For the units of the resulting energy balance to add up (also see Step 3), it is useful to perform the analysis on a scheme with all physical parameters written out (so the discretised version of Eq. (2.28) rather than Eq. (2.29)).

#### Step 2: Identify different types of energy and obtain the total energy $\mathfrak{h}$ by isolating $\delta_{t+}$

The energy of a FD scheme can generally be divided into three different types: the total energy contained within the system, or Hamiltonian  $\mathfrak{h}$ , energy losses through damping  $\mathfrak{q}$  and energy input through external forces or excitations  $\mathfrak{p}$ . For distributed systems, an additional boundary term  $\mathfrak{b}$  appears, but vanishes under ‘regular’ (lossless and not energy-storing) boundary conditions. Nearly any energy balance is thus of the form

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{b} - \mathfrak{q} - \mathfrak{p}. \quad (3.34)$$

This equation essentially says that the total energy present in the system changes due to losses and inputs. For a lossless system without externally supplied energy over the course of the simulation (so initial conditions excluded), the energy should remain unchanged over the course of the simulation,

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = 0 \implies \mathfrak{h}^n = \mathfrak{h}^0. \quad (3.35)$$

As the eventual interest lies in the total energy of the system  $\mathfrak{h}$  and not its rate of change,  $\delta_{t+}$  must be isolated in the definition of  $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}$ . In this step, the identities in Section 3.2.3 will come in handy, as well as summation by parts described in Section 3.2.2 for distributed systems.

The Hamiltonian itself can usually be further subdivided into kinetic energy and potential energy, denoted by the symbols  $\mathfrak{t}$  and  $\mathfrak{v}$  respectively:

$$\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v} \quad (3.36)$$

As a rule of thumb, the definition for kinetic energy contains ‘velocity squared’

---

<sup>3</sup>[Bilbao, verbally]

(as in the classical-mechanics definition  $E_{\text{kin}} = \frac{1}{2} M \dot{u}$ ) and the potential energy includes the restoring forces of the system.

### Step 3: Check the units in the expression for $\mathfrak{h}$

To know that the previous steps have been carried out correctly, it is good to check whether the units of the resulting expression for  $\mathfrak{h}$  is indeed in Joules, or  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ . The other quantities such as energy losses  $q$  and inputs  $p$ , should be in Joules per second or in SI units:  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-3}$ . As mentioned in Step 1, it is therefore useful to have all physical parameters written out so that the units will be correct in this step. Some information about operators and grid functions and how they ‘add’ units are given in Table 3.2. It is important to note that the time shift operator ( $e_{t-}$ ) does not influence the units. Finally, the appearance of a grid function  $u_l^n$  ‘adds’ whatever it describes. Usually, as  $u_l^n$  describes a displacement in m, it will ‘add’ this to the equation. If it describes anything else, it will ‘add’ that.

Name	Operator	Unit
Inner product (1D)	$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_d$	m
Norm (1D)	$\ \cdot, \cdot\ _d^2$	m
First order ops. in time	$\delta_{t+}, \delta_{t-}, \delta_t$ .	$\text{s}^{-1}$
Second order op. in time	$\delta_{tt}$	$\text{s}^{-2}$
First order ops. in space	$\delta_{x+}, \delta_{x-}, \delta_x$ .	$\text{m}^{-1}$
Second order op. in space	$\delta_{xx}$	$\text{m}^{-2}$
Shift operators	$e_{t-}, e_{x+}, \dots$	-
Averaging operators	$\mu_{t+}, \mu_{tt}, \mu_{x+}, \dots$	-

Table 3.2: Units of operators.

### Step 4: Implement the definitions for energy and debug the FD scheme

In the end, the definition for the energy can be implemented and used as a check for whether the FD scheme has been implemented correctly. Usually, the energy of the system is calculated for every iteration in the for loop and plotted after the simulation. For a system without losses or energy inputs, the energy should be unchanged according to Eq. (3.35) and can be plotted according to

$$\mathfrak{h}_e^n = \frac{\mathfrak{h}^n - \mathfrak{h}^0}{\mathfrak{h}^0}, \quad \text{if } \mathfrak{h}^0 \neq 0, \quad (3.37)$$

where  $\mathfrak{h}_e^n$  can be seen as the normalised energy and shows the error variation. Although this equation should always return 0 (as  $\mathfrak{h}^n = \mathfrak{h}^0$ ), in a finite precision

### 3.4. Energy analysis

simulation, minute fluctuations of the energy should be visible due to rounding errors. Plotting the Hamiltonian should show fluctuations within *machine precision*, which is usually in the range of  $10^{-15}$ . Over time, the fluctuations can add up, and possibly end up out of this range, but generally, any fluctuations less than in the  $10^{-10}$  range indicate that there is no programming error. See fx. Figures 3.1 and 3.2.

For a system with losses or energy inputs, a discrete integration, or summed form can be used (as done in fx. [59]):

$$\mathfrak{h}_e^n = \frac{\mathfrak{h}^n - \mathfrak{h}^0 + k \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} (\mathfrak{q}^m + \mathfrak{p}^m)}{\mathfrak{h}^0}, \quad \text{if } \mathfrak{h}^0 \neq 0. \quad (3.38)$$

check if the sum should indeed go until  $n-1$  and why

#### 3.4.2 Mass-spring system

Recalling the FD scheme for the simple mass-spring system in Eq. (2.34)

$$M\delta_{tt}u^n = -Ku^n$$

an energy analysis can be performed using the four steps described above.

##### Step 1: Obtain $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}$

The energy balance of the simple mass-spring system presented in Section 2.3 can be obtained by first taking the product of scheme (2.34) with  $(\delta_{t+}u^n)$ :

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = M(\delta_{t+}u^n)(\delta_{tt}u^n) + K(\delta_{t+}u^n)(u^n) = 0. \quad (3.39)$$

Note that the inner product is not necessary as the system is not distributed.

##### Step 2: Identify energy types and isolate $\delta_{t+}$

As there are no losses or externally supplied energy present in the system, all terms are part of the Hamiltonian  $\mathfrak{h}$ . To isolate  $\delta_{t+}$  from (3.39), one can use identities (3.17a) and (3.17b) to get the following:

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{M}{2}(\delta_{t-}u^n)^2 + \frac{K}{2}u^n e_{t-} u^n \right) = 0, \quad (3.40)$$

and the following definition for  $\mathfrak{h}$  can be obtained

$$\mathfrak{h} = \frac{M}{2}(\delta_{t-}u^n)^2 + \frac{K}{2}u^n e_{t-} u^n = 0. \quad (3.41)$$

This can be rewritten in terms of the kinetic energy  $t$  and potential energy  $v$  according to

$$h = t + v, \quad \text{with} \quad t = \frac{M}{2}(\delta_{t-} u^n)^2, \quad \text{and} \quad v = \frac{K}{2} u^n e_{t-} u^n. \quad (3.42)$$

### Step 3: Check units

As mentioned above, the energy  $h$  needs to be in Joules, or  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ . Taking the terms in Eq. (3.42) one-by-one and writing them in their units results in

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \frac{M}{2} (\delta_{t-} u^n)^2 \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{kg} \cdot (\text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m})^2 = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}, \\ v &= \frac{K}{2} u^n e_{t-} u^n \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{m} = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}, \end{aligned}$$

and indeed have the correct units.

### Step 4: Implementation

Equation (3.47) can then be implemented in the same for-loop recursion where the update is calculated.

```

1 %% Calculate the energy using Eq. (3.42)
2
3 % Kinetic energy
4 kinEnergy(n) = M / 2 * (1/k * (u - uPrev))^2;
5
6 % Potential energy
7 potEnergy(n) = K / 2 * u * uPrev;
8
9 % Total energy (Hamiltonian)
10 totEnergy(n) = kinEnergy(n) + potEnergy(n);

```

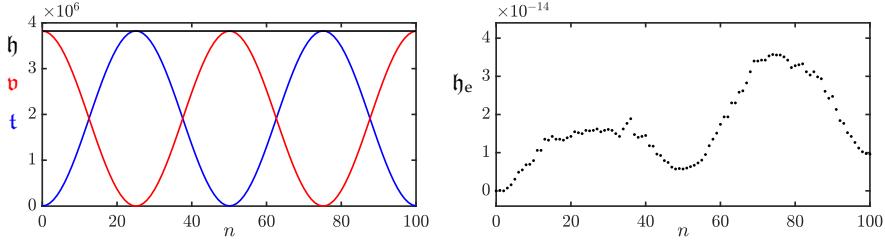
Figure 3.1 shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37)) of the mass-spring system and shows that the deviation is indeed within machine precision.

### 3.4.3 1D wave equation

Energy analysis could be directly performed on the FD scheme in (2.42). However, in order for the units of the scheme to add up to energy in Joules, it is useful to write out all physical parameters. Taking the definition for the wave speed for the ideal string  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho A}$  and multiplying both sides of Eq. (2.42) by  $\rho A$  yields

$$\rho A \delta_{tt} u_l^n = T \delta_{xx} u_l^n, \quad (3.43)$$

### 3.4. Energy analysis



**Fig. 3.1:** The kinetic (blue), potential (red), and total (black) energy of an implementation of the mass-spring system are plotted in the left panel. The right panel shows the normalised energy according to Eq. (3.37). Notice that the scaling of the y-axis is  $10^{-14}$  and the energy is thus within machine precision.

where  $l \in d$  with discrete domain  $d \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  and number of grid points  $N + 1$ . Furthermore, Dirichlet boundary conditions as given in Eq. (2.48a) are used. A note on using Neumann boundary conditions is given at the end of this section.

#### Step 1: Obtain $\delta_{t+}h$

Taking an inner product using Eq. (3.43) with  $(\delta_t.u_l^n)$  and moving all terms to the left-hand side yields the definition for the rate of change of the Hamiltonian:

$$\delta_{t+}h = \rho A \langle \delta_t.u_l^n, \delta_{tt}u_l^n \rangle_d - T \langle \delta_t.u_l^n, \delta_{xx}u_l^n \rangle_d = 0. \quad (3.44)$$

#### Step 2: Identify energy types and isolate $\delta_{t+}$

As in the case of the mass-spring system in the previous section, there are no losses or externally supplied energy present in the system, and all terms are part of the Hamiltonian  $h$ .

To isolate  $\delta_{t+}$  in Eq. (3.44), the terms have to be rewritten in a way that it fits the product identities in Section 3.2.3. Summation by parts as described in Section 3.2.2 can be used. Using identity (3.13a) with  $f_l^n \triangleq \delta_t.u_l^n$  and  $g_l^n \triangleq \delta_{x+}u_l^n$ , the second term can be rewritten to

$$-T \langle \delta_t.u_l^n, \delta_{xx}u_l^n \rangle_d = T \langle \delta_{x+}(\delta_t.u_l^n), \delta_{x+}u_l^n \rangle_d - b,$$

where the boundary term

$$b = T(\delta_t.u_N^n)(\delta_{x+}u_N^n) - T(\delta_t.u_0^n) \underbrace{(\delta_{x+}u_{-1}^n)}_{\delta_{x-}u_0^n},$$

and reduced domain  $\underline{d} = \{0, \dots, N - 1\}$ . As Dirichlet boundary conditions

are used, the boundary term vanishes as

$$u_0^n = u_N^n = 0 \implies \delta_t \cdot u_0^n = \delta_t \cdot u_N^n = 0.$$

In other words, if the states of the system at the boundaries are zero, their velocity will also be zero. Then, using the discrete inner product in Eq. (3.8), Eq. (3.44) can be expanded to

$$\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h} = \rho A \sum_{l=0}^N h(\delta_t \cdot u_l^n)(\delta_{tt} u_l^n) + T \sum_{l=0}^N h(\delta_t \cdot \delta_{x+} u_l^n)(\delta_{x+} u_l^n) \quad (3.45)$$

Then, using identities (3.17a) and (3.17b),  $\delta_{t+}$  can be isolated

$$\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h} = \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{\rho A}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2 + \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_d \right), \quad (3.46)$$

and the definition for the Hamiltonian and the kinetic and potential energy can be found:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{h} &= \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v}, \\ \text{with } \mathfrak{t} &= \frac{\rho A}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{v} = \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_d. \end{aligned} \quad (3.47)$$

### Step 3: Check units

Writing out the definitions for kinetic and potential energy in Eq. (3.47) respectively, yields

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{t} &= \frac{\rho A}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2 \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-3} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{m} \cdot (\text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m})^2 \\ &\quad = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}, \\ \mathfrak{v} &= \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_d \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{N} \cdot \text{m} \cdot (\text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \text{m}) \\ &\quad = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}, \end{aligned}$$

and are indeed in Joules. Notice that an extra ‘m’ unit appears due to the norm and inner product.

### Step 4: Implementation

The energy balance in Eq. (3.47) can be implemented with the following code in the for-loop recursion:

---

<sup>1</sup> %% Calculate the energy using Eq. (3.47)

<sup>2</sup>

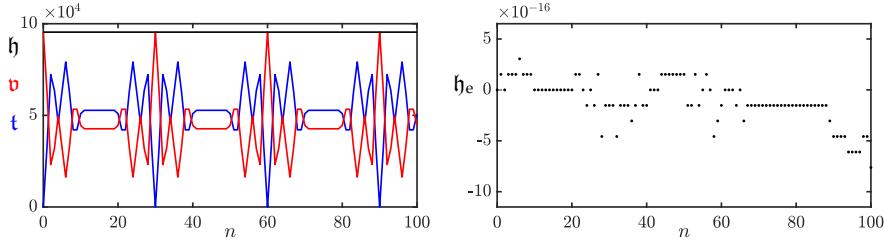
### 3.4. Energy analysis

```

3 % Kinetic energy
4 kinEnergy(n) = rho * A / 2 * h * sum((1/k * (u-uPrev)).^2);
5
6 % Potential energy
7 potEnergy(n) = T/(2*h) * sum(([u; 0] - [0; u]) ...
8     .* ([uPrev; 0] - [0; uPrev]));
9
10 % Total energy (Hamiltonian)
11 totEnergy(n) = kinEnergy(n) + potEnergy(n);

```

Here,  $\mathbf{u}$  is the vector  $\mathbf{u} = [u_1^n, \dots, u_{N-1}^n]^T$  (as Dirichlet boundary conditions are used) and need to be concatenated with 0 in the calculation of the potential energy as the boundaries needs to be included in the calculation, despite them being 0.<sup>4</sup> Figure 3.2 shows the plot of the normalised energy according to Eq. (3.37) and shows that the deviation of  $\mathfrak{h}^n$  is within machine precision.



**Fig. 3.2:** The kinetic (blue), potential (red), and total (black) energy of an implementation of the 1D wave equation are plotted in the left panel. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

### Neumann boundary conditions

If Neumann boundary conditions – as per Eq. (2.48b) – are used instead, the primed inner product in Eq. (3.9) needs to be used in Step 1. Using the identity in (3.14a), summation by parts of the second term results in

$$-T\langle \delta_t u_l^n, \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle'_d = T\langle \delta_{x+}(\delta_t u_l^n), \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_d - \mathfrak{b},$$

where the boundary term

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{b} &= T(\delta_t u_N^n)(\mu_{x-} \delta_{x+} u_N^n) - T(\delta_t u_0^n)(\mu_{x-} \delta_{x+} u_0^n), \\ \xrightleftharpoons{\text{Eq. (2.27b)}} &= T(\delta_t u_N^n)(\delta_{x+} u_N^n) - T(\delta_t u_0^n)(\delta_{x+} u_0^n). \end{aligned}$$

<sup>4</sup>As can be seen from the definition of  $\mathfrak{v}$  in Eq. (3.47), the domain used for the inner product is  $\underline{d} = \{0, \dots, N-1\}$  and  $\mathfrak{v}$  contains a forward difference in its definition requiring  $u_N^n$  as well.

As the Neumann boundary condition states that

$$\delta_x \cdot u_0^n = \delta_x \cdot u_N^n = 0$$

the boundary term vanishes and the energy balance results in

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{h} &= \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v}, \\ \text{with } \mathfrak{t} &= \frac{\rho A}{2} \left( \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|'_d \right)^2, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_d. \end{aligned} \quad (3.48)$$

Using  $\mathbf{u}$  for the vector  $\mathbf{u} = [u_0^n, \dots, u_N^n]^T$ , this is then implemented as

```

1 %% Calculate the energy using Eq. (3.48)
2
3 % Scaling of the boundaries through weighted inner product
4 scaling = [0.5; ones(N-1, 1); 0.5];
5
6 % Kinetic energy
7 kinEnergy(n) = rho * A / 2 * h * sum(scaling .* (1/k * (u-uPrev)).^2);
8
9 % Potential energy
10 potEnergy(n) = T/(2*h) * sum(u(2:end) - u(1:end-1) ...
11     .* (uPrev(2:end) - uPrev(1:end-1)));
12
13 % Total energy (Hamiltonian)
14 totEnergy(n) = kinEnergy(n) + potEnergy(n);

```

### 3.4.4 Stability using energy analysis techniques

Section 3.3 showed how to obtain a stability condition of a FD scheme using a frequency domain representation. Although not operating in the frequency domain, the energy analysis techniques presented here may also be used to obtain stability conditions of FD schemes and might even be considered more powerful than the frequency domain approach, as it can also be used to analyse spatially varying and nonlinear systems!

To arrive at a stability condition, the energy must be *non-negative* ( $\mathfrak{h} \geq 0$ ) or, in some cases *positive definite* ( $\mathfrak{h} > 0$ ). Below, the mass-spring system and the 1D wave equation will be used as a test case.

#### Mass-spring system

Section 3.3.1 mentions that the mass-spring system is a special case in that the roots of its characteristic equation can not be identical. When proving stability using energy analysis, this means that the energy of the system needs to be

long sentence

### 3.4. Energy analysis

positive definite. It can be shown that an equation of the form

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2axy \quad (3.49)$$

is positive definite if  $|a| < 1$ .

Equation (3.49) can be used to prove stability for the mass spring system using the energy balance in Eq. (3.42). One can easily conclude that  $t$  is non-negative due to the fact that  $M > 0$  and  $(\delta_{t-} u^n)$  is squared. The potential energy  $v$ , however, is of indefinite sign. Expanding the operators in Eq. (3.42) yields

$$\begin{aligned} h &= \frac{M}{2k^2} \left( (u^n)^2 - 2u^n u^{n-1} + (u^{n-1})^2 \right) + \frac{K}{2} u^n u^{n-1}, \\ &= \frac{M}{2k^2} \left( (u^n)^2 + (u^{n-1})^2 \right) + \left( \frac{K}{2} - \frac{M}{k^2} \right) u^n u^{n-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Dividing all terms by  $M/2k^2$  this equation is of the form in Eq. (3.49):

$$h = (u^n)^2 + (u^{n-1})^2 + \left( \frac{Kk^2}{M} - 2 \right) u^n u^{n-1}.$$

For  $h$  to be positive definite, the following condition must hold

$$\left| \frac{Kk^2}{2M} - 1 \right| < 1.$$

This can then be written as

$$\begin{aligned} -1 &< \frac{Kk^2}{2M} - 1 < 1 \\ 0 &< \frac{Kk^2}{2M} < 2 \end{aligned}$$

where, as long as  $K$  and  $k$  are non-zero, the first inequality is always satisfied. Then the condition solved for  $k$  can easily be shown to be

$$k < 2\sqrt{\frac{M}{K}} \quad (3.50)$$

which is identical to the definition in Eq. (3.29).

### 1D wave equation

For the 1D wave equation, the energy must be proven to be non-negative. One can take the energy balance in Eq. (3.47) and conclude that  $t$  is non-negative due to the non-negativity of the parameters and  $(\delta_{t-} u_l^n)$  being squared. The

potential energy, however, is of indefinite sign. One can rewrite  $\mathfrak{v}$  using identity (3.17f) as

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{v} &= \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_{\underline{d}}, \\ &= \frac{T}{2} \sum_{l=0}^{N-1} h(\delta_{x+} u_l^n)(e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n), \\ &= \frac{T}{2} \sum_{l=0}^{N-1} h \left( (\mu_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n)^2 - \frac{k^2}{4} (\delta_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n)^2 \right), \\ &= \frac{T}{2} \left( \|\mu_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_{\underline{d}}^2 - \frac{k^2}{4} \|\delta_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_{\underline{d}}^2 \right).\end{aligned}$$

One can then use the following bound for spatial differences [2]

$$\|\delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_{\underline{d}} \leq \frac{2}{h} \|u_l^n\|_d' \leq \frac{2}{h} \|u_l^n\|_d, \quad (3.51)$$

to put a condition on  $\mathfrak{v}$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{v} &\geq \frac{T}{2} \left( \|\mu_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_{\underline{d}}^2 - \frac{k^2}{4} \left( \frac{2}{h} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d \right)^2 \right), \\ &\geq \frac{T}{2} \left( \|\mu_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_{\underline{d}}^2 - \frac{k^2}{h^2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2 \right),\end{aligned}$$

Substituting this condition into the energy balance in Eq. (3.47) yields

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v} &\geq \frac{\rho A}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2 + \frac{T}{2} \left( \|\mu_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_{\underline{d}}^2 - \frac{k^2}{h^2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2 \right), \\ &\geq \left( \frac{\rho A}{2} - \frac{T k^2}{2 h^2} \right) \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2 + \frac{T}{2} \|\mu_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_{\underline{d}}^2.\end{aligned}$$

Recalling that  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho A}$  and  $\lambda = ck/h$ , all terms can be divided by  $\rho A$  which yields

$$\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v} \geq \frac{1}{2} (1 - \lambda^2) \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2 + \frac{c^2}{2} \|\mu_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_{\underline{d}}^2, \quad (3.52)$$

and is non-negative for

$$\begin{aligned}1 - \lambda^2 &\geq 0, \\ \lambda &\leq 1.\end{aligned}$$

This is the same (CFL) condition obtained through von Neumann analysis in Section 3.3.2.

## 3.5 Modal analysis

Modes are the resonant frequencies of a system. The number of modes that a discrete system contains depends on the number of moving points. A mass-spring system thus has one resonating mode, but – as briefly touched upon in Section 2.4.3 – a FD scheme of the 1D wave equation with  $N = 30$  and Dirichlet boundary conditions will have 29 modes. Modal analysis can be used to obtain objective data on what modes a FD scheme should contain. This can then be used to determine whether this matches one's expectations or whether the output of the system matches what the analysis predicted. This section will show how to numerically obtain the modal frequencies of a FD implementation using the 1D wave equation as a test case.

some citation here

Recall the matrix form of the 1D wave equation from Eq. (3.5)

$$\frac{1}{k^2} (\mathbf{u}^{n+1} - 2\mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{u}^{n-1}) = c^2 \mathbf{D}_{xx} \mathbf{u}^n.$$

Following [2], a test solution of the form  $\mathbf{u}^n = z^n \phi$  can be assumed. Substituting this into the above equation yields the characteristic equation

$$(z - 2 + z^{-1})\phi = c^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{xx} \phi. \quad (3.53)$$

more explanation, perhaps refer to von neumann analysis in 3.3

This is an eigenvalue problem (see Section B.4) where the  $p^{\text{th}}$  solution  $\phi_p$  may be interpreted as the modal shape of mode  $p$ . The corresponding modal frequencies (or eigenfrequencies) are the solutions to the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} z_p - 2 + z_p^{-1} &= c^2 k^2 \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_{xx}), \\ z_p + \left( -2 - c^2 k^2 \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_{xx}) \right) + z_p^{-1} &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (3.54)$$

Furthermore, one can substitute a test solution  $z_p = e^{s_p k}$  with complex frequency  $s_p = j\omega_p + \sigma_p$  which contains the (angular) frequency  $\omega_p$  and damping  $\sigma_p \leq 0$  of the  $p^{\text{th}}$  mode.<sup>5</sup> As there is no damping present in the system, the test solution reduces to  $z_p = e^{j\omega_p k}$  which can be substituted into Eq (3.5) to get

$$\begin{aligned} e^{j\omega_p k} + e^{-j\omega_p k} - 2 - c^2 k^2 \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_{xx}) &= 0, \\ \frac{e^{j\omega_p k} + e^{-j\omega_p k}}{-4} + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{c^2 k^2}{4} \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_{xx}) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

check with Stefan

---

<sup>5</sup>Notice that regardless of the possible damping coefficient per mode, the eventual amplitude of each will mostly be determined by the locations of the excitation and output as discussed in Section 2.4.3.

Finally, using the trigonometric identity in Eq. (3.21a) yields

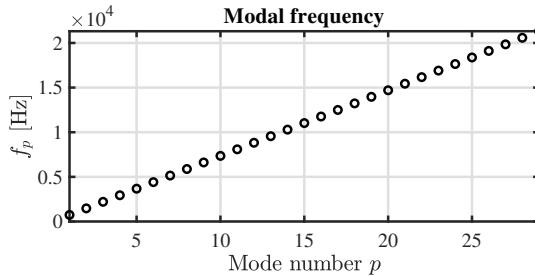
$$\begin{aligned}\sin^2(\omega_p k/2) + \frac{c^2 k^2}{4} \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_{xx}) &= 0, \\ \sin(\omega_p k/2) &= \frac{ck}{2} \sqrt{-\text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_{xx})}, \\ \omega_p &= \frac{2}{k} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{ck}{2} \sqrt{-\text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_{xx})} \right),\end{aligned}\quad (3.55)$$

and can be rewritten to

$$f_p = \frac{1}{\pi k} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{ck}{2} \sqrt{-\text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_{xx})} \right) \quad (3.56)$$

to get the modal frequency of the  $p^{\text{th}}$  mode in Hz.

See Figure 3.3 for a plot of the modal frequencies of an implementation of the 1D wave equation with the parameters given in Table 2.1. The figure shows one great advantage of performing modal analysis on a FD scheme, over only obtaining the spectrum of its output. Although the values from the analysis do correspond to the partials shown in the frequency domain output of the 1D wave equation in Figure 2.11, the latter does not show all modes present in the system. This is due to the input and output locations of the system as discussed in Section 2.4.3. The modal analysis does obtain the frequency data regardless of the aforementioned input and output locations.



**Fig. 3.3:** Modal frequencies of the 1D wave equation with the parameters given in Table 2.1.

### 3.5.1 One-step form

For more complicated systems, specifically those containing damping terms, it is useful to rewrite the update in *one-step form* (also referred to as a state-space representation). The damping terms cause the coefficients of  $z$  and  $z^{-1}$  in the characteristic equation to not be identical and the trigonometric identities in (3.21) can not be used directly. Although the eigenvalue calculation needs to

### 3.5. Modal analysis

be done on a larger matrix, it allows for a more general and direct way to calculate the modal frequencies and damping coefficients per mode.

If matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  has an inverse, any scheme of the form

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{C}\mathbf{u}^{n-1}, \quad (3.57)$$

can be rewritten to

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}^{n+1} \\ \mathbf{u}^n \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{w}^{n+1}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{B} & \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{C} \\ \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{Q}} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}^n \\ \mathbf{u}^{n-1} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{w}^n} \quad (3.58)$$

which relates the unknown state of the system to the known state through matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$  which encompasses the scheme. The sizes of the identity matrix  $\mathbf{I}$  and zero matrix  $\mathbf{0}$  are the same size as  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$ .

Again, solutions of the form  $\mathbf{w}^n = z^n \phi$  can be assumed (where  $\phi$  is now less-trivially connected to the modal shapes)

$$z\phi = \mathbf{Q}\phi, \quad (3.59)$$

which can be solved for the  $p$ th eigenvalue as

$$z_p = \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{Q}). \quad (3.60)$$

As the scheme could exhibit damping, the test solution  $z_p = e^{s_p k}$  is used. Substituting this yields

$$\begin{aligned} e^{s_p k} &= \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{Q}), \\ s_p &= \frac{1}{k} \ln (\text{eig}_p(\mathbf{Q})). \end{aligned} \quad (3.61)$$

Solutions for the frequency and damping for the  $p$ th eigenvalue can then be obtained through

$$\omega_p = \Im(s_p) \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_p = \Re(s_p), \quad (3.62)$$

where  $\Im(\cdot)$  and  $\Re(\cdot)$  denote the “imaginary part of” and “real part of” respectively.

As the elements of  $\mathbf{Q}$  are real-valued, the solutions  $s_p$  in Eq. (3.61) come in complex conjugates (pairs of numbers of which the imaginary part has an opposite sign). For analysis, only the  $\Im(s_p) \geq 0$  should be considered as these correspond to non-negative frequencies.

## 3.6 Conclusion

This chapter presented three different analysis techniques in discrete time, that are of extreme utility when working with FD schemes. Frequency domain analysis, or von Neumann analysis in the distributed case, can be used to obtain stability conditions for LTI and LSI systems. Energy analysis techniques can also be used to prove stability and passivity, but for a larger range of systems including LTI, LSI, and nonlinear systems. Furthermore, energy analysis can be used in a practical manner to debug implementations of FD schemes and ensure that no programming errors have been made. Finally, modal analysis can be used to analyse the behaviour of a scheme in terms of its modal frequencies and modal shapes. This can be used to determine whether the auditory output matches the predictions of the analysis. Although analogous techniques in continuous time also exist, a more practical angle has been chosen for this work and only the discrete time methods have been presented. For more information about the techniques in continuous time, see [2].

All three analysis techniques will be extensively used in the rest of this document to analyse the FD schemes used in this project.

## **Part II**

# **Resonators**



# Resonators

Although the physical models described in the previous part – the simple mass-spring system and the 1D wave equation – are also considered resonators, they are *ideal* cases. In other words, these can not be found in the real world as effects such as losses or frequency dispersion are not included.

This part presents the different resonators used over the course of the project that better include these non-ideal physical processes and is structured as follows: Chapter 4 introduces the stiff string, an extension of the 1D wave equation, Chapter 5 introduces acoustic tubes, used to model brass instruments, and finally, Chapter 6 introduces 2D systems which, in this project, have been used to simulate (simplified) instrument bodies. The analysis techniques introduced in the previous part will be applied to all models and described in detail.



## Chapter 4

# The Stiff String

In earlier chapters, the case of the ideal string was presented, modelled using the 1D wave equation. This system, if the CFL condition is satisfied with equality, generates an output with harmonic partials that are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency. In the real world, however, strings exhibit a phenomenon called *frequency dispersion* due to stiffness in the material, hence the name *stiff string*. This phenomenon causes another effect known as *inharmonicity*: the “harmonic” partials get exponentially further apart the higher their frequency is. The stiffness in a string is dependent on its material properties and geometry and will be elaborated on in this chapter. The stiff string played a prominent part in the following papers: [A], [B], [C], [D] and [E].

This chapter presents the PDE of the stiff string in continuous time, and goes through the discretisation process. The analysis techniques presented in Chapter 3 will then be applied to the resulting (explicit) FD scheme and derived in detail. Finally, an example of an implicit scheme will be given and comparison to the earlier FD scheme will be made. Unless denoted otherwise, this chapter follows [2].

### 4.1 Continuous time

Consider a lossless stiff string of length  $L$  and with a circular cross-section. Its transverse displacement is described by  $u = u(x, t)$  (in m) defined for  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  with domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$  and time  $t \geq 0$ . The PDE describing its motion is

$$\rho A \partial_t^2 u = T \partial_x^2 u - EI \partial_x^4 u \quad (4.1)$$

parametrised by material density  $\rho$  (in kg/m<sup>3</sup>), cross-sectional area  $A = \pi r^2$  (in m<sup>2</sup>), radius  $r$  (in m), tension  $T$  (in N), Young’s modulus  $E$  (in Pa) and area moment of inertia  $I = \pi r^4/4$  (in m<sup>4</sup>). If  $E = 0$ , Eq (4.1) reduces to the 1D wave

equation in Eq. (2.38) where  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho A}$ , i.e., the ideal string. If instead  $T = 0$ , Eq. (4.1) reduces to the *ideal bar* equation. A more compact way to write Eq. (4.1) is

$$\partial_t^2 u = c^2 \partial_x^2 u - \kappa^2 \partial_x^4 u \quad (4.2)$$

with wave speed  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho A}$  (in m/s) and stiffness coefficient  $\kappa = \sqrt{EI/\rho A}$ .

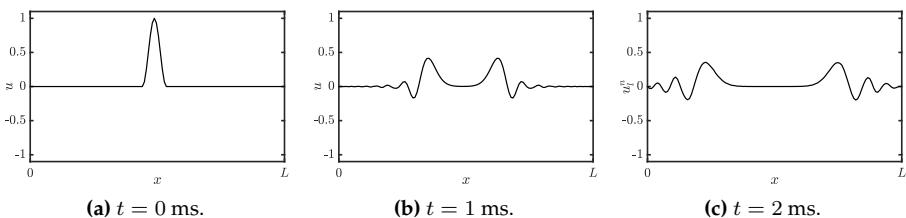
The difference between the ideal string and the stiff string is the term containing a 4<sup>th</sup>-order spatial derivative. This term adds *stiffness* to the system and causes frequency dispersion. As opposed to unwanted numerical dispersion due to numerical error (see Section 2.4.4) this type of dispersion is physical and thus something desired in the model. This phenomenon causes higher frequencies to travel faster through a medium than lower frequencies. See Figure 4.1. Furthermore, frequency dispersion is closely tied to *inharmonicity*, an effect where ‘harmonic’ partials get exponentially further apart as frequency increases. For low values of  $\kappa$ , the frequency of these partials can be expressed in terms of the fundamental frequency  $f_0 = c/2L$  (as in Eq. (2.40)) and frequency of partial  $p$  (in Hz) is defined as [2]

$$f_p = f_0 p \sqrt{1 + B p^2}, \quad (4.3)$$

with inharmonicity coefficient

$$B = \frac{\kappa^2 \pi^2}{c^2}.$$

Frequency dispersion and inharmonicity will be further discussed in Section 4.2.3.



**Fig. 4.1:** Frequency dispersion in a stiff string due to stiffness.

### 4.1.1 Adding losses

Before moving on to the discretisation of the PDE in Eq. (4.1), losses can be added to the system. In the physical world, strings lose energy through fx. air viscosity and thermoelastic effects. All frequencies lose energy and die out (damp) over time, but higher frequencies do so at a much faster rate.

#### 4.1. Continuous time

This phenomenon is called *frequency-dependent damping* and can be modelled using a mixed derivative  $\partial_t \partial_x^2$ . This way of frequency-dependent damping first appeared in [60] and has been used extensively in the literature since [24, 2]. A damped stiff string can be modelled as

$$\rho A \partial_t^2 u = T \partial_x^2 u - EI \partial_x^4 u - 2\sigma_0 \rho A \partial_t u + 2\sigma_1 \rho A \partial_t \partial_x^2 u, \quad (4.4)$$

where the non-negative loss coefficients  $\sigma_0$  (in  $\text{s}^{-1}$ ) and  $\sigma_1$  (in  $\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ ) determine the frequency-independent and frequency-dependent losses respectively. Appendix D attempts to provide some intuition on workings of these damping terms.

A more compact way to write Eq. (4.4), and is also found often in the literature [2], is to divide all terms by  $\rho A$  to get

$$\partial_t^2 u = c^2 \partial_x^2 u - \kappa^2 \partial_x^4 u - 2\sigma_0 \partial_t u + 2\sigma_1 \partial_t \partial_x^2 u, \quad (4.5)$$

where  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho A}$  is the wave speed (in m/s) as in the 1D wave equation in (2.38) and  $\kappa = \sqrt{EI/\rho A}$  is referred to as the stiffness coefficient (in  $\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ ).

etc.

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: check  
wavespeed or  
wave speed  
(entire docu-  
ment)

#### Boundary conditions

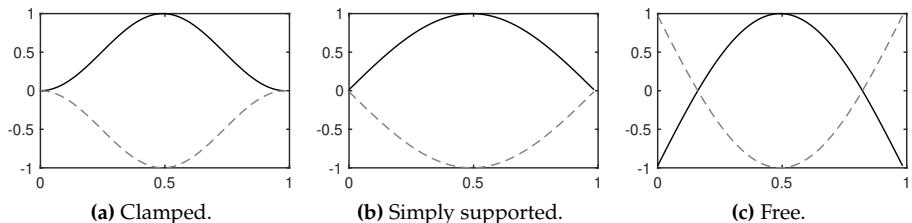
Section 2.4 presents two types of boundary conditions for the 1D wave equation in Eq. (2.39). In the case of the stiff string, these can be extended to

$$u = \partial_x u = 0 \quad (\text{clamped}) \quad (4.6a)$$

$$u = \partial_x^2 u = 0 \quad (\text{simply supported}) \quad (4.6b)$$

$$\partial_x^2 u = \partial_x^3 u = 0 \quad (\text{free}) \quad (4.6c)$$

at  $x = 0, L$ . See Figure 4.2 for plots of the first modal shape for each respective boundary condition.



**Fig. 4.2:** Plots of the first (normalised) modal shape for the three boundary conditions in Eqs. (4.6). The extremes are indicated with solid black and dashed grey respectively.

## 4.2 Discrete time

For the sake of compactness, Eq. (4.5) will be used in the following, rather than Eq. (4.4). Naturally, the same process can be followed for the latter, the only difference being a multiplication by  $\rho A$  of all terms.

Following Section 2.2.1 and using the FD operators presented in Section 2.2.2, Eq. (4.5) can be discretised as

$$\delta_{tt} u_l^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} u_l^n - \kappa^2 \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n - 2\sigma_0 \delta_t u_l^n + 2\sigma_1 \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n, \quad (4.7)$$

and is defined for domain  $l \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  and number of grid points  $N + 1$ . The  $\delta_{xxxx}$  operator is defined as the second-order spatial difference in Eq. (2.8) applied to itself:

$$\delta_{xxxx} = \delta_{xx} \delta_{xx} = \frac{1}{h^4} (e_{x+}^2 - 4e_{x+} + 6 - 4e_{x-} + e_{x-}^2). \quad (4.8)$$

A multiplication of two shift operators applied to a grid function simply means to apply each shift individually. The  $\delta_{xxxx}$  operator applied to  $u_l^n$  thus becomes

$$\delta_{xxxx} u_l^n = \frac{1}{h^4} (u_{l+2}^n - 4u_{l+1}^n + 6u_l^n - 4u_{l-1}^n + u_{l-2}^n). \quad (4.9)$$

A definition for the mixed-derivative operator can similarly be found. Recalling the definitions for  $\delta_{t-}$  in Eq. (2.3b) and  $\delta_{xx}$  Eq. (2.8), their combination results in

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} &= \frac{1}{k} (1 - e_{t-}) \frac{1}{h^2} (e_{x+} - 2 + e_{x-}), \\ &= \frac{1}{kh^2} (e_{x+} - 2 + e_{x-} - e_{t-}(e_{x+} - 2 + e_{x-})). \end{aligned} \quad (4.10)$$

To have two different shift operators multiplied together still simply means to apply each of them to the grid function individually. The  $\delta_{t-} \delta_{xx}$  operator applied to  $u_l^n$  thus yields

$$\delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n = \frac{1}{hk^2} (u_{l+1}^n - 2u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n - u_{l+1}^{n-1} + 2u_l^{n-1} - u_{l-1}^{n-1}). \quad (4.11)$$

The reason a backwards difference is used here is to keep the system *explicit*. A scheme is explicit if the values of  $u_l^{n+1}$  can be calculated from known values at times  $n$  and  $n - 1$ . If this is not the case and values of fx.  $u_{l+1}^{n+1}$  and  $u_{l-1}^{n+1}$  are required to calculate  $u_l^{n+1}$ , the scheme is called *implicit*. An example of an implicit scheme using the centred operator for the temporal derivative in the frequency-dependent damping term instead can be found in Section 4.6.

Using the definitions above, the operators in scheme (4.7) can be expanded

## 4.2. Discrete time

to get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{k^2} (u_l^{n+1} - 2u_l^n + u_l^{n-1}) &= \frac{c^2}{h^2} (u_{l+1}^n - 2u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n) \\ &\quad - \frac{\kappa^2}{h^4} (u_{l+2}^n - 4u_{l+1}^n + 6u_l^n - 4u_{l-1}^n + u_{l-2}^n) \\ &\quad - \frac{\sigma_0}{k} (u_l^{n+1} - u_l^{n-1}) \\ &\quad + \frac{2\sigma_1}{kh^2} (u_{l+1}^n - 2u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n - u_{l+1}^{n-1} + 2u_l^{n-1} + u_{l-1}^{n-1}), \end{aligned} \tag{4.12}$$

and after multiplication by  $k^2$  and collecting the terms yields

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \sigma_0 k) u_l^{n+1} &= \left( 2 - 2\lambda^2 - 6\mu^2 - \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \right) u_l^n \\ &\quad + \left( \lambda^2 + 4\mu^2 + \frac{2\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \right) (u_{l+1}^n + u_{l-1}^n) \\ &\quad - \mu^2 (u_{l+2}^n + u_{l-2}^n) + \left( -1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \right) u_l^{n-1} \\ &\quad - \frac{2\sigma_1 k}{h^2} (u_{l+1}^{n-1} + u_{l-1}^{n-1}), \end{aligned} \tag{4.13}$$

with

$$\lambda = \frac{ck}{h} \quad \text{and} \quad \mu = \frac{\kappa k}{h^2}. \tag{4.14}$$

The update equation follows by dividing both sides by  $(1 + \sigma_0 k)$ .

The stability condition for the FD scheme in (4.7) is defined as

$$h \geq \sqrt{\frac{c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k + \sqrt{(c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k)^2 + 16\kappa^2 k^2}}{2}}, \tag{4.15}$$

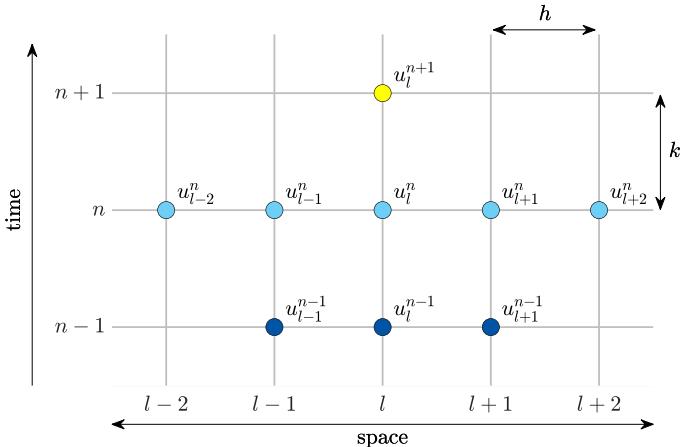
and will be derived in Section 4.3 using von Neumann analysis. This condition can then be used to calculate the number of intervals  $N$  in a similar fashion as for the 1D wave equation shown in Eq. (2.53). First, Eq. (4.15) should be satisfied with equality, after which

$$N := \left\lfloor \frac{L}{h} \right\rfloor, \quad \text{and} \quad h := \frac{L}{N}$$

which can then be used to calculate  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  in (4.14).

## Stencil

As done in Section 2.4.2, a stencil for the FD scheme in Eq. (4.7) can be created. This is shown in Figure 4.3. In order to calculate  $u_l^{n+1}$ , 5 points at the current time step are needed due to the 4<sup>th</sup>-order spatial derivative. Due to the mixed derivative in the frequency-dependent damping term, neighbouring points at the previous time step are also required.



**Fig. 4.3:** The stencil for the damped stiff string scheme in Eq. (4.7) (adapted from [A]).

### 4.2.1 Boundary conditions

Due to the 4<sup>th</sup>-order spatial derivative, two virtual grid points need to be accounted for at the boundaries of the system. Discretising the boundary conditions in (4.6) yields

$$u_l^n = \delta_{x\pm} u_l^n = 0 \quad (\text{clamped}) \quad (4.16a)$$

$$u_l^n = \delta_{xx} u_l^n = 0 \quad (\text{simply supported}) \quad (4.16b)$$

$$\delta_{xx} u_l^n = \delta_x \cdot \delta_{xx} u_l^n = 0 \quad (\text{free}) \quad (4.16c)$$

at  $l = 0, N$ . The operator in the clamped condition uses the  $\delta_{x+}$  operator at the left boundary ( $l = 0$ ) and  $\delta_{x-}$  at the right ( $l = N$ ). Note that to discretise  $\partial_x^3$  in the free boundary condition in Eq. (4.6c), the more accurate  $\delta_x \cdot \delta_{xx}$  operator has been chosen over the less accurate  $\delta_{x-} \delta_{xx}$  and  $\delta_{x+} \delta_{xx}$  operators for the left and right boundary respectively.

Below, the boundary conditions are expanded to get definitions for the virtual grid points.

insert figure showing virtual grid points somewhere in this section

### Clamped

Expanding the operators for the clamped condition yields

$$u_0^n = u_1^n = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad u_{N-1}^n = u_N^n = 0. \quad (4.17)$$

This can be simplified by reducing the range of calculation to  $l \in \{2, \dots, N-2\}$ .

### Simply supported

As the states of the end points of a system with simply supported boundary conditions are 0 at all times, the range of calculation can be reduced to  $l \in \{1, \dots, N-1\}$ . Evaluating the update equation in Eq. (4.13) at  $l = 1$  and  $l = N-1$  shows that definitions for the virtual grid points  $u_{-1}^n$  and  $u_{N+1}^n$  are required. A definition for  $u_{-1}^n$  can be found by expanding Eq. (4.16b) at  $l = 0$ :

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{h^2} (u_1^n - 2u_0^n + u_{-1}^n) = 0, \\ \xrightleftharpoons{u_0^n=0} & u_1^n + u_{-1}^n = 0, \\ & u_{-1}^n = -u_1^n, \end{aligned} \quad (4.18)$$

and similarly for  $u_{N+1}^n$  by expanding the condition at  $l = N$ :

$$u_{N+1}^n = -u_{N-1}^n.$$

Substituting the first definition into the expanded scheme in Eq. (4.12) at  $l = 1$  and collecting the terms thereafter yields

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \sigma_0 k)u_1^{n+1} &= \left(2 - 2\lambda^2 - 5\mu^2 - \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right)u_1^n + \left(\lambda^2 + 4\mu^2 + \frac{2\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right)u_2^n \\ &\quad - \mu^2 u_3^n + \left(-1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_0 k}{h^2}\right)u_1^{n-1} - \frac{2\sigma_1 k}{h^2}u_2^{n-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.19)$$

Doing the same for  $l = N-1$  yields

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \sigma_0 k)u_{N-1}^{n+1} &= \left(2 - 2\lambda^2 - 5\mu^2 - \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right)u_{N-1}^n + \left(\lambda^2 + 4\mu^2 + \frac{2\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right)u_{N-2}^n \\ &\quad - \mu^2 u_{N-3}^n + \left(-1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_0 k}{h^2}\right)u_{N-1}^{n-1} - \frac{2\sigma_1 k}{h^2}u_{N-2}^{n-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.20)$$

**Free**

Finally, the free boundary condition requires all points to be calculated and the range of calculation remains  $l \in \{0, \dots, N\}$ . At each respective boundary, two virtual grid points are needed:  $u_{-1}^n$  and  $u_{-2}^n$  at the left and  $u_{N+1}^n$  and  $u_{N+2}^n$  at the right boundary respectively. The third-order spatial FD operator in Eq. (4.16c) is defined as:

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_x \cdot \delta_{xx} &= \frac{1}{2h^3} (e_{x+} - e_{x-}) (e_{x+} - 2 + e_{x-}), \\ &= \frac{1}{2h^3} (e_{x+}^2 - 2e_{x+} + 1 - (1 - 2e_{x-} + e_{x-}^2)), \\ &= \frac{1}{2h^3} (e_{x+}^2 - 2e_{x+} + 2e_{x-} - e_{x-}^2),\end{aligned}\quad (4.21)$$

and can be used to solve for  $u_{-2}^n$  at  $l = 0$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2h^3} (u_2^n - 2u_1^n + 2u_{-1}^n - u_{-2}^n) &= 0, \\ u_{-2}^n &= u_2^n - 2u_1^n + 2u_{-1}^n.\end{aligned}$$

As  $u_0^n$  is not necessarily 0 at all times, solving the first part of the boundary condition (i.e.,  $\delta_{xx}u_0^n = 0$ ) yields a different result than in the simply supported case:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{h^2} (u_1^n - 2u_0^n + u_{-1}^n) &= 0, \\ u_{-1}^n &= 2u_0^n - u_1^n.\end{aligned}$$

The same can be done at  $l = N$  to get the following definitions for the virtual grid points

$$u_{N+2}^n = u_{N+1}^n - 2u_N^n + 2u_{N-1}^n \quad \text{and} \quad u_{N+1}^n = 2u_N^n - u_{N-1}^n.$$

The update equations for the boundary points will not be given here. Instead the matrix form of the FD scheme with free boundaries will be provided below.

In practice, the simply supported boundary condition is mostly chosen as this most realistically reflects string terminations in the real world. The clamped condition could be chosen for simplicity as this does not require an alternative update at the boundaries. The free boundary condition is more often used to model a (damped) ideal bar, (Eq. (4.4) with  $T = 0$ ).

### 4.2.2 Implementation and matrix form

When using MATLAB, for a more compact implementation, it is useful to write the scheme in matrix form (see Section 3.1.2). The FD scheme of the stiff string in (4.7) can be written as

$$A\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{C}\mathbf{u}^{n-1} \quad (4.22)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (1 + \sigma_0 k), & \mathbf{B} &= 2\mathbf{I} + c^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{xx} - \kappa^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{xxxx} + 2\sigma_1 k \mathbf{D}_{xx}, \\ \text{and } \mathbf{C} &= -(1 - \sigma_0 k)\mathbf{I} - 2\sigma_1 k \mathbf{D}_{xx}. \end{aligned}$$

Notice that  $A$  is a scalar rather than a matrix.

The size of the state vectors and the matrix-form operators depend on the boundary conditions. For clamped conditions, the state vectors ( $\mathbf{u}^{n+1}$ ,  $\mathbf{u}^n$  and  $\mathbf{u}^{n-1}$ ) and matrices will be of size  $(N-3) \times 1$  and  $(N-3) \times (N-3)$  respectively. The  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  matrix will be of the form given in Eq. (3.3) and the matrix form of the  $\delta_{xxxx}$  operator is

$$\mathbf{D}_{xxxx} = \frac{1}{h^4} \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -4 & 1 & & & \mathbf{0} \\ -4 & 6 & \ddots & \ddots & & \\ 1 & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & 1 & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & 6 & -4 & \\ \mathbf{0} & & 1 & -4 & 6 & \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.23)$$

For simply supported conditions, the state vectors and matrices will be of size  $(N-1) \times 1$  and  $(N-1) \times (N-1)$  respectively. Again,  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  is as defined in Eq. (3.3) and  $\mathbf{D}_{xxxx}$  can be obtained by multiplying two  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  matrices according to

$$\mathbf{D}_{xxxx} = \mathbf{D}_{xx} \mathbf{D}_{xx} = \frac{1}{h^4} \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -4 & 1 & & & \mathbf{0} \\ -4 & 6 & \ddots & \ddots & & \\ 1 & \ddots & \ddots & -4 & 1 & \\ & \ddots & -4 & 6 & -4 & \ddots \\ & & 1 & -4 & \ddots & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & \ddots & \ddots & 6 & -4 \\ \mathbf{0} & & & & 1 & -4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.24)$$

Finally for free boundary conditions given in Eq. (4.16c), the state vectors

and matrices are  $(N + 1) \times 1$  and  $(N + 1) \times (N + 1)$  respectively. Now, the  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  matrix is of the form in Eq. (3.4) instead, and

$$\mathbf{D}_{xxxx} = \frac{1}{h^4} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 & 2 & & & & \mathbf{0} \\ -2 & 5 & -4 & 1 & & & \\ 1 & -4 & 6 & -4 & 1 & & \\ \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & 1 & -4 & 6 & -4 & 1 & \\ & & 1 & -4 & 5 & -2 & \\ \mathbf{0} & & & 2 & -4 & 2 & \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.25)$$

### 4.2.3 Parameters and output

The values of the parameters naturally determine the properties of the output sound. Where in the 1D wave equation, only the fundamental frequency  $f_0$  could be affected (through  $c$  and  $L$  in Eq. (2.40)), the stiff string has many more aspects that can be changed. See Table 4.1 for parameters most commonly used in this project.

Name	Symbol (unit)	Value
Length	$L$ (m)	1
Material density	$\rho$ (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )	7850
Radius	$r$ (m)	$5 \cdot 10^{-4}$
Tension	$T$ (N)	$100 \leq T \leq 1.5 \cdot 10^4$
Young's modulus	$E$ (Pa)	$2 \cdot 10^{11}$
Freq.-independent damping	$\sigma_0$ (s <sup>-1</sup> )	1
Freq.-dependent damping	$\sigma_1$ (m <sup>2</sup> /s)	0.005

**Table 4.1:** Parameters and their values most commonly used over the course of this project.

A formula exists to calculate the loss coefficients  $\sigma_0$  and  $\sigma_1$  from  $T_{60}$  values at different frequencies (see [2, Eq (7.29)]). During this project, however, these values have been tuned by ear and are usually set to be approximately those found in Table 4.1.

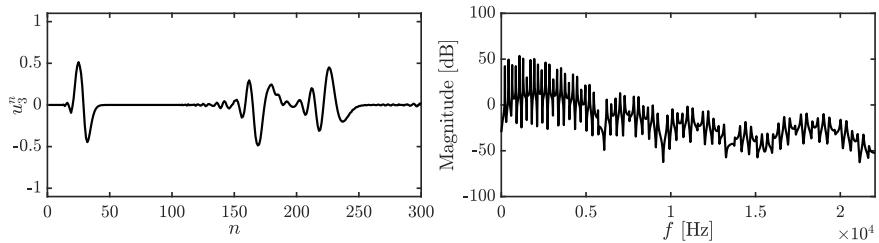
### Output

Figure 4.4 shows the time domain and frequency domain output (retrieved at  $l = 3$ ) of an implementation of the stiff string excited using a raised-cosine. The parameters used can be found in Table 4.1 with  $T = 1129$  N. Furthermore,  $E = 7 \cdot 10^{11}$  Pa to highlight dispersive effects. Finally, simply supported boundary conditions are chosen. From the left panel, one can observe that

### 4.3. von Neumann analysis and stability condition

over time, dispersive effects show where higher-frequency components in the excitation travel faster through the medium than lower-frequency components. In the frequency domain (the right panel in Figure 4.4) this shows in the fact that the partials are not perfect integer multiples of the fundamental. Notice that the partials are closer to each other for lower frequencies and further apart as their frequency increases. Finally, the frequency-dependent damping term causes higher frequencies to have a lower amplitude than lower frequencies.

Apart from the obvious material properties such as density, stiffness and geometry, perceptual qualities of the sound are surprisingly much determined by  $\sigma_1$ , and for lower values the output can become extremely metallic.



**Fig. 4.4:** The time-domain and frequency domain output of the stiff string. The parameters are set as in Table 4.1 with  $E = 7 \cdot 10^{11}$  Pa to highlight dispersive effects and  $T = 1129$  N.

## 4.3 von Neumann analysis and stability condition

In order to obtain the stability condition for the damped stiff string, one can perform von Neumann analysis as presented in Section 3.3 on the FD scheme in Eq. (4.7).

Using the definitions found in Eq. (3.22) for the temporal operators and Eqs. (3.23a) and (3.23b) for the spatial operators, the frequency domain representation of Eq. (4.7) can be obtained:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{k^2} (z - 2 + z^{-1}) = & -\frac{4c^2}{h^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2) - \frac{16\kappa^2}{h^4} \sin^4(\beta h/2) - \frac{\sigma_0}{k} z + \frac{\sigma_0}{k} z^{-1} \\ & - \frac{8\sigma_1}{kh^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2) + \frac{8\sigma_1}{kh^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2) z^{-1}, \end{aligned}$$

and after collecting the terms, the characteristic equation is as follows

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \sigma_0 k)z + \left( 16\mu^2 \sin^4(\beta h/2) + \left( 4\lambda^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \right) \sin^2(\beta h/2) - 2 \right) \\ + \left( 1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2) \right) z^{-1} = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.26)$$

Rewriting this to the form in Eq. (3.25), and using  $\mathcal{S} = \sin^2(\beta h/2)$  for brevity, yields

$$z^2 + \left( \frac{16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + \left(4\lambda^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right) \mathcal{S} - 2}{1 + \sigma_0 k} \right) z + \frac{1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}}{1 + \sigma_0 k} = 0.$$

Stability of the system can then be proven using condition (3.26), and substituting the coefficients into this condition yields

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + \left(4\lambda^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right) \mathcal{S} - 2}{1 + \sigma_0 k} \right| - 1 &\leq \frac{1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}}{1 + \sigma_0 k} \leq 1, \\ \left| 16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + \left(4\lambda^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right) \mathcal{S} - 2 \right| - (1 + \sigma_0 k) &\leq 1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S} \leq 1 + \sigma_0 k, \\ \left| 16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + \left(4\lambda^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right) \mathcal{S} - 2 \right| &\leq 2 - \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S} \leq 2 + 2\sigma_0 k. \end{aligned}$$

The second condition is always true due to the fact that  $\sigma_0, \sigma_1 \geq 0$ . Continuing with the first condition:

$$\begin{aligned} -2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S} &\leq 16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + \left(4\lambda^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right) \mathcal{S} - 2 \leq 2 - \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}, \\ 0 &\leq 16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + 4\lambda^2 \mathcal{S} \leq 4 - \frac{16\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}. \end{aligned}$$

As  $16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + 4\lambda^2 \mathcal{S}$  is non-negative, the first condition is always satisfied. Continuing with the second condition:

$$\begin{aligned} 16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + \left(4\lambda^2 + \frac{16\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right) \mathcal{S} &\leq 4, \\ 4\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + \left(\lambda^2 + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2}\right) \mathcal{S} &\leq 1. \end{aligned}$$

As  $\mathcal{S}$  is bounded by 1 for all values of  $\beta$ , one can set  $\mathcal{S} = 1$  [check with Stefan](#). Continuing with the substituted definitions for  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  from Eq. (4.14) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{4\kappa^2 k^2}{h^4} + \frac{c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} &\leq 1, \\ 4\kappa^2 k^2 + (c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k)h^2 &\leq h^4, \\ h^4 - (c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k)h^2 - 4\kappa^2 k^2 &\geq 0, \end{aligned}$$

which is a quadratic equation in  $h^2$ . Using the quadratic formula, the grid

#### 4.4. Energy analysis

spacing  $h$  can then be shown to be bounded by

$$h \geq \sqrt{\frac{c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k + \sqrt{(c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k)^2 + 16\kappa^2 k^2}}{2}}, \quad (4.27)$$

which is the stability condition for the damped stiff string also shown in Eq. (4.15).

## 4.4 Energy analysis

As mentioned in Section 3.4, it is useful to perform the energy analysis on the scheme with all physical parameters written out. Discretising the PDE in Eq. (4.4) yields

$$\rho A \delta_{tt} u_l^n = T \delta_{xx} u_l^n - EI \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n - 2\sigma_0 \rho A \delta_t u_l^n + 2\sigma_1 \rho A \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n, \quad (4.28)$$

defined for  $l \in d$  with discrete domain  $d = \{0, \dots, N\}$ . This section will follow the 4 steps described in Section 3.4.

### Step 1: Obtain $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}$

The first step is to take the inner product (see Eq. (3.8)) of the scheme with  $(\delta_t u_l^n)$  over discrete domain  $d$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} &= \rho A \langle \delta_t u_l^n, \delta_{tt} u_l^n \rangle_d - T \langle \delta_t u_l^n, \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_d + EI \langle \delta_t u_l^n, \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n \rangle_d \\ &\quad + 2\sigma_0 \rho A \langle \delta_t u_l^n, \delta_t u_l^n \rangle_d - 2\sigma_1 \rho A \langle \delta_t u_l^n, \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_d = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.29)$$

### Step 2: Identify energy types and isolate $\delta_{t+}$

As there is damping present in the system, and the system is distributed, the energy balance will be of the form

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{b} - \mathfrak{q}. \quad (4.30)$$

with boundary term  $\mathfrak{b}$  and damping term  $\mathfrak{q}$ . The latter is defined as

$$\mathfrak{q} = 2\sigma_0 \rho A \|\delta_t u_l^n\|_d^2 - 2\sigma_1 \rho A \langle \delta_t u_l^n, \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_d, \quad (4.31)$$

virtual grid  
points needed  
for freq-dep  
damping term..

and  $\mathfrak{b}$  appears after rewriting Eq. (4.29) using summation by parts (see Section 3.2.2). Specifically, using Eq. (3.13a) for the second term and Eq. (3.16b) for

the third, yields

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h} &= \rho A \langle \delta_t \cdot u_l^n, \delta_{tt} u_l^n \rangle_d + T \langle \delta_t \cdot \delta_{x+} u_l^n, \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_{\underline{d}} + EI \langle \delta_t \cdot \delta_{xx} u_l^n, \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_{\bar{d}} \\ &= \mathfrak{b} - \mathfrak{q}\end{aligned}$$

where the boundary term becomes

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{b} &= T \left( (\delta_t \cdot u_N^n) (\delta_{x+} u_N^n) - (\delta_t \cdot u_0^n) (\delta_{x+} u_{-1}^n) \right) \\ &\quad + EI \left( (\delta_t \cdot u_N^n) (\delta_{x+} \delta_{xx} u_N^n) - (\delta_{xx} u_N^n) (\delta_{x-} \delta_t \cdot u_N^n) \right) \\ &\quad - EI \left( (\delta_t \cdot u_0^n) (\delta_{x-} \delta_{xx} u_0^n) - (\delta_{xx} u_0^n) (\delta_{x+} \delta_t \cdot u_0^n) \right).\end{aligned}$$

For the clamped and simply supported boundary conditions in (4.16a) and (4.16b) it can easily be shown that  $\mathfrak{b} = 0$ . If free conditions as in Eq. (4.16c) are used, the boundary conditions will vanish when the primed inner product in Eq. (3.9) is used in Step 1 and identity (3.16c) is used when performing summation by parts. Here, only the clamped / simply supported case will be considered.

Isolating  $\delta_{t+}$  to obtain the total energy  $\mathfrak{h}$  in the definition for  $\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h}$  above, requires identities (3.17a) and (3.17b) and yields

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h} &= \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{\rho A}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2 + \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_{\underline{d}} + \frac{EI}{2} \langle \delta_{xx} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_{\bar{d}} \right) \\ &= -\mathfrak{q}.\end{aligned}$$

From this, the definition for the Hamiltonian  $\mathfrak{h}$ , the kinetic energy  $\mathfrak{t}$  and potential energy  $\mathfrak{v}$  can be found:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{h} &= \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v}, \quad \text{with} \quad \mathfrak{t} = \frac{\rho A}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2, \quad \text{and} \\ \mathfrak{v} &= \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_{\underline{d}} + \frac{EI}{2} \langle \delta_{xx} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_{\bar{d}}.\end{aligned}\tag{4.32}$$

### Step 3: Check units

Comparing the acquired energy balance in Eq. (4.32) to the energy balance for the 1D wave equation in Eq. (3.47), one can observe that the balances are nearly identical, the only difference being the second term in the definition for  $\mathfrak{v}$  in Eq. (4.32). Writing this term out in units, and recalling that Pa (the unit

#### 4.4. Energy analysis

for  $E$ ) in SI units is  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ , yields

$$\frac{EI}{2} \langle \delta_{xx} u_l^n, e_t - \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_{\bar{d}} \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{Pa} \cdot \text{m}^4 \cdot \text{m} \cdot (\text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{m}) \\ = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2},$$

and indeed has the correct units.

As described in Section 3.4, the damping terms in  $q$  need to have units of Joules per second, or  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-3}$ . Writing the terms in Eq. (4.31) out in their units yields

$$2\sigma_0\rho A \|\delta_t \cdot u_l^n\|_d^2 \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-3} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{m} \cdot (\text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m})^2 \\ = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-3},$$

$$-2\sigma_1\rho A \langle \delta_t \cdot u_l^n, \delta_t - \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_d \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-3} \cdot \text{m}^2 \\ \cdot \text{m} \cdot (\text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m})(\text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{m}), \\ = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-3},$$

and also have the correct units.

#### Step 4: Implementation

An implementation of the energy calculation for the simply supported boundary condition is given in Algorithm 4.1. The damping is ignored but can be found in Appendix ???. Figure 4.5 shows that the damping present in the system causes  $h$  to decrease in the left panel. The right panel shows that the deviation of the total energy calculated using Eq. (3.38) is within machine precision.

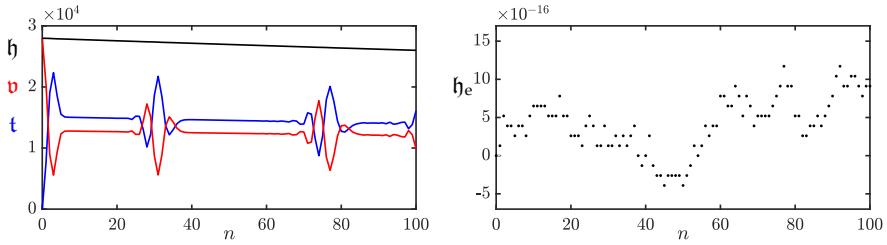
Add to appendix or refer to a gist

```

1 %%% Before the main loop: %%%
2
3 % Initialise Dx+ operator to calculate potential energy due to tension
4 % As the domain is reduced by one, the matrix needs to be of size N x N
5 Dxp = sparse(1:N, 1:N, -ones(1, N), N, N) + ...
6     sparse(1:N-1, 2:N, ones(1, N-1), N, N);
7
8 %%% In the main loop: %%%
9
10 % energy in the system
11 kinEnergy(n) = rho * A * h / 2 * sum((1/k * (u - uPrev)).^2);
12 potEnergy(n) = T / 2 * h * sum((Dxp * [0; u]) .* (Dxp * [0; uPrev])) ...
    ... + E * I * h / 2 * sum((Dxx * u) .* (Dxx * uPrev));

```

**Algorithm 4.1:** Calculating  $h$  for the simply supported boundary condition.



**Fig. 4.5:** The kinetic (blue), potential (red), and total (black) energy of an implementation of the stiff string are plotted in the left panel. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.38)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

## 4.5 Modal analysis

To be able to perform a modal analysis on the FD scheme in (4.7), it must be written in one-step form – introduced in Section 3.5.1 – due to the damping present in the system. Using the matrix form of the damped stiff string in Eq. (4.22), the one-step form can be written as

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}^{n+1} \\ \mathbf{u}^n \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{w}^{n+1}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B}/A & \mathbf{C}/A \\ \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{Q}} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}^n \\ \mathbf{u}^{n-1} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{w}^n}, \quad (4.33)$$

where the definitions for  $\mathbf{B}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}$  and  $A$  can be found in Section 4.2.2. In this analysis, the definitions for  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  and  $\mathbf{D}_{xxxx}$  for simply supported boundary conditions will be used.

Assuming test solutions of the form  $\mathbf{w}^n = z^n \phi$ , and recalling that  $z = e^{sk}$  and complex frequency  $s = j\omega + \sigma$ , yields the following eigenvalue problem (see Section B.4)

$$z\phi = \mathbf{Q}\phi, \quad (4.34)$$

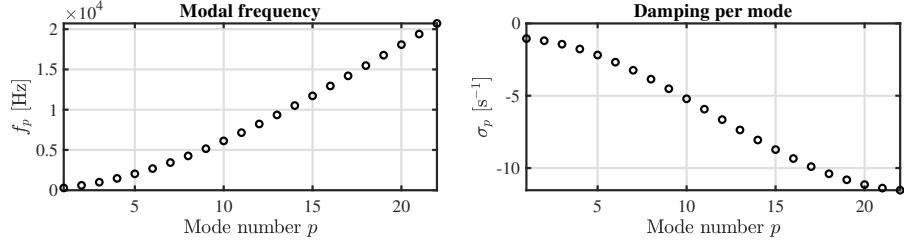
which can be solved for the  $p^{\text{th}}$  complex modal frequency

$$s_p = \frac{1}{k} \ln \left( \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{Q}) \right). \quad (4.35)$$

The (angular) frequency of the  $p^{\text{th}}$  mode can then be obtained using  $\Im(s_p)$  and the damping per mode as  $\Re(s_p)$ . Only selecting the non-negative frequencies obtained from  $\Im(s_p)$ , these can be plotted and are shown in Figure 4.6. The parameters used are the ones found in Table 4.1 with  $T = 1885$  N, and  $E = 2 \cdot 10^{14}$  Pa to highlight inharmonic behaviour. The left panel shows that the system is indeed inharmonic, i.e., modal frequencies increase more as the modal number increases. The right panel shows that higher modes exhibit a

## 4.6. Implicit scheme

higher amount of damping. This is due to the frequency-dependent damping term. If  $\sigma_1 = 0$  in (4.7), it can be shown that  $\sigma_p = \sigma_0$  for every mode  $p$  (in this case  $\sigma_0 = -1$ ).



**Fig. 4.6:** The modal frequencies and damping per mode for the stiff string using the values in Table 4.1 and  $T = 1885$  N and  $E = 2 \cdot 10^{14}$  Pa to highlight effects of stiffness.

## 4.6 Implicit scheme

Although not used in the published work of this project, it is useful to touch upon an example of an implicit scheme. Consider a discretisation of Eq. (4.5) where the (more accurate) centred operator is used for the frequency-dependent damping term:

$$\delta_{tt} u_l^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} u_l^n - \kappa^2 \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n - 2\sigma_0 \delta_t u_l^n + 2\sigma_1 \delta_t \delta_{xx} u_l^n. \quad (4.36)$$

Using the centred operator in the mixed-spatio-temporal operator renders the system *implicit*, meaning that a definition for  $u_l^{n+1}$  can not explicitly be found from known values. The stencil in Figure 4.7 also shows this: in order to calculate  $u_l^{n+1}$ , neighbouring points at the next time step  $u_{l+1}^{n+1}$  and  $u_{l-1}^{n+1}$  are needed. The issue is that these values are unknown at the time of calculation.

Luckily, as the scheme is linear, it can be treated as a system of linear equations and solved following the technique described in Section B.3. The drawback is that this requires one matrix inversion per iteration which can be extremely costly (see Section 13.5.1). However, both von Neumann and modal analysis (below) show that using the centred instead of the backwards operator has a positive effect on the stability and the modal behaviour of the scheme.

Considering simply supported boundary conditions such that  $l \in \{1, \dots, N-1\}$ , the system will have  $N-1$  unknowns ( $u_l^{n+1}$  for  $l \in \{1, \dots, N-1\}$ ) that can be calculated using  $N-1$  (update) equations. Writing this in matrix form using column vector  $\mathbf{u}^n = [u_1^n, u_2^n, \dots, u_{N-1}^n]$  yields

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{C}\mathbf{u}^{n-1} \quad (4.37)$$

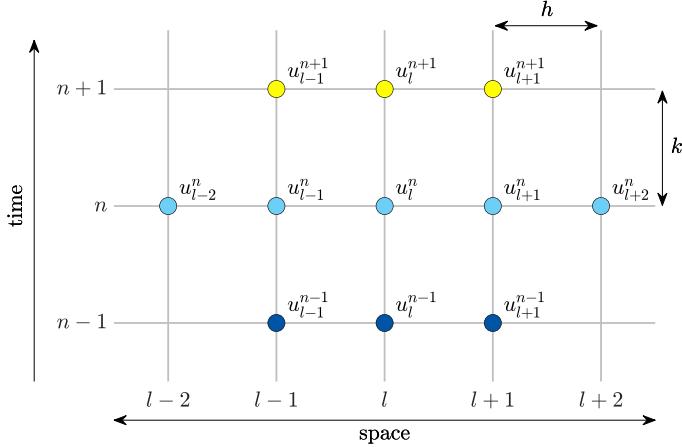
where

$$\mathbf{A} = (1 + \sigma_0 k) \mathbf{I} - \sigma_1 k \mathbf{D}_{xx}, \quad \mathbf{B} = c^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{xx} - \kappa^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{xxxx}$$

and     $\mathbf{C} = -(1 - \sigma_0 k) \mathbf{I} - \sigma_1 k \mathbf{D}_{xx}.$

Equation (4.37) can be considered a system of linear equations (see Section B.3) and the state at the next time step  $\mathbf{u}^{n+1}$  can then be retrieved using a matrix inversion (see B.2)

$$\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \mathbf{A}^{-1} (\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{C}\mathbf{u}^{n-1}). \quad (4.38)$$



**Fig. 4.7:** The stencil for the damped stiff string scheme in (4.36).

### 4.6.1 von Neumann analysis

Using the same process as in Section 4.3, the definitions in Section 3.3 can be used to obtain a frequency domain representation of the FD scheme in Eq. (4.36):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{k^2} (z - 2 + z^{-1}) &= -\frac{4c^2}{h^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2) - \frac{16\kappa^2}{h^4} \sin^4(\beta h/2) - \frac{\sigma_0}{k} z + \frac{\sigma_0}{k} z^{-1} \\ &\quad - \frac{4\sigma_1}{kh^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2) z + \frac{4\sigma_1}{kh^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2) z^{-1}, \end{aligned} \quad (4.39)$$

#### 4.6. Implicit scheme

and collecting the terms, yields the following characteristic equation:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2)\right) z + (16\mu^2 \sin^4(\beta h/2) + 4\lambda^2 \sin^2(\beta h/2) - 2) \\ & + \left(1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \sin^2(\beta h/2)\right) z^{-1} = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.40)$$

Rewriting this to the form found in Eq. (3.25) and, again, using  $\mathcal{S} = \sin^2(\beta h/2)$  yields:

$$z^2 + \frac{16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + 4\lambda^2 \mathcal{S} - 2}{1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}} z + \frac{1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}}{1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}} = 0.$$

Stability of the system can then be proven using condition (3.26), and after substitution of the coefficients yields

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \frac{16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + 4\lambda^2 \mathcal{S} - 2}{1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}} \right| - 1 \leq \frac{1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}}{1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}} \leq 1, \\ & |16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + 4\lambda^2 \mathcal{S} - 2| - \left(1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}\right) \leq 1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S} \\ & \leq 1 + \sigma_0 k + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}, \\ & |16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + 4\lambda^2 \mathcal{S} - 2| \leq 2 \leq 2 + 2\sigma_0 k + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \mathcal{S}. \end{aligned}$$

Because  $\sigma_0, \sigma_1, k, \mathcal{S}$  and  $h$  are all non-negative, the last condition is always satisfied. Continuing with the first condition:

$$\begin{aligned} -2 &\leq 16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + 4\lambda^2 \mathcal{S} - 2 \leq 2, \\ 0 &\leq 16\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + 4\lambda^2 \mathcal{S} \leq 4. \end{aligned}$$

Again, the first condition is always satisfied due to the non-negativity of all coefficients. Continuing with the second condition yields

$$4\mu^2 \mathcal{S}^2 + \lambda^2 \mathcal{S} \leq 1,$$

and knowing that  $\mathcal{S}$  is bounded by 1 for all  $\beta$ , the process can be finalised:

$$\begin{aligned} 4\mu^2 + \lambda^2 &\leq 1, \\ \frac{4\kappa^2 k^2}{h^4} + \frac{c^2 k^2}{h^2} &\leq 1, \\ h^4 - c^2 k^2 h^2 - 4\kappa^2 k^2 &\geq 0, \end{aligned}$$

and yields the following stability condition:

$$h \geq \sqrt{\frac{c^2 k^2 + \sqrt{c^4 k^4 + 16\kappa^2 k^2}}{2}}. \quad (4.41)$$

Comparing this to the stability condition for the explicit scheme in Eq. (4.15), one can observe that the terms containing  $\sigma_1$  have vanished. It can thus be concluded that if the centred (rather than the backwards) difference is used to discretise the temporal derivative in the frequency-dependent damping term,  $\sigma_1$  no longer influences the stability of the scheme and the condition is more relaxed. What this means in terms of behaviour of the scheme will be elaborated on in the following section.

## 4.6.2 Modal analysis

As the matrix form of the implicit FD scheme in Eq. (4.37) matches the form in Eq. (3.57), one can perform a modal analysis by writing the scheme in one-step form as explained in Section 3.5.1. The results of the analysis are shown in Figure 4.8. To highlight the difference between using the backwards and centred difference for the frequency-dependent damping term,  $\sigma_1$  has been set to 1, which is much higher than one would normally use.

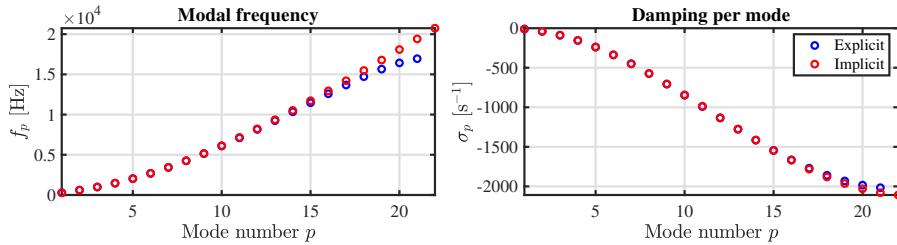
One can observe from Figure 4.8 that especially higher-frequency modes in the explicit scheme are affected by  $\sigma_1$ . In the continuous case, the modal frequencies should only be affected by values for  $c$  and  $\kappa$  as per Eq. (4.3) and the damping should not influence the frequencies of the partials, as one could expect. However, as  $\sigma_1$  increases,  $h$  increases due to Eq. (4.15), causing  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  to decrease. This introduces numerical dispersion as explained in Section 2.4.4, and the higher the value of  $\sigma_1$ , the more numerical dispersion is introduced.

As the stability condition for the implicit scheme in Eq. (4.41) does not contain  $\sigma_1$ , this value will not affect  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  and will thus not affect the modal frequencies. As can be observed from the figure, it even allows for one more grid point to be included in the simulation. It can be concluded that because the frequency-dependent damping term no longer affects the stability condition for the implicit scheme, a more accurate simulation can be obtained with fewer numerically dispersive effects.

## 4.6.3 Conclusion

This section presented an implicit discretisation of the stiff string where the centred operator has been used to discretise the temporal derivative in the frequency-dependent damping term. By means of stability analysis and modal analysis several advantages that the implicit scheme has over its explicit counterpart (presented in Section 4.2) have been shown.

#### 4.6. Implicit scheme



**Fig. 4.8:** A comparison between the modal frequencies and damping per mode of the explicit (blue) and implicit (red) scheme. Here,  $T = 1885 \text{ N}$ ,  $E = 2 \cdot 10^{14} \text{ Pa}$  and  $\sigma_1 = 1 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}$  to highlight differences between the two schemes.

As these advantages only show for higher values of  $\sigma_1$ , much higher than the ones used in this project, it has been chosen to use the explicit scheme for all further implementation. The decrease in accuracy is negligible for lower values of  $\sigma_1$  and the calculation of the scheme becomes orders of magnitude more computationally expensive if the implicit scheme is used.

## Chapter 4. The Stiff String

# Chapter 5

## Acoustic Tubes

The dynamics of woodwind and brass instruments is based on wave propagation in acoustic tubes. Although the physical processes that generate the sound are fundamentally different from those in strings, the underlying models have many similarities. The main difference between acoustic tubes and the (ideal) strings, is that tubes have a varying cross-sectional area, causing wave dispersion and greatly influencing the modal frequencies and modal shapes present in the system.

In this work, planar wave propagation is assumed (rather than spherical), such that the behaviour of the systems can be approximated using 1D systems. Although higher-dimensional models might better capture some physical effects (see e.g. [61]), 1D systems already show good agreement between model and measurement [62]. Moreover, looking towards real-time implementation of these models, the choice to simplify to 1D has been made due to the low relative computational cost.

This chapter first presents Webster's equation, which extends the 1D wave equation presented in Section 2.4 by introducing a spatially varying cross-section. Although not used for the contributions in Part V, Webster's equation forms a good basis for the second part of this chapter, which decomposes Webster's equation into a system of two coupled first-order PDEs. This has been used to model the trombone in paper [H].

### 5.1 Webster's equation

For an (axially symmetric) acoustic tube of length  $L$  (in m), where the wavelengths of the frequencies at interest are much larger than the radius of the tube, one can simplify the system to be one-dimensional [25]. For low-amplitude vibrations, the air propagation in this tube can be described using Webster's

equation [63]

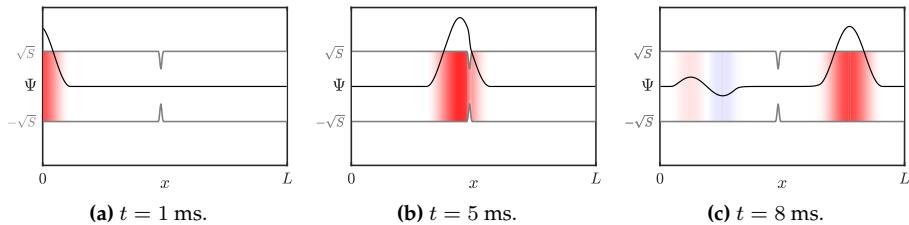
$$S\partial_t^2\Psi = c^2\partial_x(S\partial_x\Psi), \quad (5.1)$$

with *acoustic potential*  $\Psi = \Psi(x, t)$  (in  $\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ ), the cross-sectional area along the tube, or bore profile  $S = S(x)$  (in  $\text{m}^2$ ) and the speed of sound in air  $c$  (in  $\text{m/s}$ ). The state variable  $\Psi$  is defined for  $t \geq 0$  and  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  where domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$ . If  $S(x)$  is constant, Eq. (5.1) reduces to the 1D wave equation in Eq. (2.38). This shows that for a cylindrical acoustic tube, the fundamental frequency is not affected by the cross-sectional area, but solely relies on length  $L$  and wave speed  $c$  according to Eq. (2.40). The acoustic potential can be related to pressure  $p = p(x, t)$  (in Pa) and particle velocity  $v = v(x, t)$  (in  $\text{m/s}$ ) according to [25]

$$p = \rho_0\partial_t\Psi, \quad \text{and} \quad v = -\partial_x\Psi, \quad (5.2)$$

with air density  $\rho_0$  (in  $\text{kg/m}^3$ ).

The interesting thing about the presence of a variable cross-section, is that it causes dispersive or scattering behaviour, especially at locations of high (spatial) variation of  $S$ . See Figure 5.1. Contrary to frequency dispersion as happens in a stiff string (see Chapter 4), all frequencies travel at the same speed, but some components of the wave get reflected due to the geometry of the tube.



**Fig. 5.1:** Wave propagation and dispersion in an acoustic tube of varying cross-section (shown in grey) modelled by Webster's equation in Eq. (5.1). Positive acoustic potential  $\Psi$  is shown in red and negative in blue, which is also plotted for clarity.

### Boundary conditions

The choices for boundary conditions in an acoustic tube are open and closed, defined as [25]

$$\partial_t\Psi(0, t) = 0, \quad \partial_t\Psi(L, t) = 0, \quad (\text{Dirichlet, open}), \quad (5.3a)$$

$$\partial_x\Psi(0, t) = 0, \quad \partial_x\Psi(L, t) = 0, \quad (\text{Neumann, closed}). \quad (5.3b)$$

This might be slightly counter-intuitive when compared to the 1D wave equation, as “closed” might imply the “fixed” or Dirichlet boundary condition. The

### 5.1. Webster's equation

opposite can be intuitively shown by imagining a wave front with a positive acoustic potential (and thus positive pressure according to Eq. (5.2)) moving through a tube and hitting a closed end. What reflects is also a wave front with a positive acoustic potential, i.e., the sign of the potential does not flip. This also happens using the free or Neumann condition for the 1D wave equation (see Figure 2.9). Here, the following boundaries are chosen

$$\partial_x \Psi(0, t) = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad \partial_t \Psi(L, t) = 0, \quad (5.4)$$

i.e. closed at the left end and open at the right end.

#### 5.1.1 Discrete time

The state variable is discretised to the grid function  $\Psi_l^n$  and is defined for  $n \in \mathbb{N}^0$  and  $l = \{0, \dots, N\}$ , where  $N$  is the number of intervals between the grid points. As the cross-section is distributed in space,  $S(x)$  needs to be discretised to a grid function as well, albeit only in space (as it is not time-varying). Following [25], it is useful to introduce *interleaved grid points* at  $l - 1/2$  and  $l + 1/2$  for  $S$  and are defined as

$$S_{l-1/2} = \mu_{x-} S(x = lh), \quad \text{and} \quad S_{l+1/2} = \mu_{x+} S(x = lh), \quad (5.5)$$

and approximate a ‘true’ (possibly measured) bore profile  $S(x)$  sampled at  $x = lh$  with grid spacing  $h$  (see Figure 5.2). Using these definitions, one can discretise Eq. (5.1) to the following FD scheme [2]<sup>1</sup>

$$\bar{S}_l \delta_{tt} \Psi_l^n = c^2 \delta_{x-} (S_{l+1/2} (\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n)), \quad (5.6)$$

where

$$\bar{S}_l = \mu_{x+} S_{l-1/2} = \mu_{x-} S_{l+1/2} = \mu_{xx} S(x = lh), \quad (5.7)$$

the choice of which will become apparent in Section 5.1.6. The right-hand side of the scheme contains an operator applied to two grid functions ( $S$  and  $\Psi$ ) multiplied onto each other. In order to expand this, the product rule must be used. Recalling Eq. (3.18) and applying this to backwards spatial operators instead yields

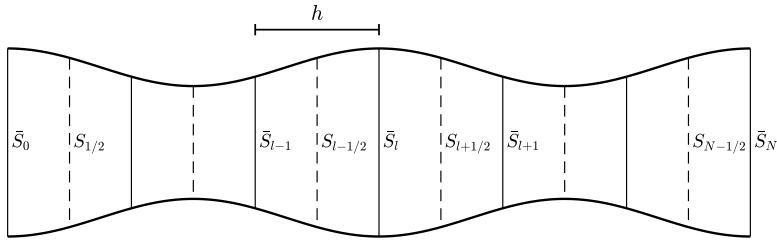
$$\delta_{x-} (u_l^n w_l^n) = (\delta_{x-} u_l^n) (\mu_{x-} w_l^n) + (\mu_{x-} u_l^n) (\delta_{x-} w_l^n). \quad (5.8)$$

Using the product rule, the right-hand side of Eq. (5.6) can be expanded to

$$\bar{S} \delta_{tt} \Psi_l^n = c^2 [(\delta_{x-} S_{l+1/2}) (\mu_{x-} (\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n)) + (\mu_{x-} S_{l+1/2}) (\delta_{x-} (\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n))],$$

---

<sup>1</sup>Notice that in [2], Webster’s equation is  $\bar{S}_l \delta_{tt} \Psi_l^n = c^2 \delta_{x+} (S_{l-1/2} (\delta_{x-} \Psi_l^n))$  but is identical to Eq. (5.6). This discretisation has been chosen for a more straightforward energy analysis in Section 5.1.5.



**Fig. 5.2:** Approximations to  $S(x)$  used in Eq. (5.6). Dashed lines indicate the interleaved grid on which  $S$  is sampled (Eq. (5.5)) and solid lines indicate  $\bar{S}$  which are averages of these (Eq. (5.7)).

and solving for  $\Psi_l^{n+1}$  yields the following update equation (see Appendix E.1):

$$\Psi_l^{n+1} = 2(1 - \lambda^2)\Psi_l^n - \Psi_l^{n-1} + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{l+1/2}}{\bar{S}_l} \Psi_{l+1}^n + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{l-1/2}}{\bar{S}_l} \Psi_{l-1}^n, \quad (5.9)$$

with

$$\lambda = \frac{ck}{h}, \quad (5.10)$$

and similar to the 1D wave equation in Section 2.4.2 needs to abide

$$\lambda \leq 1, \quad (5.11)$$

in order for the scheme to be stable. See Section 5.1.6 for a derivation. The number of grid points  $N$  can then be calculated in the same way as for the 1D wave equation in Eq. (2.53).

Notice that at the boundaries, Eq. (5.9) requires values of  $S$  (through its definition in Eq. (5.7)) outside of the defined domain, i.e.,  $S_{N+1/2}$  and  $S_{-1/2}$ . To solve this, one can set  $\bar{S}_0 = S(0)$  and  $\bar{S}_N = S(L)$  from which  $S_{-1/2}$  and  $S_{N+1/2}$  can be calculated according to

$$\bar{S}_0 = \frac{1}{2}(S_{1/2} + S_{-1/2}) \Rightarrow S_{-1/2} = 2\bar{S}_0 - S_{1/2}, \quad (5.12a)$$

$$\bar{S}_N = \frac{1}{2}(S_{N+1/2} + S_{N-1/2}) \Rightarrow S_{N+1/2} = 2\bar{S}_N - S_{N-1/2}. \quad (5.12b)$$

Although these values will not be needed when discretising the boundary conditions in Eq. (5.3), they will be useful at a later point.

## 5.1. Webster's equation

### Boundary conditions

One can discretise the continuous boundary conditions in Eq. (5.4) (closed at  $x = 0$ , open at  $x = L$ ) using centred difference operators for higher accuracy

$$\delta_x \cdot \Psi_0^n = 0 \Rightarrow \Psi_{-1}^n = \Psi_1^n, \quad (\text{Neumann, closed}), \quad (5.13a)$$

$$\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n = 0 \Rightarrow \Psi_N^n = 0, \quad (\text{Dirichlet, open}). \quad (5.13b)$$

At the left boundary, Eq. (5.9) can be expanded to:

$$\begin{aligned} \Psi_0^{n+1} &= 2(1 - \lambda^2)\Psi_0^n - \Psi_0^{n-1} + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{1/2}}{\bar{S}_0} \Psi_1^n + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{-1/2}}{\bar{S}_0} \Psi_{-1}^n, \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Eq. (5.13a)}} \quad \Psi_0^{n+1} &= 2(1 - \lambda^2)\Psi_0^n - \Psi_0^{n-1} + \frac{\lambda^2 (S_{1/2} + S_{-1/2})}{\bar{S}_0} \Psi_1^n, \end{aligned}$$

and as  $\bar{S}_0 = \frac{1}{2}(S_{1/2} + S_{-1/2})$  through Eq. (5.7), this can be solved to

$$\Psi_0^{n+1} = 2(1 - \lambda^2)\Psi_0^n - \Psi_0^{n-1} + 2\lambda^2 \Psi_1^n. \quad (5.14)$$

One can implement the right boundary condition by simply reducing the range of operation to  $l = \{0, \dots, N-1\}$ , as  $\Psi_N^n = 0$  according to Eq. (5.13b). A more realistic boundary condition for the open end is presented in the following.

### 5.1.2 Radiation

One of the ways that an acoustic tube loses energy, is through radiation. The right boundary condition presented in Eq. (5.4) can be changed to be radiating according to [2]

$$\partial_x \Psi(L, t) = -a_1 \partial_t \Psi(L, t) - a_2 \Psi(L, t), \quad (5.15)$$

where, for a tube terminating on an infinite plane [64]

$$a_1 = \frac{1}{2(0.8216)^2 c}, \quad \text{and} \quad a_2 = \frac{L}{0.8216 \sqrt{S_0 S(1)/\pi}}, \quad (5.16)$$

which determine the amount of loss and inertia at the radiating boundary respectively.

The radiating boundary in Eq. (5.15) can then be discretised to [2]

$$\delta_x \cdot \Psi_N^n = -a_1 \delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n - a_2 \mu_t \cdot \Psi_N^n, \quad (5.17)$$

which can be expanded and solved for  $\Psi_{N+1}^n$  according to

$$\Psi_{N+1}^n = h \left( -\frac{a_1}{k} (\Psi_N^{n+1} - \Psi_N^{n-1}) - a_2 (\Psi_N^{n+1} + \Psi_N^{n-1}) \right) + \Psi_{N-1}^n. \quad (5.18)$$

Substitution into Eq. (5.9) at the  $l = N$  yields the following update equation

$$\Psi_N^{n+1} = \frac{2(1 - \lambda^2)\Psi_N^n - \Psi_N^{n-1} + \alpha_- \Psi_N^{n-1} + 2\lambda^2 \Psi_{N-1}^n}{(1 + \alpha_+)}, \quad (5.19)$$

where

$$\alpha_{\pm} = h \left( \frac{a_1}{k} \pm a_2 \right) \frac{\lambda^2 S_{N+1/2}}{\bar{S}_N}. \quad (5.20)$$

One can observe that  $S_{N+1/2}$  is needed which is outside the defined domain. As mentioned before, setting  $\bar{S}_N = S(L)$ , one can calculate  $S_{N+1/2}$  using Eq. (5.12b) to solve the issue.

### 5.1.3 Excitation

maybe refer to chapter/section instead Although excitations will be discussed more in-depth in Part III, a simple way to excite Webster's equation will be presented here.

Following [25], one can create an input signal  $v_{\text{in}} = v_{\text{in}}(t)$  that interacts with the particle velocity of the tube. As this relates to the acoustic potential as in Eq. (5.2), one can change the boundary condition of the left boundary to

$$\partial_x \Psi(0, t) = -v_{\text{in}}. \quad (5.21)$$

Discretising this using the centred spatial operator, yields

$$\delta_x \cdot \Psi_0^n = -v_{\text{in}}^n \Rightarrow \Psi_{-1}^n = 2hv_{\text{in}}^n + \Psi_1^n, \quad (5.22)$$

and can be substituted into the update equation in Eq. (5.9) at  $l = 0$  to get

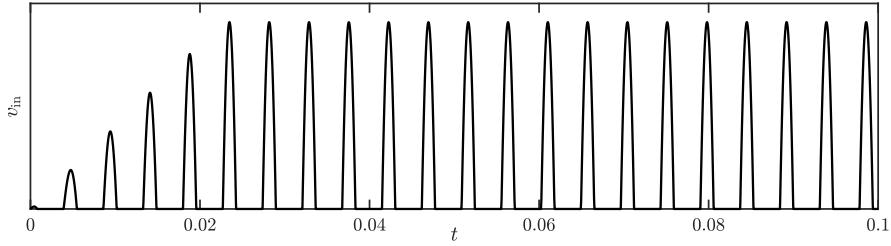
$$\begin{aligned} \Psi_0^{n+1} &= 2(1 - \lambda^2)\Psi_0^n - \Psi_0^{n-1} \frac{\lambda^2 S_{1/2}}{\bar{S}_0} \Psi_1^n + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{-1/2}}{\bar{S}_0} (2hv_{\text{in}}^n + \Psi_1^n), \\ \Psi_0^{n+1} &= 2(1 - \lambda^2)\Psi_0^n - \Psi_0^{n-1} + 2\lambda^2 \Psi_1^n + \frac{2h\lambda^2 S_{-1/2}}{\bar{S}_0} v_{\text{in}}^n. \end{aligned} \quad (5.23)$$

The input signal is arbitrary, but looking towards lip excitation, and following [2], one can set the input to a pulse train as shown in Figure 5.3. More details can be found in Chapter 7.

### 5.1.4 Matrix form and output

One can write scheme (5.6) in matrix form by saving the state in a vector  $\Psi^n = [\Psi_0^n, \dots, \Psi_N^n]^T$  and creating a  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  matrix that includes the effect of the

### 5.1. Webster's equation



**Fig. 5.3:** A pulse train with a frequency of 213 Hz a duty cycle of 50% and an attack of 22 ms, used to generate the output in Figure 5.4.

cross-sectional area  $S$ . Assuming Neumann boundary conditions yields

$$\mathbf{D}_{xx} = \frac{1}{h^2} \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 & & & \mathbf{0} \\ \frac{S_{1/2}}{S_1} & -2 & \frac{S_{3/2}}{S_1} & & \\ \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & & \\ & \frac{S_{l-1/2}}{S_l} & -2 & \frac{S_{l+1/2}}{S_l} & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & \frac{S_{N-3/2}}{S_{N-1}} & -2 & \frac{S_{N-1/2}}{S_{N-1}} \\ \mathbf{0} & & & 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (5.24)$$

Notice that there are no appearances of  $S$  at the boundaries as these vanish due to the boundary conditions as in Eq. (5.14). Using  $\mathbf{I}_N$  as the  $N \times N$  identity matrix, one can write scheme (5.6) in matrix form as

$$\mathbf{A}\Psi^{n+1} = \mathbf{B}\Psi^n + \mathbf{C}\Psi^{n-1} + \mathbf{v}^n \quad (5.25)$$

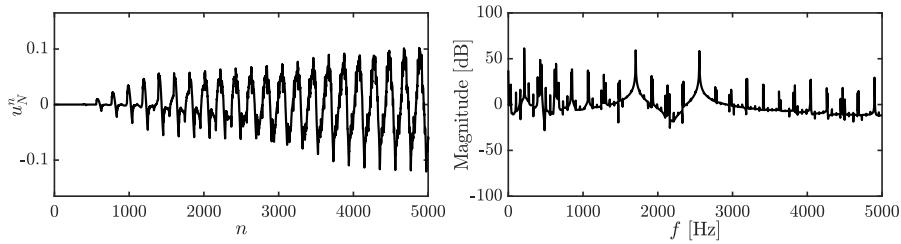
where

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_N & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & 1 + \alpha_+ \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{B} = 2\mathbf{I} + c^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{xx}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{C} = \begin{bmatrix} -\mathbf{I}_N & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & -1 + \alpha_- \end{bmatrix},$$

and the  $(N + 1) \times 1$  input vector  $\mathbf{v}^n$  consists of zeros except for the first index:

$$\mathbf{v}_i^n = \begin{cases} \frac{2h\lambda^2 S_{-1/2}}{S_0} v_{in}^n, & \text{if } i = 1, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (5.26)$$

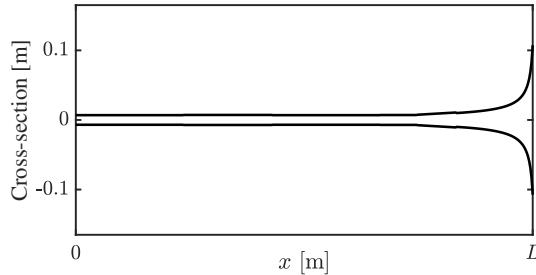
Notice how the radiation is included by changing the last entry of matrices  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$ . The output of an implementation of Webster's equation is shown in Figure 5.4. The parameters used for the scheme, the input signal and the geometry used to obtain the output can be found in Table 5.1, Figure 5.3, and Figure 5.5 respectively.



**Fig. 5.4:** The output of Webster's equation at  $\Psi_N^n$  using the input in Figure 5.3, the parameters in Table 5.1, and the geometry in Figure 5.5.

Name	Symbol (unit)	Value
Length	$L$ (m)	$\approx 3$
Wave speed	$c$ (m/s)	343
Cross-sectional area	$S(x)$	See paper [H]

**Table 5.1:** Parameters for the implementation of Webster's equation. The length is slightly below 3 m to yield  $\lambda = 1$  in Eq. (5.11).



**Fig. 5.5:** The geometry used for the implementation. See paper [H] for more details.

### 5.1.5 Energy analysis

The energy analysis of Webster's equation with a radiating boundary might seem straightforward. However, due to the varying cross-sectional area, the energy balance deserves a more detailed treatment, especially at the boundaries. For this analysis, (centred) Neumann boundary conditions are used for both boundaries and the input is ignored. This section follows the steps presented in Section 3.4.

### 5.1. Webster's equation

#### Step 1: Obtain $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}$

Usually, to ensure vanishing boundary terms when using centred Neumann boundary conditions, the primed inner product in Eq. (3.9) is chosen. However, as the system has a spatially varying cross-section, the more general weighted inner product in Eq. (3.10) has to be chosen instead.

Taking an inner product weighted by free parameters  $0 < \epsilon_l, \epsilon_r \leq 2$  at the left and right boundary respectively, of scheme (5.6) with  $(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_l^n)$  over discrete domain  $d$ , yields

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \langle \delta_t \cdot \Psi_l^n, \bar{S}_l \delta_{tt} \Psi_l^n \rangle_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} - c^2 \langle \delta_t \cdot \Psi_l^n, \delta_{x-}(S_{l+1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n)) \rangle_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} = 0. \quad (5.27)$$

#### Step 2: Identify energy types and isolate $\delta_{t+}$

As the right boundary is set to be radiating according to Eq. (5.17), the energy balance will eventually be of the following form:

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h} + \mathfrak{h}_b) = \mathfrak{b} - \mathfrak{q}_b, \quad (5.28)$$

where  $\mathfrak{h}_b$  is the energy stored by the radiating boundary through the inertia term,  $\mathfrak{q}_b$  describes the the energy losses through radiation and  $\mathfrak{b}$  is the general boundary term.

Starting at Eq. (5.27), the last term can – using identity (3.15a) – be rewritten to

$$c^2 \langle S_{l+1/2} \delta_t \cdot \delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n, (\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n) \rangle_d + \mathfrak{b}_r - \mathfrak{b}_l,$$

where

$$\mathfrak{b}_r = c^2 (\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) \left( \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} S_{N+1/2} (\delta_{x+} \Psi_N^n) + \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} \right) S_{N-1/2} (\delta_{x-} \Psi_N^n) \right), \quad (5.29a)$$

$$\mathfrak{b}_l = c^2 (\delta_t \cdot \Psi_0^n) \left( \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} S_{-1/2} (\delta_{x-} \Psi_0^n) + \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} \right) S_{1/2} (\delta_{x+} \Psi_0^n) \right), \quad (5.29b)$$

are the right and left boundary term respectively (notice that  $\mathfrak{b}_l$  is subtracted). One can immediately observe that the boundary terms vanish if Dirichlet boundary conditions would be used.

Then, using identities (3.17a) and (3.17b) yields

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{b}_r - \mathfrak{b}_l$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{h} &= \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v}, \quad \text{with} \quad \mathfrak{t} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{\bar{S}_l} \delta_{t-} \Psi_l^n \|_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} \right)^2 \quad \text{and} \\ \mathfrak{v} &= \frac{c^2}{2} \langle S_{l+1/2} \delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n, e_t - \delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n \rangle_d. \end{aligned} \quad (5.30)$$

Notice that  $\bar{S}_l$  is included in the norm by using its square-root.

The next step is to find definitions for  $\epsilon_l$  and  $\epsilon_r$  such that the boundary terms vanish if radiation were to be ignored. In other words, the boundary terms need to be rewritten such that

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_x \cdot \Psi_0^n = 0 &\Rightarrow b_l = 0 \\ \delta_x \cdot \Psi_N^n = 0 &\Rightarrow b_r = 0\end{aligned}$$

for the left and right boundary respectively. It can be shown that, for the special cases of  $\epsilon_r = S_{N-1/2}/\mu_{xx}S_N$  and  $\epsilon_l = S_{1/2}/\mu_{xx}S_0$ , the boundary terms vanish in this case

$$b_r = c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n)S_{N-1/2}(2 - \epsilon_r)(\delta_x \cdot \Psi_N^n), \quad (5.31a)$$

$$b_l = c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_0^n)S_{1/2}(2 - \epsilon_l)(\delta_x \cdot \Psi_0^n). \quad (5.31b)$$

See Appendix E.2 for a derivation of this.

To add the energy stored and dissipated by the radiating boundary, its definition in Eq. (5.17) can be substituted into the right boundary term  $b_r$  in Eq. (5.31a) as

$$\begin{aligned}b_r &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n)S_{N-1/2}(2 - \epsilon_r)(-a_1\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n - a_2\mu_t \cdot \Psi_N^n), \\ &= c^2S_{N-1/2}(2 - \epsilon_r)(-a_1(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n)^2 - a_2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n)(\mu_t \cdot \Psi_N^n)).\end{aligned}$$

This can then be decomposed in  $h_b$  and  $q_b$  used in Eq. (5.27).

Using identity (3.17d) yields the definitions for  $h_b$  and  $q_b$  in Eq. (5.28)

$$h_b = \frac{c^2S_{N-1/2}(2 - \epsilon_r)a_2}{2}\mu_{t-}(\Psi_N^n)^2, \quad \text{and} \quad q_b = c^2S_{N-1/2}(2 - \epsilon_r)a_1(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n)^2. \quad (5.32)$$

Finally,  $b = b_l$  and can be shown to vanish for both Dirichlet and (centred) Neumann conditions.

### Step 3: Check units

It seems like in order for the units to make sense, one must write Eq. (5.1) as

$$\frac{S\rho}{c^2}\partial_t^2\Psi = \frac{B}{c^2}\partial_x(S(\partial_x\Psi)), \quad (5.33)$$

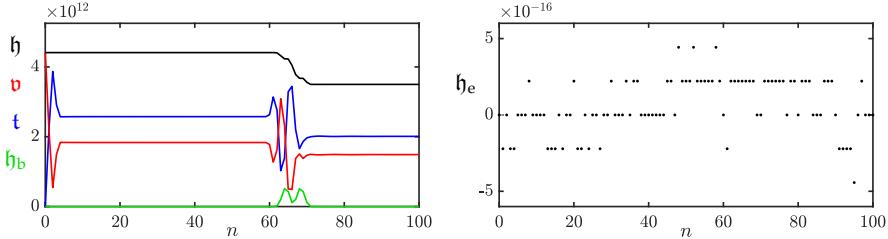
where  $B$  is the bulk modulus of air (in N/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Step 4: Implementation

Figure 5.6 shows the energetic output of Webster's equation with a radiating boundary at  $x = L$ . To highlight the effect of the radiation, the parameters are set to  $L = 1$  and  $S(x) = 0.01$  for all  $x \in \mathcal{D}$ . The system is excited with a

### 5.1. Webster's equation

raised cosine close to the left boundary, and when the excitation reaches the radiating boundary, the total energy in the system decreases due to the losses. The energy stored by the boundary  $\mathfrak{h}_b$  is also shown and indeed increases when the wave reaches the boundary.



**Fig. 5.6:** The kinetic (blue), potential (red), and total (black) energy as well as the energy stored by the radiation condition (green) of an implementation of Webster's equation are plotted in the left panel. Notice that the energy decreases between  $n = 60$  and  $n = 70$  as the excitation reached the boundary where damping is included. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.38)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

### 5.1.6 Stability through energy analysis

Frequency domain analysis as presented in Section 3.3, or more specifically, von Neumann analysis, can not be performed on Webster's equation due to the varying cross-section of the system [2]. Instead, stability conditions can be obtained through energy analysis explained in Section 3.4.4.

Consider the following scheme

$$[S]_l \delta_{tt} \Psi_l^n = c^2 \delta_{x-} (S_{l+1/2} (\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n)), \quad (5.34)$$

where  $[S]_l$  is a still undetermined second-order approximation to the true geometry of the acoustic tube and will be shown to be  $\bar{S}_l$  below. As done for the 1D wave equation in Section 3.4.4, the potential energy  $\mathfrak{v}$  in Eq. (5.30) can be rewritten using identity (3.17f) as

$$\mathfrak{v} = \frac{c^2}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{S_{l+1/2}} \mu_t - \delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n\|_d^2 - \frac{k^2}{4} \|\sqrt{S_{l+1/2}} \delta_{t-} - \delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n\|_d^2 \right).$$

For spatially varying systems, one can use the following extension of the bound given in Eq. (3.51) [2]

$$\|\sqrt{\phi_l} \delta_{x+} u_l^n\|_d \leq \frac{2}{h} \|\sqrt{\mu_{x-} \phi_l} u_l^n\|_d, \quad (5.35)$$

where spatially varying function  $\phi_l > 0$  is defined over the same domain as  $u$ .

The following condition can then be put on  $\mathfrak{v}$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{v} &\geq \frac{c^2}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{S_{l+1/2}}\mu_{t-\delta_{x+}}\Psi_l^n\|_d^2 - \frac{k^2}{4} \left( \frac{2}{h} \|\sqrt{\mu_{xx}S_l}\delta_{t-}\Psi_l^n\|_d \right)^2 \right), \\ &\geq \frac{c^2}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{S_{l+1/2}}\mu_{t-\delta_{x+}}\Psi_l^n\|_d^2 - \frac{k^2}{h^2} \|\sqrt{\mu_{xx}S_l}\delta_{t-}\Psi_l^n\|_d^2 \right) \\ &\geq \frac{c^2}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{S_{l+1/2}}\mu_{t-\delta_{x+}}\Psi_l^n\|_d^2 - \frac{k^2}{h^2} \left( \|\sqrt{\mu_{xx}S_l}\delta_{t-}\Psi_l^n\|_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} \right)^2 \right),\end{aligned}$$

where the last step is possible because  $0 < \epsilon_l, \epsilon_r \leq 2$ . Substituting this into the energy balance in Eq. (5.30) yields

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v} &\geq \frac{1}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{[S]_l}\delta_{t-}\Psi_l^n\|_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} \right)^2 \\ &\quad + \frac{c^2}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{S_{l+1/2}}\mu_{t-\delta_{x+}}\Psi_l^n\|_d^2 - \frac{k^2}{h^2} \left( \|\sqrt{\mu_{xx}S_l}\delta_{t-}\Psi_l^n\|_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} \right)^2 \right),\end{aligned}$$

and as  $\|\sqrt{S_{l+1/2}}\mu_{t-\delta_{x+}}\Psi_l^n\|_d^2$  is non-negative, the following is also true

$$\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v} \geq \frac{1}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{[S]_l}\delta_{t-}\Psi_l^n\|_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} \right)^2 - \frac{\lambda^2}{2} \left( \|\sqrt{\mu_{xx}S_l}\delta_{t-}\Psi_l^n\|_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} \right)^2.$$

This can be written as

$$\mathfrak{h} \geq \frac{1}{2} \sum_d \left( \sqrt{[S]_l} - \lambda \sqrt{\mu_{xx}S_l} \right) (\delta_{t-}\Psi_l^n)^2 \quad (5.36)$$

which is non-negative if

$$\begin{aligned}\min \left( \sqrt{[S]_l} - \lambda \sqrt{\mu_{xx}S_l} \right) &\geq 0, \\ \lambda &\leq \min \left( \sqrt{\frac{[S]_l}{\mu_{xx}S_l}} \right).\end{aligned}$$

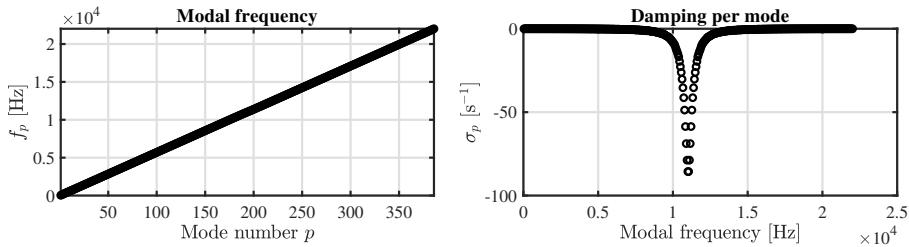
For the special choice of  $[S]_l = \mu_{xx}S_l$ , this condition reduces to

$$\lambda \leq 1, \quad (5.37)$$

also given in (5.11). This choice of  $[S]_l$  is equal to  $\bar{S}_l$  through Eq. (5.7), hence its choice in Eq. (5.6).

### 5.1.7 Modal analysis

The variable cross-section causes the modes of the system to vary in interesting ways. If the tube is perfectly cylindrical and  $S(x)$  is thus constant, Webster's equation reduces to the 1D wave equation and the modal frequencies are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency. For low cross-sectional variations, the modes generally follow a linear pattern. See Figure 5.7. The damping per mode, however, follows a different pattern, where higher damping occurs around  $f_s/4$ , and is due to the comb-filtering effect that the radiation has on the system. [is this true?](#)



**Fig. 5.7:** The result of a modal analysis of Webster's equation with parameters and geometry given in 5.1.4. Notice the higher damping for modes around  $f_s/4$ .

## 5.2 First-order system

Until now, only PDEs have been presented that are second-order in time, i.e., that are dependent on the acceleration of the state variable. This section presents a system of two coupled first-order PDEs which are instead dependent on the velocity. State-of-the-art research on brass instruments in the context of FDTD methods also uses this coupled system (see e.g.[65, 59]) and has been used in this project to model the trombone in paper [H].

look at wording

### 5.2.1 Continuous time

Using the same variables as before for cross-sectional area  $S = S(x)$ , wave speed  $c$ , and air density  $\rho_0$ , a system of PDEs that describes air propagation in an acoustic tube can be defined as follows:

$$\frac{S}{\rho_0 c^2} \partial_t p = -\partial_x(Sv), \quad (5.38a)$$

$$\rho_0 \partial_t v = -\partial_x p, \quad (5.38b)$$

where pressure  $p = p(x, t)$  (Pa) and particle velocity  $v = v(x, t)$  (m/s) are defined for  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  with domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$  and tube length  $L$  (in m). These

state variables are related to the acoustic potential  $\Psi$  as shown in Eq. (5.2) as

$$p = \rho_0 \partial_t \Psi, \quad v = -\partial_x \Psi. \quad (5.39)$$

Indeed it can be shown by substituting these definitions into Eq. (5.38a), Webster's equation can be obtained:

$$\frac{S}{\rho_0 c^2} \partial_t (\rho_0 \partial_t \Psi) = -\partial_x (S(-\partial_x \Psi)) \implies S \partial_t^2 \Psi = c^2 \partial_x (S \partial_x \Psi).$$

### Boundary conditions

For the first-order PDE system in Eq. (5.38), the boundary conditions are defined as follows:

$$p(0, t) = 0, \quad p(L, t) = 0, \quad (\text{Dirichlet, open}), \quad (5.40a)$$

$$S(0)v(0) = 0, \quad S(L)v(L) = 0, \quad (\text{Neumann, closed}), \quad (5.40b)$$

which, through Eq. (5.39), relate to the boundary conditions of Webster's equation in Eq. (5.3).

### 5.2.2 Discrete time

It is useful to place either  $p$  or  $v$  on an interleaved grid (see Figure 5.8). Following [59],  $v$  is placed on this interleaved grid both in space and time. Accordingly, system (5.38) is discretised as

$$\frac{\bar{S}_l}{\rho_0 c^2} \delta_t + p_l^n = -\delta_{x-} (S_{l+1/2} v_{l+1/2}^{n+1/2}), \quad (5.41a)$$

$$\rho_0 \delta_t - v_{l+1/2}^{n+1/2} = -\delta_{x+} p_l^n, \quad (5.41b)$$

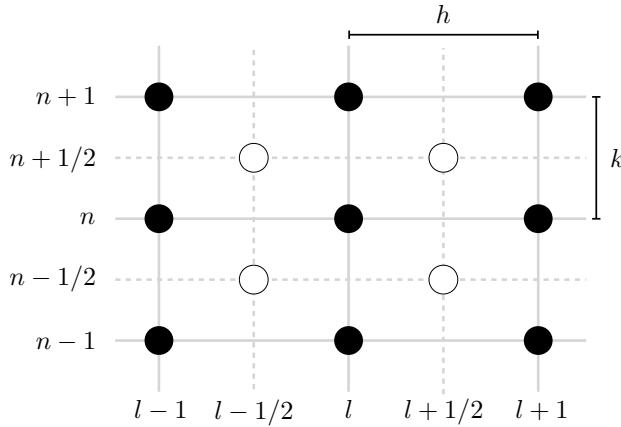
after which the update equations become

$$p_l^{n+1} = p_l^n - \frac{\rho_0 c \lambda}{\bar{S}_l} (S_{l+1/2} v_{l+1/2}^{n+1/2} - S_{l-1/2} v_{l-1/2}^{n+1/2}), \quad (5.42a)$$

$$v_{l+1/2}^{n+1/2} = v_{l+1/2}^{n-1/2} - \frac{\lambda}{\rho_0 c} (p_{l+1}^n - p_l^n), \quad (5.42b)$$

where (again)  $\lambda = ck/h \leq 1$  for stability. The pressure is defined for  $l = \{0, \dots, N\}$  and the velocity for  $l = \{0, \dots, N-1\}$  where  $N$  is the number of intervals between the grid points on the pressure grid. Notice that the range of calculation for the particle velocity is one fewer grid point than that of the pressure.

An advantage of using an interleaved grid like this, is that the forward and



**Fig. 5.8:** The interleaved grid used for the system of FD schemes in Eq. (5.41). Grid points on the regular grid (in black) are used for pressure  $p$ , while points on the interleaved grid (in white) are used for particle velocity  $v$ .

backward first-order are second-order accurate, and can be shown through a Taylor series expansion as done in 2.2.2 (also see [59]).

### Boundary conditions

The boundary conditions in Eq. (5.40a) can be discretised as follows

$$p_0^n = 0, \quad p_N^n = 0, \quad (\text{Dirichlet, open}), \quad (5.43a)$$

$$\mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}^n) = 0, \quad \mu_{x+}(S_{N-1/2}v_{N-1/2}^n) = 0, \quad (\text{Neumann, closed}). \quad (5.43b)$$

### 5.2.3 Matrix form

System (5.41) can be written in matrix form, by saving the states of  $p_l^n$  and  $v_{l+1/2}^{n+1}$  in vectors as

$$\mathbf{p}^n = [p_0^n, \dots, p_N^n]^T, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v}^{n+1/2} = [v_{1/2}^{n+1/2}, \dots, v_{N-1/2}^{n+1/2}]^T \quad (5.44)$$

which are of sizes  $(N + 1) \times 1$  and  $N \times 1$  respectively. One may then write the scheme in matrix form as

$$\mathbf{v}^{n+1/2} = \mathbf{v}^{n-1/2} + \mathbf{B}_p \mathbf{p}^n \quad (5.45a)$$

$$\mathbf{p}^{n+1} = \mathbf{p}^n + \mathbf{B}_v \mathbf{v}^{n+1/2} \quad (5.45b)$$

where

$$\mathbf{B}_v = \frac{\rho_0 c}{\lambda} \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{2S_{1/2}}{S_0} & & & \mathbf{0} \\ \frac{S_{1/2}}{S_1} & -\frac{S_{3/2}}{S_1} & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & \frac{S_{N-3/2}}{S_{N-1}} & -\frac{S_{N-1/2}}{S_{N-1}} \\ \mathbf{0} & & & \frac{2S_{N-1/2}}{S_N} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (5.46)$$

is of size  $(N + 1) \times N$ .

$$\mathbf{B}_p = \frac{\lambda}{\rho c} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & & \mathbf{0} & \\ & 1 & -1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & & 1 & -1 \\ \mathbf{0} & & & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (5.47)$$

is of size  $N \times (N + 1)$ .

Alternatively, one can write the scheme in one-step form by concatenating the states of the pressure and particle velocity into one vector. The matrix form will then be

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{p}^{n+1} \\ \mathbf{v}^{n+1/2} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{u}^{n+1}} = \mathbf{B} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{p}^n \\ \mathbf{v}^{n-1/2} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{u}^n} \quad (5.48)$$

where

$$\mathbf{B} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_{N+1} + \mathbf{B}_v \mathbf{B}_p & \mathbf{B}_v \\ \mathbf{B}_p & \mathbf{I}_N \end{bmatrix}, \quad (5.49)$$

is of size  $(2N + 1) \times (2N + 1)$  and may be directly used as matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$  for the modal analysis using a one-step form described in Section 3.5.1.

Finally the concatenated vector is defined as,

$$\mathbf{u}^n = [p_0^n, \dots, p_N^n, v_{1/2}^{n-1/2}, \dots, v_{N-1/2}^{n-1/2}]^T \quad (5.50)$$

and will be of size  $(2N + 1) \times 1$ .

## 5.2.4 Energy analysis

This section presents an energy analysis of the first-order system presented above using the techniques presented in Section 3.4. For the bulk of the analysis, [59] is followed.

**Step 1: Obtain  $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}$**

To obtain the correct energy balance, an inner product of Eq. (5.41a) with  $\mu_{t+}p_l^n$  needs to be taken over discrete domain  $d = \{0, \dots, N\}$ . Using the primed inner product in Eq. (3.9) and, after taking all terms to the left-hand side, yields<sup>2</sup>

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \frac{1}{\rho_0 c^2} \langle \mu_{t+}p_l^n, \bar{S}\delta_{t+}p_l^n \rangle'_d + \langle \mu_{t+}p_l^n, \delta_{x-}(S_{l+1/2}v_{l+1/2}^{n+1/2}) \rangle'_d = 0. \quad (5.51)$$

**Step 2: Identify energy types and isolate  $\delta_{t+}$**

For the rest of the analysis, the following superscripts and subscripts will be assumed unless denoted otherwise:  $n$  and  $l$  for  $p$ ,  $l$  for  $\bar{S}$ ,  $l + 1/2$  for  $S$  and  $l + 1/2$  and  $n + 1/2$  for  $v$ . After performing summation by parts of the last term using identity (3.14a), Eq. (5.51) becomes

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \frac{1}{\rho_0 c^2} \langle \mu_{t+}p, \bar{S}\delta_{t+}p \rangle'_d - \langle \mu_{t+}\delta_{x+}p, Sv \rangle_d = -\mathfrak{b} \quad (5.52)$$

where the boundary term is

$$\mathfrak{b} = \mathfrak{b}_r - \mathfrak{b}_l, \quad \text{with}$$

$$\mathfrak{b}_r = (\mu_{t+}p_N)\mu_{x+}(S_{N-1/2}v_{N-1/2}) \quad \text{and} \quad (5.53)$$

$$\mathfrak{b}_l = (\mu_{t+}p_0)\mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}), \quad (5.54)$$

and can be shown to vanish under the boundary conditions shown in Eq. (5.43a). Then, Eq. (5.41b) can be substituted into Eq. (5.52) to get

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \frac{1}{\rho_0 c^2} \langle \mu_{t+}p, \bar{S}\delta_{t+}p \rangle'_d - \langle \mu_{t+}(-\rho_0\delta_{t-}v), Sv \rangle_d = 0 \quad (5.55)$$

$$= \frac{1}{\rho_0 c^2} \langle \mu_{t+}p, \bar{S}\delta_{t+}p \rangle'_d + \rho_0 \langle \delta_{t-}v, Sv \rangle_d = 0. \quad (5.56)$$

Finally, one can use identities (3.17c) and (3.17b) for the first and second term respectively to get

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{h} &= \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v} \quad \text{where} \\ \mathfrak{t} &= \frac{\rho_0}{2} \langle Sv, e_{t-}v \rangle_d \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{v} = \frac{1}{2\rho_0 c^2} \left( \|\sqrt{\bar{S}}p\|'_d \right)^2. \end{aligned} \quad (5.57)$$

---

<sup>2</sup>The primed rather than the weighted inner product can be used here as the eventual boundary terms can be shown to vanish when using the boundary conditions in Eq. (5.43a).

### Step 3: Check units

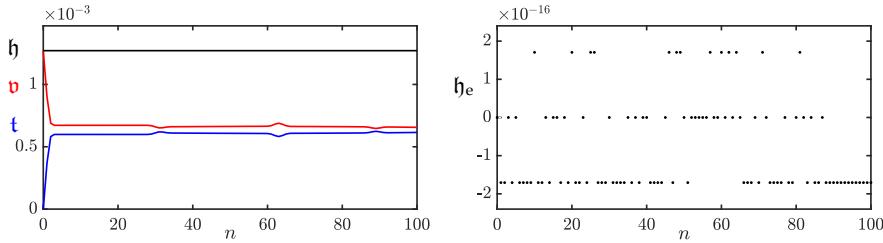
Writing the terms in Eq. (5.57) in their units yields

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{t} &= \frac{\rho_0}{2} \langle S\mathbf{v}, e_{t-\mathbf{v}} \rangle_d \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-3} \cdot \text{m} \cdot (\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}), \\ &\quad = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}, \\ \mathbf{v} &= \frac{1}{2\rho_0 c^2} (\|\sqrt{\bar{S}}\mathbf{p}\|'_d)^2 \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} (\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-3} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2})^{-1} \cdot (\text{m} \cdot \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-2})^2, \\ &\quad = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}, \end{aligned}$$

and indeed have the correct units.

### Step 4: Implementation

Figure 5.9 shows the energetic output of an implementation of the first order system in Eq. (5.41), and shows that the energy is within machine precision.



**Fig. 5.9:** The kinetic (blue), potential (red), and total (black) energy of an implementation of the first-order system in Eq. (5.41) are plotted in the left panel. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

### 5.2.5 Adding radiation

Following [59], radiation can be added to the schemes using a circuit representation of the Levine and Schwinger radiation model (See Figure 5.10). This section will provide a derivation I'll actually move most of this to an appendix...

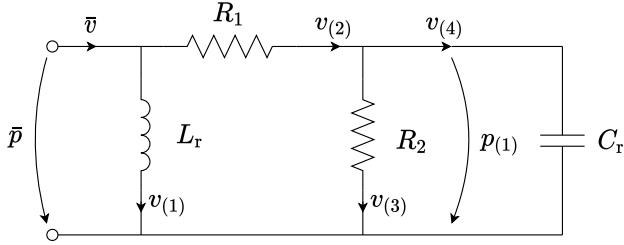
The system can be described as

$$\bar{v} = \mu_{t+} v_{(1)} + \frac{1}{R_2} \mu_{t+} p_{(1)} + C_r \delta_{t+} p_{(1)}, \quad (5.58a)$$

$$\bar{p} = L_r \delta_{t+} v_{(1)}, \quad (5.58b)$$

$$\bar{p} = \left(1 + \frac{R_1}{R_2}\right) \mu_{t+} p_{(1)} + R_1 C_r \delta_{t+} p_{(1)}, \quad (5.58c)$$

## 5.2. First-order system



**Fig. 5.10:** The circuit representation of the Levine and Schwinger radiation model.

where  $\bar{p}^{n+1/2}$  and  $\bar{v}^{n+1/2}$  are placed on the interleaved temporal grid and are related to the tube by

$$\bar{p} = \mu_{t+N} p_N^n, \quad \bar{S}_N \bar{v} = \mu_{x-} \left( S_{N+1/2} v_{N+1/2}^{n+1/2} \right). \quad (5.59)$$

This can be applied to the right boundary of the tube by evaluating Eq. (5.42a) at  $l = N$

$$p_N^{n+1} = p_N^n - \frac{\rho_0 c \lambda}{\bar{S}_N} \left( S_{N+1/2} v_{N+1/2}^{n+1/2} - S_{N-1/2} v_{N-1/2}^{n+1/2} \right), \quad (5.60)$$

and, rewriting this to

$$\begin{aligned} p_N^{n+1} &= p_N^n - \frac{\rho_0 c \lambda}{\bar{S}_N} \left( 2\mu_{x-} \left( S_{N+1/2} v_{N+1/2}^{n+1/2} \right) - 2S_{N-1/2} v_{N-1/2}^{n+1/2} \right), \\ p_N^{n+1} &= p_N^n - \frac{2\rho_0 c \lambda}{\bar{S}_N} \left( \bar{S}_N \bar{v} - S_{N-1/2} v_{N-1/2}^{n+1/2} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (5.61)$$

A definition for  $\bar{v}$  can then be found by first expanding Eq. (5.58a) to

$$\bar{v} = \frac{1}{2} \left( v_{(1)}^{n+1} + v_{(1)}^n \right) + \left( \frac{1}{2R_2} + \frac{C_r}{k} \right) p_{(1)}^{n+1} + \left( \frac{1}{2R_2} - \frac{C_r}{k} \right) p_{(1)}^n \quad (5.62)$$

after which it should be made solely dependent on the known values  $v_{(1)}^n$ ,  $p_{(1)}^n$  and  $p_N^n$  and the unknown  $p_N^{n+1}$  (as this can be obtained using Eq. (5.61)).

Equation (5.58b) can be expanded to

$$v_{(1)}^{n+1} = \frac{k}{L_r} \bar{p} + v_{(1)}^n, \quad (5.63)$$

and Eq. (5.58c) to

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{p} &= \left(1 + \frac{R_1}{R_2}\right) \mu_{t+p(1)} + R_1 C_r \delta_{t+p(1)}, \\ \bar{p} &= \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \frac{R_1}{R_2}\right) \left(p_{(1)}^{n+1} + p_{(1)}^n\right) + \frac{R_1 C_r}{k} \left(p_{(1)}^{n+1} - p_{(1)}^n\right), \\ \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{R_1}{2R_2} + \frac{R_1 C_r}{k}\right) p_{(1)}^{n+1} &= \bar{p} + \left(\frac{R_1 C_r}{k} - \frac{1}{2} - \frac{R_1}{2R_2}\right) p_{(1)}^n\end{aligned}$$

and finally solved for  $p_{(1)}^{n+1}$  as

$$p_{(1)}^{n+1} = \underbrace{\left(\frac{2R_2 k}{2R_1 R_2 C_r + k(R_1 + R_2)}\right) \bar{p}}_{\zeta_1} + \underbrace{\left(\frac{2R_1 R_2 C_r - k(R_1 + R_2)}{2R_1 R_2 C_r + k(R_1 + R_2)}\right) p_{(1)}^n}. \quad (5.64)$$

Equations (5.63) and (5.64) can then be substituted into Eq. (5.62) and, using the definition of  $\bar{v}$  from Eq. (5.59), yields

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{v} &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{k}{L_r} (\mu_{t+p_N^n}) + 2v_{(1)}^n \right) + \left( \frac{1}{2R_2} + \frac{C_r}{k} \right) \zeta_1 \mu_{t+p_N^n} \\ &\quad + \left( \frac{1}{2R_2} + \frac{C_r}{k} \right) \zeta_2 p_{(1)}^n + \left( \frac{1}{2R_2} - \frac{C_r}{k} \right) p_{(1)}^n, \\ \bar{v} &= \underbrace{\left( \frac{k}{2L_r} + \frac{\zeta_1}{2R_2} + \frac{C_r \zeta_1}{k} \right) \mu_{t+p_N^n} + v_{(1)}^n}_{\zeta_3} + \underbrace{\left( \frac{\zeta_2 + 1}{2R_2} + \frac{C_r \zeta_2 - C_r}{k} \right) p_{(1)}^n}_{\zeta_4}. \quad (5.65)\end{aligned}$$

Finally, substituting this definition for  $\bar{v}$  into Eq. (5.61) yields

$$\begin{aligned}p_N^{n+1} &= p_N^n - \frac{2\rho_0 c \lambda}{\bar{S}_N} \left( \bar{S}_N \left[ \zeta_3 \left( \frac{p_N^{n+1} + p_N^n}{2} \right) + v_{(1)}^n + \zeta_4 p_{(1)}^n \right] - S_{N-1/2} v_{N-1/2}^{n+1/2} \right) \\ p_N^{n+1} &= p_N^n - \rho_0 c \lambda \left( \zeta_3 (p_N^{n+1} + p_N^n) + 2(v_{(1)}^n + \zeta_4 p_{(1)}^n) - \frac{2S_{N-1/2} v_{N-1/2}^{n+1/2}}{\bar{S}_N} \right)\end{aligned}$$

and yields a definition for  $p_N^{n+1}$  based on known values of the system

$$p_N^{n+1} = \frac{1 - \rho_0 c \lambda \zeta_3}{1 + \rho_0 c \lambda \zeta_3} p_N^n - \frac{2\rho_0 c \lambda}{1 + \rho_0 c \lambda \zeta_3} \left( v_{(1)}^n + \zeta_4 p_{(1)}^n - \frac{S_{N-1/2} v_{N-1/2}^{n+1/2}}{\bar{S}_N} \right). \quad (5.66)$$

### 5.2.6 Energy

[not done yet...](#) Recalling the condition at the right boundary from (5.53)

$$\mathfrak{b}_r = (\mu_{t+} p_N) \underbrace{\mu_{x+} (S_{N-1/2} v_{N-1/2})}_{\mu_{x-} S_{N+1/2} v_{N+1/2}}, \quad (5.67)$$

using Eq. (5.59) one can rewrite this to

$$\mathfrak{b}_r = \bar{p} \bar{S}_N \bar{v}. \quad (5.68)$$

then we can

## Chapter 5. Acoustic Tubes

# Chapter 6

## 2D Systems

The previous chapters considered systems distributed over one spatial dimension. As not all musical instruments or instrument-components can be simplified to this, higher dimensional systems need to be taken into consideration, such as 2D systems. 2D PDEs can be used to model drum membranes, plate reverbs or simplified instrument bodies.

Apart from being slightly more complex than 1D models, the main issue with 2D systems is that their implementations are orders of magnitude heavier to compute than 1D schemes. This chapter will therefore also provide details on how to best implement these schemes in MATLAB. Implementation in C++ will be detailed in Chapter 13.

This chapter starts by providing some additional information about 2D grid functions and operators. Then, the 2D wave equation is presented, which is used to extend the analysis techniques presented in Chapter 3 to 2D.<sup>1</sup> Afterwards, two 2D models used in this work: the thin plate and the stiff membrane, will be described in a similar fashion. The systems modelled in this work are simplified to be rectangular and are defined on a Cartesian coordinate system. Section 6.5 briefly elaborates on radial coordinate systems and their shortcomings. Unless denoted otherwise, the theory in this chapter follows [2].

### 6.1 PDEs and FD schemes in 2D

Consider a rectangular 2D system with side lengths  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  (both in m) and its state described by  $u = u(x, y, t)$ . The system is defined for  $t \geq 0$  and  $(x, y) \in \mathcal{D}$  where domain  $\mathcal{D} \in [0, L_x] \times [0, L_y]$  is two-dimensional.

Similar to the 1D case explained in Section 2.2.1, the state variable can be discretised to a 2D grid function according to  $u(x, y, t) \cong u_{l,m}^n$  with space

---

<sup>1</sup>The abbreviation 2D will also be used for ‘two dimensions’.

$x = lh$  and  $y = mh$  and time  $t = nk$  with  $k = 1/f_s$ . The temporal index  $n \in \mathbb{N}^0$  and the spatial indices  $l \in \{0, \dots, N_x\}$  and  $m \in \{0, \dots, N_y\}$  index the grid function in space in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions respectively. Here,  $N_x$  is the number of intervals between grid points in the  $x$  direction and  $N_y$  in the  $y$  direction. For simplicity, the grid spacing  $h$  is set to be the same in both the  $x$  and  $y$  directions in this work.

### Additional operators

In continuous time, an additional operator referred to as the *Laplacian*, can be defined as

$$\Delta = \partial_x^2 + \partial_y^2, \quad (6.1)$$

which describes a second-order spatial derivative in 2D. A 4<sup>th</sup>-order spatial derivative in 2D, used to model stiffness like in the stiff string in Chapter 4, is called the *biharmonic* operator, and is defined as the Laplacian applied to itself:

$$\Delta\Delta = \partial_x^4 + 2\partial_x^2\partial_y^2 + \partial_y^4. \quad (6.2)$$

In discrete time, the same temporal and spatial shift operators as defined in Section 2.2.2 can be applied to grid function  $u_{l,m}^n$  the latter of which only affects the spatial index  $l$ . Additional operators affecting spatial index  $m$  for the  $y$  direction are

$$e_{y+}u_{l,m}^n = u_{l,m+1}^n, \quad \text{and} \quad e_{y-}u_{l,m}^n = u_{l,m-1}^n. \quad (6.3)$$

Using these shift operators, a discrete approximation of the Laplacian in Eq. (6.1) can be made<sup>2</sup>

$$\Delta \approx \delta_\Delta \triangleq \frac{1}{h^2} (e_{x+} + e_{x-} + e_{y+} + e_{y-} - 4), \quad (6.4)$$

and, when applied to a grid function, yields

$$\Delta u \approx \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n = \frac{1}{h^2} (u_{l+1,m}^n + u_{l-1,m}^n + u_{l,m+1}^n + u_{l,m-1}^n - 4u_{l,m}^n). \quad (6.5)$$

See Figure 6.1a for the stencil of the discrete Laplacian. Similarly, an approxi-

---

<sup>2</sup>Notice that the  $\delta_\Delta$  operator is identical to  $\delta_{\Delta\boxplus}$  in [2], but will not be used here as Eq. (6.4) is the only discretisation to the  $\Delta$  operator used in this work.

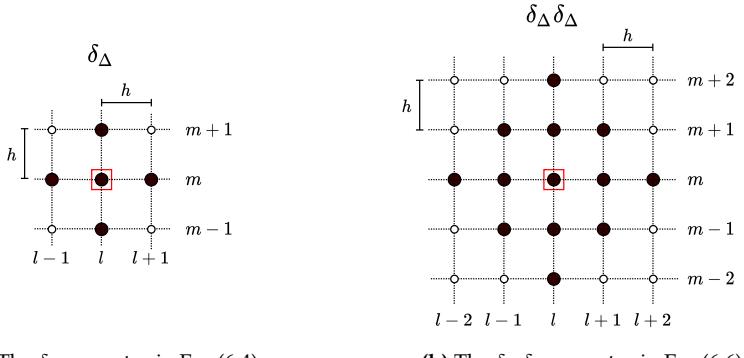
mation of the biharmonic operator in Eq. (6.2) can be made as

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta\Delta \approx \delta_\Delta\delta_\Delta &\triangleq \frac{1}{h^4} \left[ (e_{x+}^2 + e_{x-}^2 + e_{y+}^2 + e_{y-}^2) \right. \\ &+ 2(e_{x+}e_{y+} + e_{x+}e_{y-} + e_{x-}e_{y+} + e_{x-}e_{y-}) \\ &\left. - 8(e_{x+} + e_{x-} + e_{y+} + e_{y-}) + 20 \right],\end{aligned}\quad (6.6)$$

and, when applied to a grid function, yields

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta\Delta u \approx \delta_\Delta\delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n &= \frac{1}{h^4} \left[ (u_{l+2,m}^n + u_{l-2,m}^n + u_{l,m+2}^n + u_{l,m-2}^n) \right. \\ &+ 2(u_{l+1,m+1}^n + u_{l-1,m+1}^n + u_{l+1,m-1}^n + u_{l-1,m-1}^n) \\ &\left. - 8(u_{l+1,m}^n + u_{l-1,m}^n + u_{l,m+1}^n + u_{l,m-1}^n) + 20u_{l,m}^n \right].\end{aligned}$$

See Figure 6.1b for the stencil of the discrete biharmonic operator.



**Fig. 6.1:** The stencils of the 2D spatial FD operators in Eqs. (6.4) and (6.6) respectively. The red square denotes what grid point the operator is applied to. The stencils follow the same layout as Figure 2.3, but the vertical axis denotes a second spatial dimension rather than time.

## 6.2 The 2D wave equation

The 2D wave equation is the simplest 2D model in the context of musical acoustics and using the operators presented above it is a fairly straightforward extension to the 1D wave equation. Similar to how the 1D wave equation is used to model an ideal string, the 2D wave equation can be used to model an ideal membrane.

The first appearance of an implementation of the 2D wave equation in a musical context was due to van Duyne and Smith who used digital waveguides, or more specifically a waveguide mesh, to discretise it [66]. The implementation is identical to the FD scheme that will be presented here.  
though it is more general here due to  $\lambda^2$  instead of hard-coded 0.5

This section will present the 2D wave equation in continuous time and its discretisation afterwards. The resulting FD scheme is then used as a test-case to extend the various analysis techniques presented in Chapter 3 to 2D.

### 6.2.1 Continuous time

Consider a system modelling the 2D wave equation with side lengths  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  (both in m) and its state described by  $u = u(x, y, t)$ . The system is defined over  $(x, y) \in \mathcal{D}$  with domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L_x] \times [0, L_y]$  and its motion is described by the following PDE:

$$\partial_t^2 u = c^2 \Delta u, \quad (6.7)$$

with wave speed  $c$  (in m/s) and the Laplacian operator as defined in Eq. (6.1). If the 2D wave equation is used to model an ideal membrane, the wave speed is defined as  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho H}$  (in m/s), with tension per unit length (applied to the boundary)  $T$  (in N/m), material density  $\rho$  (in kg/m<sup>3</sup>) and thickness  $H$  (in m).

check whether  
this wording is  
right..

#### Boundary conditions

Similar to the 1D wave equation, two alternatives for boundary conditions are

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} u(0, y, t) = u(L_x, y, t) = 0 \\ u(x, 0, t) = u(x, L_y, t) = 0 \end{array} \right\} \quad (\text{Dirichlet, fixed}), \quad (6.8a)$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \partial_x u(0, y, t) = \partial_x u(L_x, y, t) = 0 \\ \partial_y u(x, 0, t) = \partial_y u(x, L_y, t) = 0 \end{array} \right\} \quad (\text{Neumann, free}), \quad (6.8b)$$

where  $\forall$  means 'for all values of'.

### 6.2.2 Discrete time

Using the definition for the approximation of the Laplacian in Eq. (6.4), the 2D wave equation PDE in Eq. (6.7) can be discretised to

$$\delta_{tt} u_{l,m}^n = c^2 \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n, \quad (6.9)$$

with  $l \in \{0, \dots, N_x\}$  and  $m \in \{0, \dots, N_y\}$  where  $N_x$  and  $N_y$  are the number of intervals between grid points in the  $x$  and  $y$  direction respectively. The operators can then be expanded (see Eq. (6.5)) and solving for  $u_{l,m}^n$  yields the

following update equation

$$u_{l,m}^{n+1} = 2u_{l,m}^n - u_{l,m}^{n-1} + \lambda^2 (u_{l+1,m}^n + u_{l-1,m}^n + u_{l,m+1}^n + u_{l,m-1}^n - 4u_{l,m}^n), \quad (6.10)$$

where the Courant number

$$\lambda = \frac{ck}{h}, \quad (6.11)$$

and needs to abide

$$\lambda \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \quad (6.12)$$

for the scheme to be stable. See Section 6.2.4 for a derivation of this. Writing this condition in terms of the grid spacing, places the following limit on  $h$ :

$$h \geq \sqrt{2}ck. \quad (6.13)$$

### Discrete boundary conditions

The boundary conditions in Eqs. (6.8) can be discretised to

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} u_{0,m}^n = u_{N_x,m}^n = 0 \\ u_{l,0}^n = u_{l,N_y}^n = 0 \end{array} \right\} \quad \forall m, \quad (\text{Dirichlet, fixed}), \quad (6.14a)$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \delta_x \cdot u_{0,m}^n = \delta_x \cdot u_{N_x,m}^n = 0 \\ \delta_y \cdot u_{l,0}^n = \delta_y \cdot u_{l,N_y}^n = 0 \end{array} \right\} \quad \forall l, \quad (\text{Neumann, free}). \quad (6.14b)$$

If the Dirichlet boundary conditions are used (for all sides), the domain of calculation can simply be reduced to  $l \in \{1, \dots, N_x - 1\}$  and  $m \in \{1, \dots, N_y - 1\}$ .

### Stencil

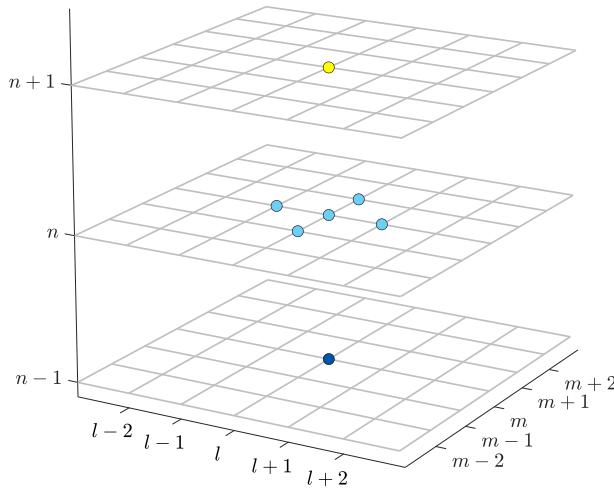
Figure 6.2 shows the stencil of the 2D wave equation FD scheme in Eq. (6.9). The grid points use the same colour-coding as previous stencils (see e.g. Figure 2.10).

### 6.2.3 Matrix form and output

Similar to how the number of intervals between grid points is calculated for 1D systems in Eq. (2.53), it can be calculated in 2D using the following operations:

$$h := \sqrt{2}ck, \quad N_x := \left\lfloor \frac{L_x}{h} \right\rfloor, \quad N_y := \left\lfloor \frac{L_y}{h} \right\rfloor, \quad h := \min \left( \frac{L_x}{N_x}, \frac{L_y}{N_y} \right), \quad \lambda := \frac{ck}{h}, \quad (6.15)$$

where the ‘min’ operator selects the smallest value of  $L_x/N_x$  and  $L_y/N_y$  to stay as close to the stability condition as possible. To implement the update equation in Eq. (6.10), one could save the states of the system in matrices (as



**Fig. 6.2:** The stencil for the 2D wave equation FD scheme in Eq. (6.9).

opposed to vectors in the 1D case such as done in Section 4.2.2) and directly work with these. Using Dirichlet boundary conditions the  $(N_x - 1) \times (N_y - 1)$  state matrix at time index  $n$  would be

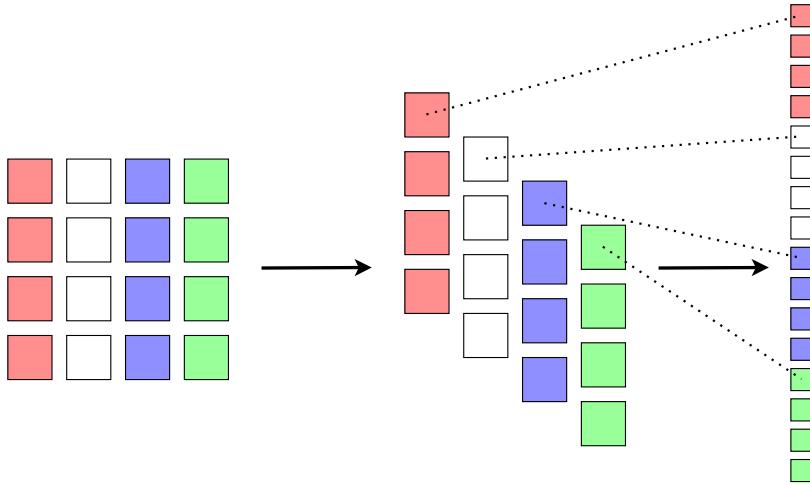
$$\mathbf{U}^n = \begin{bmatrix} u_{1,1}^n & \cdots & u_{1,N_x-1}^n \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ u_{N_y-1,1}^n & \cdots & u_{N_y-1,N_x-1}^n \end{bmatrix}, \quad (6.16)$$

and could be used to make a ‘for-loop implementation’ of the update equation. This would indeed be the strategy if one would implement the scheme in e.g. C++ (see Chapter 13). For a more compact and faster implementation in MATLAB, however, one could ‘stack’ or ‘flatten’ the state matrices to vectors and update the scheme using matrix-vector multiplication (as done for the stiff string in Section 4.2.2 for example). Again using Dirichlet boundary conditions, the stacked state vector will be structured as

$$\mathbf{u}^n = [(\mathbf{u}_1^n)^T, \dots, (\mathbf{u}_{N_x-1}^n)^T]^T, \quad \text{with } \mathbf{u}_l^n = [u_{l,1}^n, \dots, u_{l,N_y-1}^n]^T, \quad (6.17)$$

and has a size of  $(N_x - 1) \cdot (N_y - 1) \times 1$ . See Figure 6.3 for a visualisation of the matrix-stacking process.

To obtain a matrix form of the  $\delta_\Delta$  operator that can be applied to this stacked state vector, the *Kronecker product* and *Kronecker sum* must be introduced [67]. The Kronecker product between two arbitrarily-sized matrices (using their



**Fig. 6.3:** Stacking, or ‘flattening’ a  $4 \times 4$  matrix to a 16-element vector.

dimensions as a subscript) is

$$\mathbf{A}_{M \times N} \otimes \mathbf{B}_{K \times L} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}\mathbf{B} & \dots & a_{1N}\mathbf{B} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{M1}\mathbf{B} & \dots & a_{MN}\mathbf{B} \end{bmatrix}_{MK \times NL}. \quad (6.18)$$

The Kronecker sum between two square matrices is

$$\mathbf{A}_{M \times M} \oplus \mathbf{B}_{N \times N} = \mathbf{I}_N \otimes \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} \otimes \mathbf{I}_M, \quad (6.19)$$

where  $\mathbf{I}_P$  is the identity matrix of size  $P \times P$ .

For Dirichlet boundary conditions, the  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$  matrix of size  $(N_x - 1) \times (N_x - 1)$  and the  $\mathbf{D}_{yy}$  matrix of size  $(N_y - 1) \times (N_y - 1)$  can be defined (similar to Eq. (3.3)) as

$$\mathbf{D}_{xx} = \frac{1}{h^2} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 & & & & 0 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & & \\ & & 1 & -2 & 1 & \\ 0 & & & 1 & -2 & \end{bmatrix}}_{(N_x-1) \times (N_x-1)} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{D}_{yy} = \frac{1}{h^2} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 & & & & 0 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & & \\ & & 1 & -2 & 1 & \\ 0 & & & 1 & -2 & \end{bmatrix}}_{(N_y-1) \times (N_y-1)}. \quad (6.20)$$

Following [47], the matrix form of the  $\delta_\Delta$  operator can then be defined as the

Kronecker sum of  $\mathbf{D}_{yy}$  and  $\mathbf{D}_{xx}$ , yielding

$$\mathbf{D}_\Delta = \mathbf{D}_{yy} \oplus \mathbf{D}_{xx} = \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & & & & 0 \\ & \mathbf{D}_{yy} & & & \\ & & \mathbf{D}_{yy} & & \\ & & & \mathbf{D}_{yy} & \\ 0 & & & & \ddots \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{h^2} \begin{bmatrix} \ddots & \ddots & & & 0 \\ & -2\mathbf{I} & \mathbf{I} & & \\ & \mathbf{I} & -2\mathbf{I} & \mathbf{I} & \\ & & \mathbf{I} & -2\mathbf{I} & \ddots \\ 0 & & & \ddots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}, \quad (6.21)$$

where the identity matrix  $\mathbf{I} = \mathbf{I}_{N_x-1}$ . The  $\mathbf{D}_\Delta$  matrix is square and of size  $(N_x - 1) \cdot (N_y - 1) \times (N_x - 1) \cdot (N_y - 1)$ .

Using the above, the FD scheme in Eq. (6.9) can then be compactly written in matrix form as

$$\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = (2\mathbf{I} + c^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_\Delta) \mathbf{u}^n - \mathbf{u}^{n-1}, \quad (6.22)$$

where the identity matrix is of the same size as  $\mathbf{D}_\Delta$ . See Appendix C.3 for a MATLAB implementation of the 2D wave equation.<sup>3</sup>

If one would like to visualise the system state as a 2D grid, one can revert the stacked vector back to a matrix by using the `reshape` function in MATLAB:

```
uMatrix = reshape(u, Ny-1, Nx-1);
```

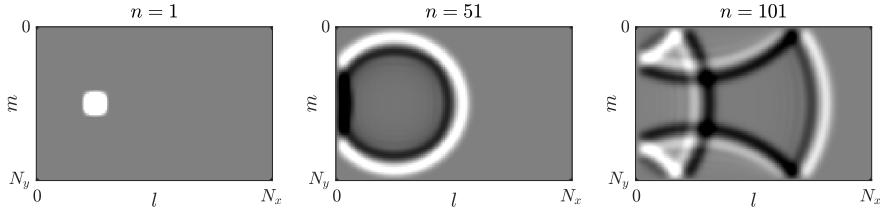
A 2D raised-cosine excitation can be implemented in the same way by reshaping an excitation matrix to a vector (see lines 40–52 in Appendix C.3).

## Output

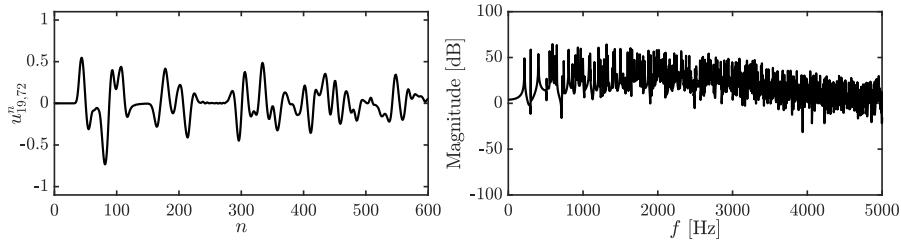
Figure 6.4 shows the wave propagation of an implementation of the 2D wave equation with Dirichlet boundary conditions. Parameter values are  $L_x = 1.5$  m,  $L_y = 1$  m and  $c = 360$  m/s. Waves reflect at the boundaries at an increasing rate. This is also shown in Figure 6.5, where the output – taken at  $(x, y) = (0.15, 0.85)$  – in time domain shows an increase in oscillations over time, due to these reflections. The right panel shows that the output contains many partials that are close together, i.e., the output is highly inharmonic. As opposed to the output of the 1D wave equation shown in Figure 2.11, where the partials are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency, the 2D wave equation exhibits aperiodic behaviour due to the aforementioned reflections, causing this inharmonicity.

<sup>3</sup>As the matrices are extremely sparse (many 0-entries), it is useful to utilise MATLAB's optimisation for sparse matrices using the `sparse()` function. One can use `speye()` for sparse identity matrices.

## 6.2. The 2D wave equation



**Fig. 6.4:** Wave propagation of an implementation of the 2D wave equation with  $L_x = 1.5$  m,  $L_y = 1$  m and  $c = 360$  m/s. The system is excited with a 2D raised cosine at  $(0.25L_x, 0.5L_y)$ .



**Fig. 6.5:** The output of the 2D wave equation at  $(x, y) = (0.15, 0.85)$  corresponding to Figure 6.4. The partials are extremely close together (notice that only frequencies up to 5000 Hz are shown) which is related to the aperiodic nature of the system behaviour.

### 6.2.4 Frequency domain analysis in 2D

Section 3.3 showed how to perform frequency domain analysis to obtain stability conditions for a FD scheme. This section shows extensions to this in 2D and follows [2, Ch. 10].

In 2D, the ansatz in Eq. (3.20) can be extended to

$$u_{l,m}^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} z^n e^{j\beta(l\beta_x + m\beta_y)} \quad (6.23)$$

where  $\beta_x$  and  $\beta_y$  are components of a 2D wavenumber  $\beta$  in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions respectively. Frequency domain representations of temporal operators shown in Eq. (3.22) do not change in the 2D case. Using

$$p_x = \sin^2(\beta_x h/2) \quad \text{and} \quad p_y = \sin^2(\beta_y h/2) \quad (6.24)$$

for brevity, the following frequency domain representation of spatial operators can be obtained through the ansatz in Eq. (6.23)

$$\delta_{xx} u_{l,m}^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} -\frac{4}{h^2} p_x u_{l,m}^n \quad \text{and} \quad \delta_{yy} u_{l,m}^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} -\frac{4}{h^2} p_y u_{l,m}^n, \quad (6.25)$$

from which it follows that

$$\delta_{\Delta} u_{l,m}^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} -\frac{4}{h^2}(p_x + p_y)u_{l,m}^n, \quad (6.26)$$

$$\delta_{\Delta}\delta_{\Delta} u_{l,m}^n \xrightarrow{\mathcal{A}} \frac{16}{h^4}(p_x + p_y)^2 u_{l,m}^n. \quad (6.27)$$

Using these definitions, a frequency domain interpretation of the 2D wave equation FD scheme in Eq. (6.9) can be obtained

$$\frac{1}{k^2} (z - 2 + z^{-1}) = -\frac{4c^2}{h^2}(p_x + p_y).$$

Recalling  $\lambda$  in Eq. (6.11), this can be rewritten to the following characteristic equation

$$z + (4\lambda^2(p_x + p_y) - 2) + z^{-1} = 0. \quad (6.28)$$

As (after multiplication by  $z$ ) the characteristic equation is of the form in Eq. (3.25) and  $a^{(2)} = 1$ , its roots are bounded by condition (3.27)

$$|4\lambda^2(p_x + p_y) - 2| \leq 2.$$

Further derivation yields

$$\begin{aligned} -2 &\leq 4\lambda^2(p_x + p_y) - 2 \leq 2, \\ 0 &\leq 4\lambda^2(p_x + p_y) \leq 4, \end{aligned}$$

and as the middle term is non-negative the first condition is always satisfied, yields

$$\lambda^2(p_x + p_y) \leq 1.$$

Finally, as  $p_x$  and  $p_y$  are bounded by 1 for all wavenumbers  $\beta_x$  and  $\beta_y$  respectively, the following condition must hold

$$\begin{aligned} 2\lambda^2 &\leq 1, \\ \lambda &\leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{aligned} \quad (6.29)$$

which is the stability condition given in Eq. (6.12).

### 6.2.5 Energy analysis in 2D

Energy analysis for the 1D case is introduced in Section 3.4. Extensions for the analysis in 2D will be given here.

Analogous to the 1D inner product presented in Section 3.2.1, one can define a 2D inner product. For two functions  $f = f(x, y, t)$  and  $g(x, y, t)$

defined for a 2D domain  $\mathcal{D}$  their inner product over this domain is defined as

$$\langle f, g \rangle_{\mathcal{D}} = \iint_{\mathcal{D}} f g dx dy. \quad (6.30)$$

Like in the 1D case, these functions do not have to be a function of time, but they are here, for coherence.

For two (grid) functions  $f_{l,m}^n$  and  $g_{l,m}^n$  defined over a discrete domain  $d \in \{0, \dots, N_x\} \times \{0, \dots, N_y\}$  their discrete inner product is defined as

$$\langle f_{l,m}^n, g_{l,m}^n \rangle_d = \sum_{l=0}^{N_x} \sum_{m=0}^{N_y} h^2 f_{l,m}^n g_{l,m}^n. \quad (6.31)$$

Notice that the multiplication with the grid spacing is squared due to the inner product over a 2D domain (and is the discrete counterpart of  $dx dy$ ). Useful for energy analysis are the following reduced 2D domains

$$\underline{d}_x = \{0, \dots, N_x - 1\} \times \{0, \dots, N_y\}, \quad (6.32a)$$

$$\overline{d}_x = \{1, \dots, N_x - 1\} \times \{0, \dots, N_y\}, \quad (6.32b)$$

$$\underline{d}_y = \{0, \dots, N_x\} \times \{0, \dots, N_y - 1\}, \quad (6.32c)$$

$$\overline{d}_y = \{0, \dots, N_x\} \times \{1, \dots, N_y - 1\} \quad (6.32d)$$

$$\underline{\bar{d}} = \{1, \dots, N_x - 1\} \times \{1, \dots, N_y - 1\} \quad (6.32e)$$

Below, the steps to perform energy analysis presented in Section 3.4 will be followed:

### Step 1: Obtain $\delta_{t+\hbar}$

Using the definition of wave speed for the ideal membrane, i.e.,  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho H}$ , the FD scheme in Eq. (6.9) can be multiplied by  $\rho H$  and a 2D inner product (see Eq. (6.31)) with  $(\delta_t u_{l,m}^n)$  over discrete domain  $d$  can be taken to yield a definition for  $\delta_{t+\hbar}$ :

$$\delta_{t+\hbar} = \rho H \langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{tt} u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d - T \langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d = 0,$$

which can be rewritten to

$$\delta_{t+\hbar} = \rho H \langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{tt} u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d - T (\langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{xx} u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d + \langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{yy} u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d) = 0.$$

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: check what equations have numbers when performing energy analysis (and stability for that matter)

**Step 2: Identify energy types and isolate  $\delta_{t+}$** 

Summation by parts as described in Section 3.2.2 can also be applied to  $\delta_{yy}$  and the following energy balance follows

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{b},$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{h} &= \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v} \quad \text{with} \quad \mathfrak{t} = \frac{\rho H}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_{l,m}^n\|_d^2 \quad \text{and} \\ \mathfrak{v} &= \frac{T}{2} \left( \langle \delta_{x+} u_{l,m}^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_{l,m}^n \rangle_{\underline{d}_x} + \langle \delta_{y+} u_{l,m}^n, e_{t-} \delta_{y+} u_{l,m}^n \rangle_{\underline{d}_y} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (6.33)$$

Here, the reduced domains  $\underline{d}_x$  and  $\underline{d}_y$  are as defined in Eqs. (6.32). The boundary term is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{b} &= \frac{T}{2} \left[ \langle \delta_t \cdot u_{N_x,m}^n, \delta_{x+} u_{N_x,m}^n \rangle_{(N_x,y)} - \langle \delta_t \cdot u_{0,m}^n, \delta_{x-} u_{0,m}^n \rangle_{(0,y)} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \langle \delta_t \cdot u_{l,N_y}^n, \delta_{y+} u_{l,N_y}^n \rangle_{(x,N_y)} - \langle \delta_t \cdot u_{l,0}^n, \delta_{y-} u_{l,0}^n \rangle_{(x,0)} \right], \end{aligned}$$

where  $(l, y) = \{l\} \times \{0, \dots, N_y\}$  and  $(x, m) = \{0, \dots, N_x\} \times \{m\}$  are slices of domain  $d$ . The boundary term can be shown to vanish under Dirichlet boundary conditions in Eq. (6.14a). Neumann conditions will not be considered here.

**Step 3: Check units**

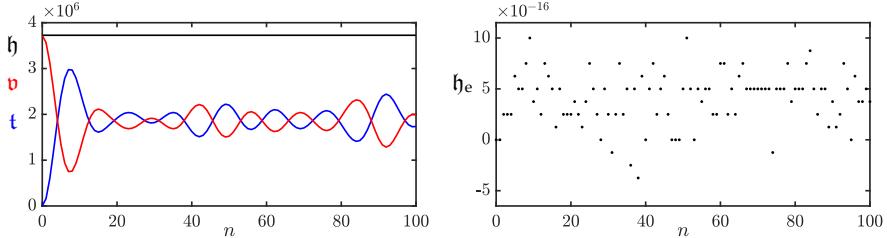
As the addition of the two inner products in the definition for  $\mathfrak{v}$  in Eq. (6.33) does not affect the units, only one term is used to check the units. Recalling that, as opposed to the 1D case, the symbol  $T$  is tension per unit length and thus in N/m, one can write the terms in Eq. (6.33) in their units:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{t} &= \frac{\rho H}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_{l,m}^n\|_d^2 \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-3} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot (\text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m})^2 \\ &\quad = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2} \\ \mathfrak{v} &= \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_{l,m}^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_{l,m}^n \rangle_{\underline{d}_x} \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot (\text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}) \cdot (\text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}) \\ &\quad = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

which have the correct units.

#### Step 4: Implementation

Figure 6.6 shows the energetic output of an implementation of the 2D wave equation and shows that the energy deviation is within machine precision.



**Fig. 6.6:** The kinetic (blue), potential (red), and total (black) energy of an implementation of the 2D wave equation are plotted in the left panel. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

#### 6.2.6 Modal analysis in 2D

Given that the state vector is stacked as described in Section 6.2.3 and the update equation is written in matrix form as in Eq. (6.22), performing a modal analysis on a 2D system does not differ from a 1D system and follows the same process presented in Section 3.5.

Inserting a test solution of  $u^n = z^n \phi$  into the matrix form of the 2D wave equation in Eq. (6.22) yields the following characteristic equation

$$(z - 2 + z^{-1}) \phi = c^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_\Delta \phi. \quad (6.34)$$

The  $p^{\text{th}}$  modal frequency can then be obtained by finding the roots of

$$z_p + \left( -2 - c^2 k^2 \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_\Delta) \right) + z_p^{-1} = 0, \quad (6.35)$$

which, using test solution  $z_p = e^{j\omega_p k}$  for (angular) frequency  $\omega_p$ , can be shown to be

$$f_p = \frac{1}{\pi k} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{ck}{2} \sqrt{-\text{eig}_p(\mathbf{D}_\Delta)} \right). \quad (6.36)$$

Notice the similarity to the equation for the modal frequencies of the 1D wave equation in Eq. (3.56). Again, the number of modes is equal to the number of moving grid points in the system.

See Figure 6.7 for the result of a modal analysis of the 2D wave equation. One can observe that the modes do not follow a linear pattern as opposed to those of the 1D wave equation shown in Figure 3.3. This confirms the inharmonic behaviour of the 2D wave equation discussed 6.2.3.

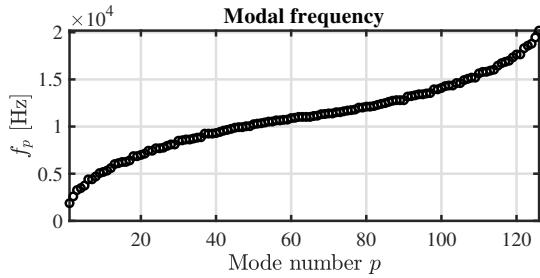


Fig. 6.7: Modal frequencies of the 2D wave equation with  $L_x = 1.5$  m,  $L_y = 1$  m and  $c \approx 3118$  m/s, such that  $\lambda = 1/\sqrt{2}$  according to Eq. (6.12).

### Modal shapes

Using the line of code in Appendix B.4 and the `reshape` function, the modal shapes of the system can also be obtained. Figure 6.8 shows the six lowest-frequency modes of the 2D wave equation with  $L_x = 1.5$  m and  $L_y = 1$  m. The mode number  $(x, y)$  corresponds to the modal number in the  $x$  and  $y$  direction.

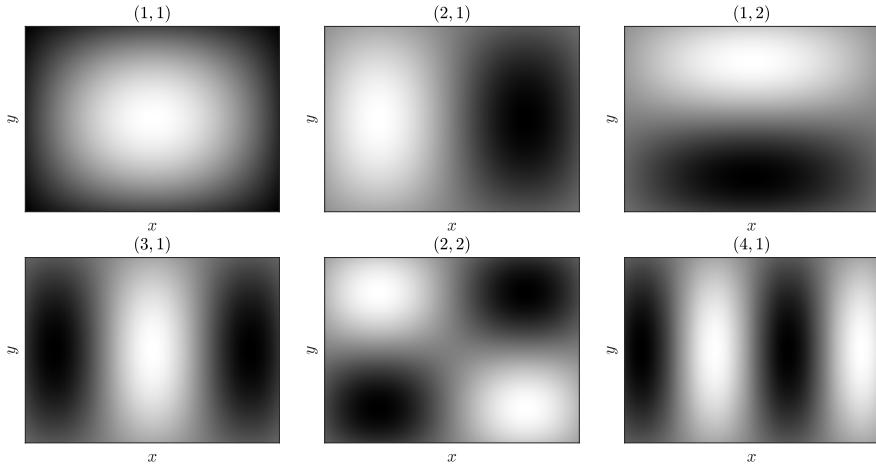


Fig. 6.8: The first six (lowest-frequency) modal shapes of 2D wave equation with  $L_x = 1.5$  m and  $L_y = 1$  m.

## 6.3 The thin plate

The thin plate, also known as the Kirchhoff model [68], differs from the 2D wave equation in that its restoring force is solely due to stiffness rather than tension. Like for the stiffness term in the stiff string (see Chapter 4), this causes frequency dispersion, and exhibits interesting timbres.

### 6.3. The thin plate

The plate model is quite versatile and can be used to model a plate reverberation [69] as well as simplified instrument bodies, as done in [A], [B], [D] and [E]. This section presents the thin plate PDE and FD scheme, after which it will be subjected to the various analysis techniques extended to 2D in the previous section.

#### 6.3.1 Continuous time

Consider a rectangular thin plate with side lengths  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  (both in m) and its transverse displacement described by  $u = u(x, y, t)$  (in m). The system is defined for  $(x, y) \in \mathcal{D}$  where 2D domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L_x] \times [0, L_y]$ . Using the biharmonic operator introduced in Eq. (6.2), the PDE for the thin plate can be defined as [68]

$$\rho H \partial_t^2 u = -D \Delta \Delta u, \quad (6.37)$$

where  $D = EH^3/12(1-\nu^2)$  is a stiffness coefficient (in  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ ) parametrised by Young's Modulus  $E$  (in Pa), thickness  $H$  (in m) and the dimensionless Poisson's ratio  $\nu$ . Although Eq. (6.37) does not hold for thick plates and only accounts for low-amplitude vibration (as it is linear), these properties can be assumed in musical instrument simulations, making this model sufficient in this work.

Adding losses to Eq. (6.37) yields

$$\rho H \partial_t^2 u = -D \Delta \Delta u - 2\sigma_0 \rho H \partial_t u + 2\sigma_1 \rho H \partial_t \Delta u \quad (6.38)$$

where, as in the case of the stiff string in Eq. (4.4),  $\sigma_0$  and  $\sigma_1$  are the frequency independent (in  $\text{s}^{-1}$ ) and frequency dependent damping coefficient (in  $\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ ) respectively.

check hyphens after 'frequency'

#### Boundary conditions

Similar to the stiff string, clamped and simply supported boundary conditions can be defined as

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} u = \partial_x u = 0, \quad \text{if } y = \{0, L_y\}, \quad \forall x \\ u = \partial_y u = 0, \quad \text{if } x = \{0, L_x\}, \quad \forall y \end{array} \right\} \quad (\text{Clamped}), \quad (6.39a)$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} u = \partial_x^2 u = 0, \quad \text{if } y = \{0, L_y\}, \quad \forall x \\ u = \partial_y^2 u = 0, \quad \text{if } x = \{0, L_x\}, \quad \forall y \end{array} \right\} \quad (\text{Simply supported}). \quad (6.39b)$$

Naturally, a free condition can be added too, but is much less trivial. As it will not be used in this work, it will not be given here, and the interested reader is instead referred to [2, Ch. 12].

### 6.3.2 Discrete time

Equation (6.38) can be discretised to the following FD scheme:

$$\rho H \delta_{tt} u_{l,m}^n = -D \delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n - 2\sigma_0 \rho H \delta_t u_{l,m}^n + 2\sigma_1 \rho H \delta_{t-} \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \quad (6.40)$$

where  $l \in \{0, \dots, N_x\}$  and  $m \in \{0, \dots, N_y\}$ . Like for the stiff string FD scheme in Eq. (4.7), the backwards difference operator is used for the frequency-dependent damping term to yield an explicit scheme. A more compact way to write this scheme is after a division by  $\rho H$  which yields

$$\delta_{tt} u_{l,m}^n = -\kappa^2 \delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n - 2\sigma_0 \delta_t u_{l,m}^n + 2\sigma_1 \delta_{t-} \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \quad (6.41)$$

with

$$\kappa = \sqrt{\frac{D}{\rho H}}. \quad (6.42)$$

Using the expansion of the discrete biharmonic operator in Eq. (6.6), Eq. (6.41) can be expanded and solved for  $u_{l,m}^{n+1}$  according to

$$\begin{aligned} u_{l,m}^{n+1} &= (2 - 20\mu^2 - 4S)u_{l,m}^n \\ &\quad + (8\mu^2 + S)(u_{l+1,m}^n + u_{l-1,m}^n + u_{l,m+1}^n + u_{l,m-1}^n) \\ &\quad - 2\mu^2(u_{l+1,m+1}^n + u_{l-1,m+1}^n + u_{l+1,m-1}^n + u_{l-1,m-1}^n) \\ &\quad - \mu^2(u_{l+2,m}^n + u_{l-2,m}^n + u_{l,m+2}^n + u_{l,m-2}^n), \\ &\quad + (\sigma_0 k - 1 + 4S)u_{l,m}^{n-1} \\ &\quad - S(u_{l+1,m}^{n-1} + u_{l-1,m}^{n-1} + u_{l,m+1}^{n-1} + u_{l,m-1}^{n-1}) \end{aligned} \quad (6.43)$$

where

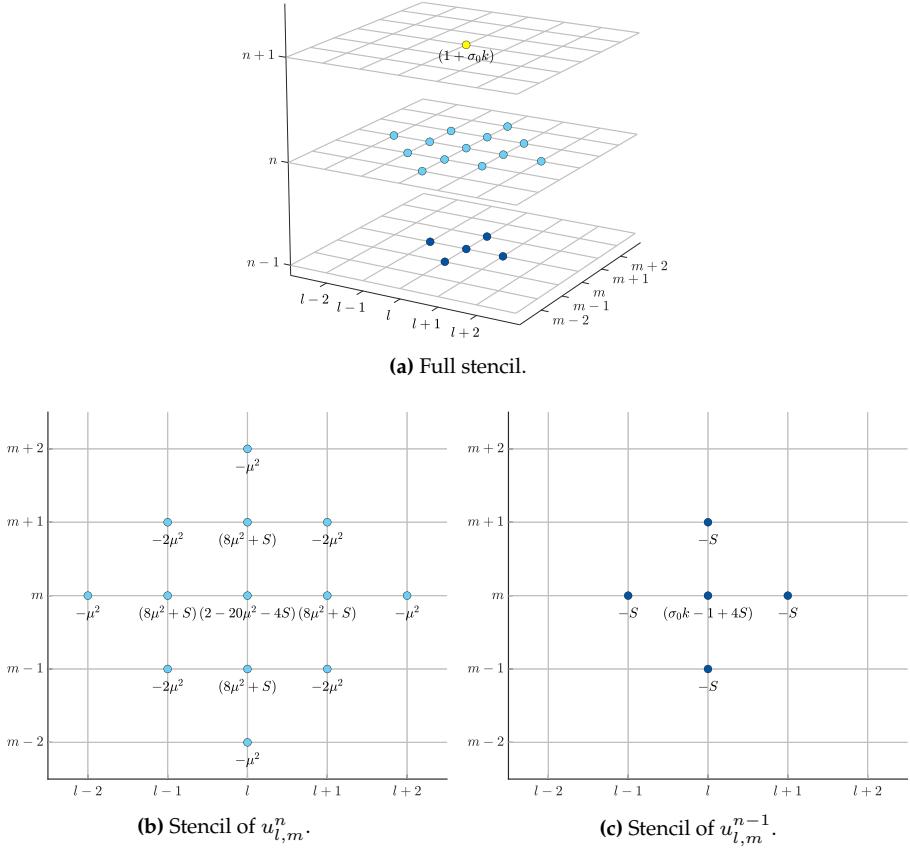
$$\mu = \frac{\kappa k}{h^2} \quad (6.44)$$

and  $S = 2\sigma_1 k / h^2$  for compactness. See Figure 6.9 for the stencil of this scheme. The stability condition of the scheme can be shown to be

$$h \geq 2 \sqrt{k \left( \sigma_1 + \sqrt{\kappa^2 + \sigma_1^2} \right)}, \quad (6.45)$$

and will be derived in Section 6.3.4.

### 6.3. The thin plate



**Fig. 6.9:** The stencil of the plate with coefficients corresponding to those in update equation (6.43). (a) A full overview of the stencil. (b) The current time-step  $n$  highlighted. (c) The previous time-step  $n - 1$  highlighted.

#### Discrete boundary conditions

The boundary conditions shown in Eq. (6.39) can be discretised to

$$\left. \begin{array}{ll} u_{l,m}^n = \delta_{x+} u_{l,m}^n = 0 & \text{if } m = 0 \\ u_{l,m}^n = \delta_{x-} u_{l,m}^n = 0 & \text{if } m = N_y \\ u_{l,m}^n = \delta_{y+} u_{l,m}^n = 0 & \text{if } l = 0 \\ u_{l,m}^n = \delta_{y-} u_{l,m}^n = 0 & \text{if } l = N_x \end{array} \right\} \quad \forall l \quad \text{(Clamped)}, \quad (6.46a)$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{ll} u_{l,m}^n = \delta_{xx} u_{l,m}^n = 0 & \text{if } m = \{0, N_y\} \\ u_{l,m}^n = \delta_{yy} u_{l,m}^n = 0 & \text{if } l = \{0, N_x\} \end{array} \right\} \quad \forall l \quad \text{(Simply supported)}. \quad (6.46b)$$

The clamped condition can be implemented by simply reducing the discrete range of operation to  $l = \{2, \dots, N_x - 2\}$  and  $m = \{2, \dots, N_y - 2\}$ . For the simply supported case, the range of operation reduces to  $l = \{1, \dots, N_x - 1\}$  and  $m = \{1, \dots, N_y - 1\}$ , and similar to the simply supported stiff string described in Section 4.2.1, the virtual grid points needed for this condition become

$$\begin{aligned} u_{-1,m}^n &= -u_{1,m}^n \quad \text{and} \quad u_{N_x+1,m}^n = -u_{N_x-1,m}^n \quad \forall m, \\ u_{l,-1}^n &= -u_{l,-1}^n \quad \text{and} \quad u_{l,N_y+1}^n = -u_{l,N_y-1}^n \quad \forall l. \end{aligned}$$

### 6.3.3 Matrix form and output

Similar to the implementation of the 2D wave equation in Section 6.2.3, one can use a stacked state vector. If simply supported boundary conditions are used, one can easily obtain a matrix form of the  $\delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta$  operator by multiplying two  $\mathbf{D}_\Delta$  matrices presented in Eq. (6.21) to get  $\mathbf{D}_{\Delta\Delta} = \mathbf{D}_\Delta \mathbf{D}_\Delta$ .

Using a stacked form of the state as described in Eq. (6.17) the scheme in Eq. (6.41) in matrix form is

$$A\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{C}\mathbf{u}^{n-1}, \quad (6.47)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (1 + \sigma_0 k), \quad \mathbf{B} = 2\mathbf{I} - \kappa^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{\Delta\Delta} + 2\sigma_1 k \mathbf{D}_\Delta, \\ \text{and} \quad \mathbf{C} &= -(1 - \sigma_0 k)\mathbf{I} - 2\sigma_1 k \mathbf{D}_\Delta, \end{aligned}$$

and the identity matrix  $\mathbf{I}$  is of the same size as  $\mathbf{D}_{\Delta\Delta}$  and  $\mathbf{D}_\Delta$ .

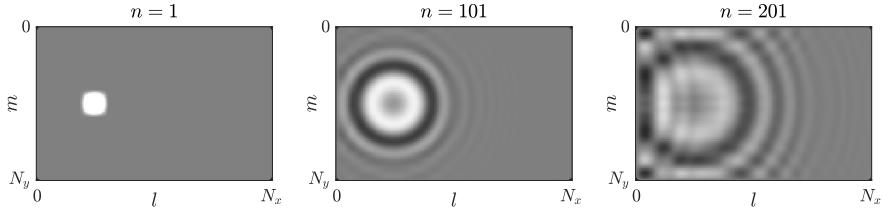
As a starting point for implementation, possible parameters are given in Table 6.1. Figure 6.10 shows the wave propagation of a thin plate excited with a 2D raised cosine at  $(x, y) = (0.25L_x, 0.5L_y)$  and uses these parameters.

Name	Symbol (unit)	Value
Side length $x$	$L_x$ (m)	1.5
Side length $y$	$L_y$ (m)	1
Material density	$\rho$ (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )	7850
Thickness	$H$ (m)	$5 \cdot 10^{-3}$
Young's modulus	$E$ (Pa)	$2 \cdot 10^{11}$
Poisson's ratio	$\nu$ (-)	0.3
Freq.-independent damping	$\sigma_0$ (s <sup>-1</sup> )	1
Freq.-dependent damping	$\sigma_1$ (m <sup>2</sup> /s)	0.005

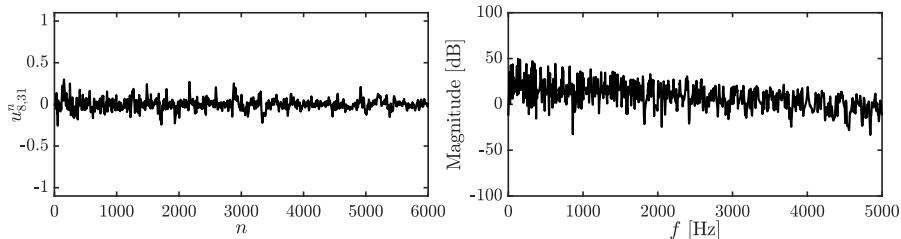
**Table 6.1:** Parameters for the thin plate and possible values to use as a starting point for the simulation.

### 6.3. The thin plate

When compared to Figure 6.4, dispersive effects – where higher-frequency components travel faster than lower-frequency ones – are apparent due to stiffness. Figure 6.11 shows the time domain and frequency domain output of the thin plate at  $(x, y) = (0.15L_x, 0.85L_y)$ . Compared to the output of the 2D wave equation in Figure 6.5, there are several interesting differences. The amplitude is much lower, waves are closer together and the first wave arrives much earlier, all due to dispersive effects.



**Fig. 6.10:** Wave propagation of a thin plate with simply supported boundary conditions and parameters as shown in Table 6.1. The system is excited with a 2D raised cosine at  $(x, y) = (0.25L_x, 0.5L_y)$  and dispersive effects are apparent.



**Fig. 6.11:** The output of the thin plate at  $(x, y) = (0.15, 0.85)$  corresponding to Figure 6.10.

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: check  
figure alignment

#### 6.3.4 Frequency domain analysis

This section follows the process presented in Section 3.3 with the extensions to 2D shown in 6.2.4.

Using Eqs. (6.26) and (6.27) one can obtain a frequency domain representation of the FD scheme in Eq. (6.41) and obtain the following characteristic equation

$$(1 + \sigma_0 k)z + \left( 16\mu^2(p_x + p_y)^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}(p_x + p_y) - 2 \right) \\ + \left( 1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}(p_x + p_y) \right) z^{-1} = 0. \quad (6.48)$$

This can, similar to the damped stiff string in Section 4.3, be solved to

$$4\mu^2(p_x + p_y)^2 + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2}(p_x + p_y) \leq 1.$$

Recalling the definitions  $p_x$  and  $p_y$  in Eq. (6.24), and given the fact that these are bounded by 1, the following can be written

$$\begin{aligned} 4\mu^2(1+1)^2 + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2}(1+1) &\leq 1 \\ 16\mu^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} &\leq 1. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, recalling the definition for  $\kappa$  in Eq. (6.42) solving for  $h$  yields

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &\geq \frac{16\kappa^2 k^2}{h^4} + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}, \\ h^4 - 8\sigma_1 k h^2 - 16\kappa^2 k^2 &\geq 0, \\ h &\geq \sqrt{\frac{8\sigma_1 k + \sqrt{(8\sigma_1 k)^2 + 64\kappa^2 k^2}}{2}}, \\ h &\geq \sqrt{\frac{8\sigma_1 k + 8\sqrt{\sigma_1^2 k^2 + \kappa^2 k^2}}{2}}, \\ h &\geq 2\sqrt{k \left( \sigma_1 + \sqrt{\sigma_1^2 + \kappa^2} \right)}, \end{aligned} \tag{6.49}$$

which is the stability condition given in Eq. (6.45).

### 6.3.5 Energy analysis

Using the steps described in Section 3.4 with the extensions to 2D presented in Section 6.2.5, one can obtain the total energy of the FD scheme in Eq. (6.41).

#### Step 1: Obtain $\delta_{t+\hbar}$

To obtain the rate of change of the total energy, one can take an inner product of the scheme in Eq. (6.41) with  $(\delta_t u_{l,m}^n)$  over discrete (2D) domain  $d = \{0, \dots, N_x\} \times \{0, \dots, N_y\}$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t+\hbar} \mathfrak{h} &= \rho H \langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{tt} u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d + D \langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d \\ &\quad + 2\sigma_0 \rho H \langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_t u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d - 2\sigma_1 \rho H \langle \delta_t u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{t-} \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{6.50}$$

### 6.3. The thin plate

#### Step 2: Identify energy types and isolate $\delta_{t+}$

Due to the damping present in the system and because the system is distributed in space, the energy balance will be of the following form

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{b} - \mathfrak{q},$$

with boundary term  $\mathfrak{b}$  and damping term

$$\mathfrak{q} = 2\sigma_0\rho H \|\delta_t.u_{l,m}^n\|_d^2 - 2\sigma_1\rho H \langle \delta_t.u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{t-}\delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d. \quad (6.51)$$

Expanding the stiffness term in Eq. (6.50) to

$$\begin{aligned} & D \langle \delta_t.u_{l,m}^n, (\delta_{xx} + \delta_{yy})\delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d \\ \iff & D \left( \langle \delta_t.u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{xx}\delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d + \langle \delta_t.u_{l,m}^n, \delta_{yy}\delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_d \right), \end{aligned}$$

one can perform summation by parts twice, using Eq. (3.16b) for both terms to get

$$D \left( \langle \delta_t.\delta_{xx}u_{l,m}^n, \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_{\underline{\underline{d}_x}} + \langle \delta_t.\delta_{yy}u_{l,m}^n, \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_{\underline{\underline{d}_y}} \right) + \mathfrak{b}.$$

The definitions for the reduced domains can be found in Eqs. (6.32). Finally, as the boundaries are always 0 due to the boundary conditions in Eq. (6.46),  $\underline{\underline{d}_x}$  and  $\underline{\underline{d}_y}$  can be further reduced to  $\underline{\underline{d}}$  and the terms can be combined as [check with stefan](#)

$$D \langle \delta_t.\delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n, \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_{\underline{\underline{d}}} + \mathfrak{b},$$

and using identities (3.17a) and (3.17b) a definition for the total energy can be found:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{h} &= \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v}, \quad \text{with} \quad \mathfrak{t} = \frac{\rho H}{2} \|\delta_{t-}u_{l,m}^n\|_d^2 \quad \text{and} \\ \mathfrak{v} &= \frac{D}{2} \langle \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n, e_{t-}\delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_{\underline{\underline{d}}}. \end{aligned} \quad (6.52)$$

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: check  
for SWcom-  
ments

The definition of the boundary term  $\mathfrak{b}$  will not be given here, but can be shown to vanish under the boundary conditions given in Eq. (6.46) [2].

#### Step 3: Check units

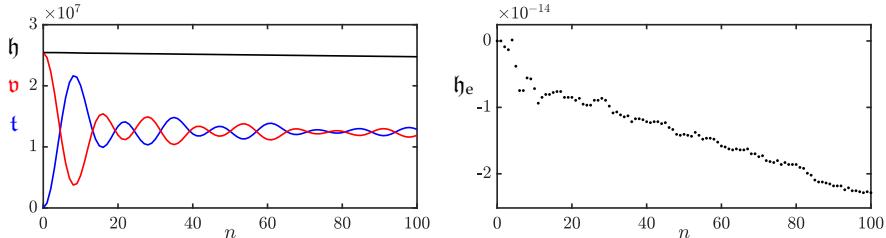
As  $\mathfrak{t}$  is identical to its definition in Eq. (6.33), only the units for  $\mathfrak{v}$  will be checked here. Recalling that  $D = EH^3/12(1 - \nu^2)$ , which in units is  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ , yields

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{v} &= \frac{D}{2} \langle \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n, e_{t-}\delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n \rangle_{\underline{\underline{d}}} \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot (\text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{m}) \cdot (\text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{m}) \\ &= \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

and shows that  $\mathfrak{v}$  indeed has the correct units.

### Step 4: Implementation

Figure 6.12 shows the energetic output of an implementation of the thin plate and shows that the energy is conserved.

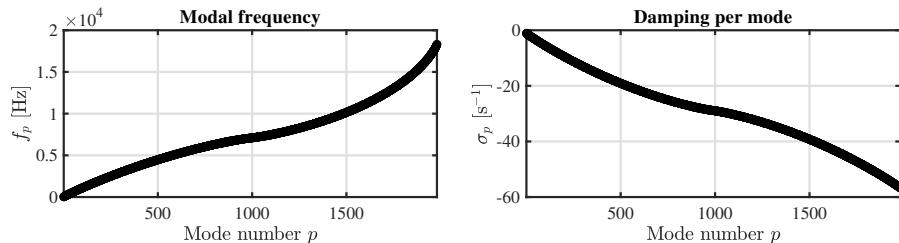


**Fig. 6.12:** The kinetic (blue), potential (red), and total (black) energy of an implementation of the thin plate are plotted in the left panel. Notice that the damping present in the system causes  $\mathfrak{h}$  to decrease. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.38)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

### 6.3.6 Modal analysis

Using the matrix form in Eq. (6.47), a modal analysis of the system can be performed using a one-step form described in Section 3.5.1.

Figure 6.13 shows the results of the analysis with parameter values as listed in Table 6.1. Although the modal frequencies follow a similar pattern to those of the 2D wave equation in Figure 6.8, the pattern is slightly more exponential like the stiff string in Figure 4.6.[not really sure what to say here honestly](#)



**Fig. 6.13:** The result of a modal analysis of the thin plate using the parameters in Table 6.1. Notice that the damping is plotted against modal frequency rather than mode number.

## 6.4 The stiff membrane

The term *stiff membrane* first appeared in [23] and is essentially a 2D version of the stiff string. It can be used to model membranes with dispersive effects or

## 6.4. The stiff membrane

provide tension control for thin plates. In this work, the stiff membrane has only been used in paper [F] to model a drum membrane.

Similar to previous sections, this section will provide the continuous-time and discrete-time equations of the model. Only a frequency domain analysis will be given, as energy and modal analyses are too similar to those previously presented.

### 6.4.1 Continuous time

The PDE for a stiff membrane can be obtained as a combination of the 2D wave equation in Eq. (6.7) and the thin plate in Eq. (6.37). Adding losses as in Eq. (6.38) yields the following PDE

$$\rho H \partial_t^2 u = T \Delta u - D \Delta \Delta u - 2\sigma_0 \rho H \partial_t u + 2\sigma_1 \rho H \partial_t \Delta u, \quad (6.53)$$

where the parameters are identical to those in Eqs. (6.7) and (6.38).

### 6.4.2 Discrete time

Using familiar operators, Eq. (6.53) can be discretised to

$$\rho H \delta_{tt} u_{l,m}^n = T \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n - D \delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n - 2\sigma_0 \rho H \delta_{t+} u_{l,m}^n + 2\sigma_1 \rho H \delta_{t-} \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n, \quad (6.54)$$

or, using a more compact form after division by  $\rho H$ , to

$$\delta_{tt} u_{l,m}^n = c^2 \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n - \kappa^2 \delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n - 2\sigma_0 \delta_{t+} u_{l,m}^n + 2\sigma_1 \delta_{t-} \delta_\Delta u_{l,m}^n, \quad (6.55)$$

where  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho H}$  and  $\kappa = \sqrt{D/\rho H}$ .

The update equation can then be obtained using the expansions of the Laplacian and biharmonic operators in Eqs. (6.4) and (6.6) respectively, to get

$$\begin{aligned} u_{l,m}^{n+1} &= (2 - 4\lambda^2 - 20\mu^2 - 4S)u_{l,m}^n \\ &\quad + (\lambda^2 + 8\mu^2 + S)(u_{l+1,m}^n + u_{l-1,m}^n + u_{l,m+1}^n + u_{l,m-1}^n) \\ &\quad - 2\mu^2(u_{l+1,m+1}^n + u_{l-1,m+1}^n + u_{l+1,m-1}^n + u_{l-1,m-1}^n) \\ &\quad - \mu^2(u_{l+2,m}^n + u_{l-2,m}^n + u_{l,m+2}^n + u_{l,m-2}^n), \\ &\quad + (\sigma_0 k - 1 + 4S)u_{l,m}^{n-1} \\ &\quad - S(u_{l+1,m}^{n-1} + u_{l-1,m}^{n-1} + u_{l,m+1}^{n-1} + u_{l,m-1}^{n-1}) \end{aligned} \quad (6.56)$$

where

$$\lambda = \frac{ck}{h} \quad \text{and} \quad \mu = \frac{\kappa k}{h^2} \quad (6.57)$$

and again,  $S = 2\sigma_1 k/h^2$  for compactness. The stability condition for this scheme will be given in Section 6.4.4.

### 6.4.3 Implementation

Writing Eq. (6.55) in matrix form, yields

$$A\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{C}\mathbf{u}^{n-1}, \quad (6.58)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (1 + \sigma_0 k), \quad \mathbf{B} = 2\mathbf{I} + c^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_\Delta - \kappa^2 k^2 \mathbf{D}_{\Delta\Delta} + 2\sigma_1 k \mathbf{D}_\Delta, \\ \text{and } \mathbf{C} &= -(1 - \sigma_0 k)\mathbf{I} - 2\sigma_1 k \mathbf{D}_\Delta. \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the only difference with Eq. (6.47) is the addition of the wave speed term in the definition of the  $\mathbf{B}$  matrix.

### 6.4.4 Frequency domain analysis

Following familiar techniques from Sections 3.5.1 and 6.2.4, the characteristic equation of the FD scheme in Eq. (6.55) can be obtained:

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \sigma_0 k)z + \left(4\lambda^2(p_x + p_y) + 16\mu^2(p_x + p_y)^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}(p_x + p_y) - 2\right) \\ + \left(1 - \sigma_0 k - \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2}(p_x + p_y)\right)z^{-1} = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (6.59)$$

Similar to the stiff string in Section 4.3 and the thin plate in Section 6.3.4, this can be solved to

$$\lambda^2(p_x + p_y) + 4\mu^2(p_x + p_y)^2 + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2}(p_x + p_y) \leq 1,$$

and recalling that  $p_x$  and  $p_y$  are bounded by 1, yields

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda^2(1 + 1) + 4\mu^2(1 + 1)^2 + \frac{4\sigma_1 k}{h^2}(1 + 1) \leq 1, \\ 2\lambda^2 + 16\mu^2 + \frac{8\sigma_1 k}{h^2} \leq 1. \end{aligned}$$

Recalling the definitions for  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  from 6.57, one can solve for  $h$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2c^2k^2}{h^2} + \frac{16\kappa^2k^2}{h^4} + \frac{8\sigma_1k}{h^2} &\leq 1, \\ h^4 - (2c^2k^2 + 8\sigma_1k)h^2 - 16\kappa^2k^2 &\geq 0, \\ h &\geq \sqrt{\frac{2c^2k^2 + 8\sigma_1k + \sqrt{(2c^2k^2 + 8\sigma_1k)^2 + 64\kappa^2k^2}}{2}}, \\ h &\geq \sqrt{c^2k^2 + 4\sigma_1k + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4(c^2k^2 + 4\sigma_1k)^2 + 64\kappa^2k^2}}, \\ h &\geq \sqrt{c^2k^2 + 4\sigma_1k + \sqrt{(c^2k^2 + 4\sigma_1k)^2 + 16\kappa^2k^2}}, \end{aligned} \quad (6.60)$$

and can be used as the stability condition for the stiff membrane.<sup>4</sup>

## 6.5 Radial coordinates

This chapter presented various models using a Cartesian coordinate system. Circular or elliptical systems, such as membranes or gongs, could be modelled using a radial coordinate system [2, Ch. 10]. However, using explicit schemes causes these systems to exhibit high amounts of numerical dispersion and reduction of bandwidth [2, Ch. 11]. For better behaviour, one could resort to an implicit scheme, but this comes with the drawbacks mentioned in Section 4.6. A better alternative is to retain the cartesian coordinate system and set quasi-circular boundary conditions according to a staircase approximation as done in [S4] (see fx. [47, 59]).

---

<sup>4</sup>This stability condition was wrong in paper [F]. It has been corrected here and included in Appendix A.

## Chapter 6. 2D Systems

# **Part III**

# **Exciters**



# Exciters

As mentioned in Chapter 1, nearly all musical instruments can be subdivided into an exciter and a resonator component. Several resonators have been introduced in Part II, and different mechanisms to excite these are introduced here. First, various examples of physically inspired excitations will be presented in Chapter 7, some of which made a brief appearance in Parts I and II. Chapter 8 introduces the bow as an excitation mechanism and presents the contribution made in paper [C]: the elasto-plastic friction model applied to a FDTD-based stiff strings. Finally, Chapter 9 presents the lip reed as a way to excite brass instruments.



# Chapter 7

# Physically-Inspired Excitations

This short chapter introduces several simple ways to excite the different resonators presented in Part II. First, various ways to excite resonators using initial conditions will be given, after which examples of time-varying excitations will be given, such that the systems can also be excited later during the simulation.

## 7.1 Initial conditions

The easiest way to excite a system is to set its initial conditions to non-zero values. This has been done several times before using a raised cosine (see e.g. Section 2.4.3). To give the system an initial displacement, not an initial velocity, one initialises both  $u_l^0$  and  $u_l^1$  with the same values. In the following, the 1D wave equation will be used as an example (Eq. (2.38)):

$$\partial_t^2 u = c^2 \partial_x^2 u \quad (7.1)$$

where  $u = u(x, t)$  is the state of the system defined for  $t \geq 0$  and  $x \in D$  with domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$  and length  $L$  (in m). Furthermore,  $c = 735$  m/s. Following 2.2.1, the state variable can be discretised to  $u_l^n$  where  $n \in \mathbb{N}^0$  and  $l \in d$  with discrete domain  $d = \{0, \dots, N\}$  and number of grid points  $N + 1$ . The FD scheme is (Eq. (2.42))

$$\delta_{tt} u_l^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} u_l^n. \quad (7.2)$$

### 7.1.1 Impulse

The simplest way to excite a system is to set the value of one grid point to non-zero, which is referred to as an *impulse* excitation. Figure 7.1 shows an

implementation of the 1D wave equation where  $u_l^0 = u_l^1 = 1$  at  $l = \lfloor 0.5N \rfloor$ . One can observe that the variations between two neighbouring grid points are extremely high. If the CFL condition in Eq. (2.46) is satisfied with equality, the system will exhibit frequencies around the Nyquist frequency, which is generally unwanted.

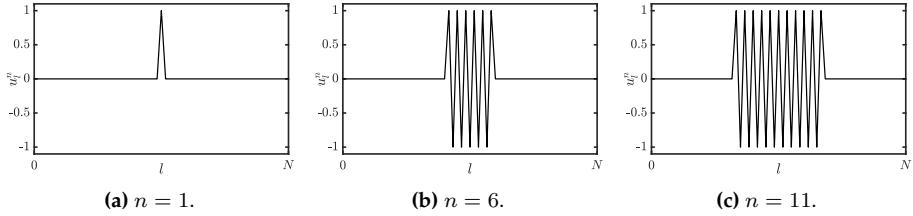


Fig. 7.1: The 1D wave equation initialised with an impulse at  $l = \lfloor 0.5N \rfloor$ .

### 7.1.2 Raised cosine

To avoid the high-frequency behaviour caused by the impulse is to use a spatially smooth excitation. To achieve this, a *raised cosine* is most often used due to this property and is extensively used throughout the literature [2]. Initialising the displacement of a distributed system with a raised cosine can be interpreted as a pluck. A different pluck excitation is presented in Section 7.1.3.

A raised cosine is parametrised by its amplitude  $e_{\text{amp}}$ , its center location  $x_0$  and its width  $x_w$ . Applied to a distributed 1D system defined over domain  $x \in \mathcal{D}$ , the (continuous-time) excitation function containing a raised cosine is defined as

$$e_{\text{rc}}(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{e_{\text{amp}}}{2} \left( 1 - \cos \left( \frac{2\pi(x-x_s)}{x_w} \right) \right), & \text{if } x_s \leq x \leq x_e, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (7.3)$$

where

$$x_s = x_0 - \frac{x_w}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad x_e = x_0 + \frac{x_w}{2} \quad (7.4)$$

are the start and end locations of the excitation. Furthermore,  $x_s, x_e \in \mathcal{D}$ , which puts a constraint on the width and location of the excitation.

In discrete time, the center location is defined as  $l_0 = \lfloor x_0/h \rfloor$ , where  $\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$  denotes the flooring operation,  $h$  is the grid spacing. The discrete start and end locations of the raised cosine are

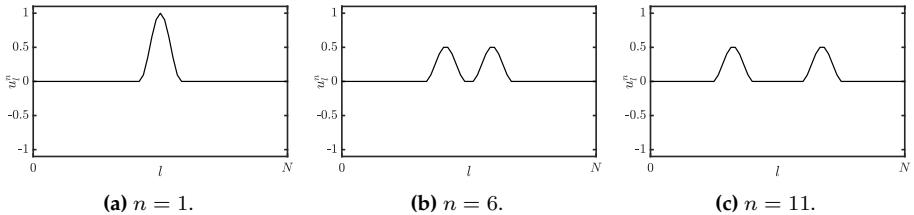
$$l_s = l_0 - \lfloor w/2 \rfloor \quad \text{and} \quad l_e = l_0 + \lfloor w/2 \rfloor, \quad (7.5)$$

## 7.1. Initial conditions

with  $l_s, l_e \in d$  and, finally,  $w = \lfloor x_w/h \rfloor$ .<sup>1</sup> Equation (7.3) can then be discretised as

$$E_{l,rc} = \begin{cases} \frac{e_{amp}}{2} \left( 1 - \cos \left( \frac{2\pi(l-l_s)}{w} \right) \right), & \text{if } l_s \leq l \leq l_e, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (7.6)$$

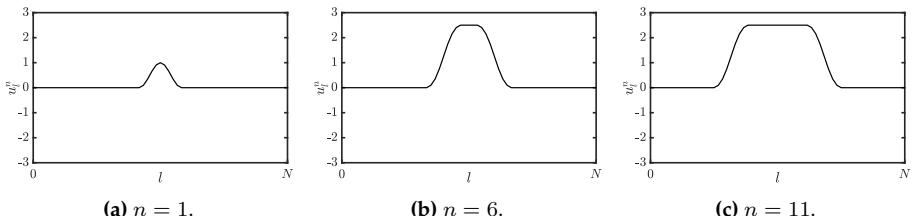
Figure 7.2 shows the 1D wave equation initialised with a raised cosine with  $e_{amp} = 1$ ,  $l_0 = \lfloor 0.5N \rfloor$  and  $w = \lfloor 0.1N \rfloor$ . Notice that the behaviour is much more smooth than the impulse shown in Figure 7.1.



**Fig. 7.2:** The 1D wave equation initialised with a raised cosine at the center of the system.

### Strike

If one initialises the system with an initial velocity, i.e., only setting a displacement at  $n = 1$ , and leaving  $u_l^0 = 0$  for  $l \in d$ , one can use the raised cosine to model a strike. Figure 7.3 shows a strike using the same values as for the pluck in Figure 2.52 at  $n = 1$ , but leaving  $u_l^0 = 0$ . One can observe that, for the pluck, the displacement of the system stays high rather than going back to 0 as in the case of the pluck. Furthermore, the amplitude of the displacement is higher than for the pluck (notice the scaling of the y-axis).



**Fig. 7.3:** The 1D wave equation initialised with a strike at the center of the system. Notice the scaling of the y-axis compared to the other figures.

---

<sup>1</sup>Notice that the width is given in ‘grid spacings’ and will thus affect  $w + 1$  grid points. This is also why the range in (7.6) includes both end points.

### 7.1.3 Triangular pluck

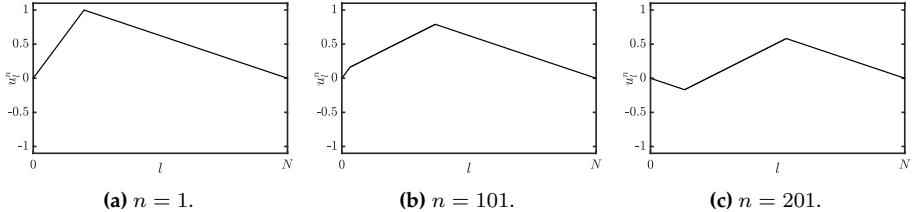
Another way to initialise the string, which is closer to reality, is to use a triangular shape to model a pluck [23, 2]. Using  $e_{\text{amp}}$  as the maximum displacement – at the corner of the triangle – and  $x_0 \in \mathcal{D}$  as the plucking position, the triangular excitation can be defined as

$$e_{\text{tri}}(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{e_{\text{amp}}}{x_0} x, & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq x_0, \\ \frac{e_{\text{amp}}}{x_0 - L}(x - L), & \text{if } x_0 < x \leq L. \end{cases} \quad (7.7)$$

In discrete time, Eq. (7.7) becomes

$$E_{l,\text{tri}} = \begin{cases} \frac{e_{\text{amp}}}{l_0} l, & \text{if } 0 \leq l \leq l_0, \\ \frac{e_{\text{amp}}}{l_0 - N}(l - N), & \text{if } l_0 < l \leq N. \end{cases} \quad (7.8)$$

Due to the spatial discontinuity at the corner, some high-frequency oscillations (similar to the impulse) might emerge. Figure 7.4 shows an implementation of the 1D wave equation initialised with a triangular pluck excitation. The sample rate is 10x the usual one to prevent these high-frequency oscillations from appearing in the plot (though they still exist to some degree).



**Fig. 7.4:** The 1D wave equation initialised with a triangular pluck with  $l_0 = \lfloor 0.2N \rfloor$ . Note that sample rate has been set to  $f_s = 441000$  Hz to show more ideal triangular motion.

### 7.1.4 2D raised cosine

Introducing an extra coordinate  $y$ , one can extend the raised cosine presented in Section 7.1.2 to 2D according to

$$e_{\text{rc}}(x, y) = \begin{cases} \frac{e_{\text{amp}}}{2} \left( 1 - \cos \left( \frac{2\pi(x - x_s)}{r_w} \right) \right) \left( 1 - \cos \left( \frac{2\pi(y - y_s)}{r_w} \right) \right), & \text{if } x_s \leq x \leq x_e, \\ 0, & \text{and } y_s \leq y \leq y_e, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (7.9)$$

## 7.1. Initial conditions

where  $r_w$  is the excitation radius. Similar to Eq. (7.4), the start and end locations of the raised cosine in the  $x$  and  $y$  direction can be calculated as

$$x_s = x_0 - \frac{r_w}{2}, \quad x_e = x_0 + \frac{r_w}{2}, \quad y_s = y_0 - \frac{r_w}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad y_e = y_0 + \frac{r_w}{2},$$

where  $(x_0, y_0)$  is the center coordinate and  $x_s, x_e, y_s, y_e \in \mathcal{D}$  for a 2D domain  $\mathcal{D}$ .

In discrete time, Eq. (7.9) becomes

$$E_{(l,m),\text{rc}} = \begin{cases} \frac{e_{\text{amp}}}{2} \left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{2\pi(l-l_s)}{r}\right)\right) \left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{2\pi(m-m_s)}{r}\right)\right), & \text{if } l_s \leq l \leq l_e, \text{ and} \\ & m_s \leq m \leq m_e, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (7.10)$$

where  $r = \lfloor r_w/h \rfloor$  is the discrete excitation radius (in 'grid spacings'). Further- [look at this](#) more, similar to Eq. (7.5),

$$l_s = l_0 - \lfloor r/2 \rfloor, \quad l_e = l_0 + \lfloor r/2 \rfloor, \quad m_s = m_0 - \lfloor r/2 \rfloor, \quad \text{and} \quad m_e = m_0 + \lfloor r/2 \rfloor \quad (7.11)$$

for discrete center coordinate  $(l_0, m_0)$  and  $l_s, l_e, m_s, m_e \in d$  for a discrete 2D domain  $d$ . As in the 1D case, this excitation can be used to model a simple 'pluck' and strike for a 2D system.

A simple way to implement the 2D raised cosine in MATLAB using the hann function is shown in Algorithm 7.1.

```

1 % Assuming Dirichlet boundary conditions and having initialised the
2 % following
3 % - center locations for the x and y-directions: 10 and m0
4 % - radius of the excitation r (in grid points)
5
6 ls = 10 - floor(r/2); % start location x-direction
7 le = 10 + floor(r/2); % end location x-direction
8 ms = m0 - floor(r/2); % start location y-direction
9 me = m0 + floor(r/2); % end location y-direction
10
11 % Create excitation matrix
12 e = zeros(Ny-1, Nx-1);
13
14 % Add one to hann function as the width is given in 'grid spacings'
15 % and affects r+1 grid points
16 e(ms:me, ls:le) = hann(r+1) * hann(r+1)';
17
18 % Applying excitation to stacked matrix form as in Section 6.2.3
19 u = reshape(e, (Nx-1) * (Ny-1), 1);

```

**Algorithm 7.1:** A MATLAB implementation of a 2D raised cosine.

## 7.2 Time-varying excitations

Although various types of excitation can already be modelled using the initial conditions presented in the previous section, they are temporally rigid. In other words, the time of excitation is fixed to be at the start of the simulation. In order to excite the system while the simulation is running, one can create excitations that – on top of being spatially distributed – have temporal profile as well.

For the following, consider the ideal string of length  $L$  (in m), its transverse displacement described by  $u = u(x, t)$  (in m). The system is defined for  $t \geq 0$  and  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  with domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$ . The PDE of the ideal string with a time varying external force  $f(t)$  (in N) is defined as (Eq. (2.38))

$$\rho A \partial_t^2 u = T \partial_x^2 u + e(x) f(t) \quad (7.12)$$

where  $e(x)$  is a spatial distribution function such as those presented in Section 7.1 (in  $\text{m}^{-1}$ ).

### 7.2.1 Raised cosine

To yield a smooth excitation over time, one can, similar to the spatially distributed raised cosine in Eq. 7.1.2, define a temporally distributed raised cosine. Using the time of excitation  $t_0 \geq 0$  and excitation duration  $t_d > 0$  (both in s) the temporal raised cosine can be used as a force function, as

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} \frac{f_{\text{amp}}}{2} \left( 1 - \cos \left( \frac{q\pi(t-t_0)}{t_d} \right) \right), & t_s \leq t \leq t_0 + t_d \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (7.13)$$

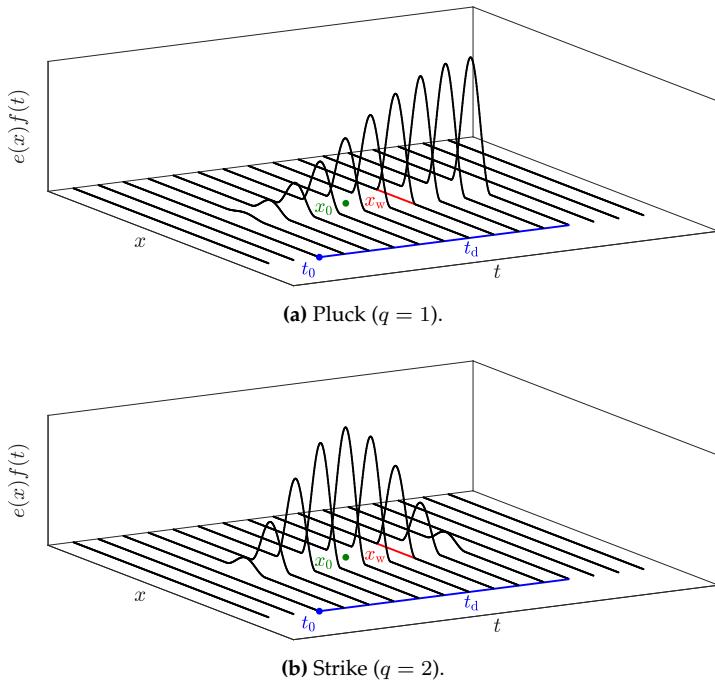
As done in [70],  $q$  that alters the excitation to be a pluck when  $q = 1$  and a strike when  $q = 2$ . Finally,  $f_{\text{amp}}$  is the maximum force (in N).

As done in papers [A] and [B], the force function can be used in conjunction with the distribution functions shown in Section 7.1. When used to scale a spatially distributed raised cosine as in Eq. (7.3), one can model a pluck or a strike, by setting  $q = 1$  or  $q = 2$  respectively. These alternatives are visualised in Figure 7.5. Note, that if one would like  $f_{\text{amp}}$  to be the maximum force, one must set  $e_{\text{amp}} = 1$  in Eq. (7.3).

In discrete time, the force function in Eq. (7.13) becomes

$$f^n = \begin{cases} \frac{f_{\text{amp}}}{2} \left( 1 - \cos \left( \frac{q\pi(n-n_0)}{n_d} \right) \right), & n_0 \leq n \leq n_0 + n_d, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (7.14)$$

where  $n_d = \lfloor t_d/k \rfloor$  is the duration of the excitation in samples.



**Fig. 7.5:** The time-varying raised cosine showing a (a) pluck and a (b) strike. The location of excitation  $x_0$  is shown in green, the width  $x_w$  in red and the excitation start  $t_0$  and duration  $t_d$  in blue.

## 7.2.2 Pulse train

As already briefly introduced in Section 5.1.3, one can create a pulse train to excite an acoustic tube. This is inspired by [2] where the signal represents the opening and closing of the glottis. As the characteristics of the lip reed are similar to the vocal folds [71], the pulse train has been used as a test signal here (also see Section 9.3.2). A more complete model of the lip reed can be found in Chapter 9.

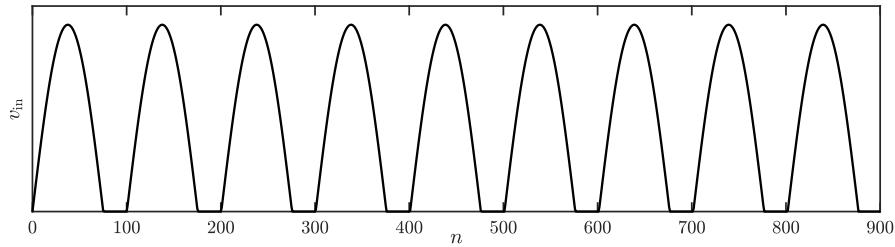
The pulse train can be created using a clipped sinusoid which can be used as the input velocity to an acoustic tube. Algorithm 7.2 shows an example of how to generate a pulse train. The frequency as well as the duty cycle (how much of the signal is non-zero) can be set. Figure 7.6 shows the output of the algorithm.

```

1 %% Pulse train generator
2
3 fs = 44100; % Sample rate [Hz]
4 lengthSound = fs; % Length of the sound [samples]
5 f = 440; % Pulse train frequency
6 dutyC = 0.75; % Duty cycle [0-1]
7 amp = 1; % Amplitude
8
9 %% Create input signal
10 for n = 0:lengthSound
11     if mod(n, fs / f) <= fs / f * dutyC
12         vIn(n+1) = amp * sin(f * pi / dutyC * mod(n, fs / f) / fs);
13     else
14         vIn(n+1) = 0;
15     end
16 end

```

**Algorithm 7.2:** MATLAB code to generate a pulse train

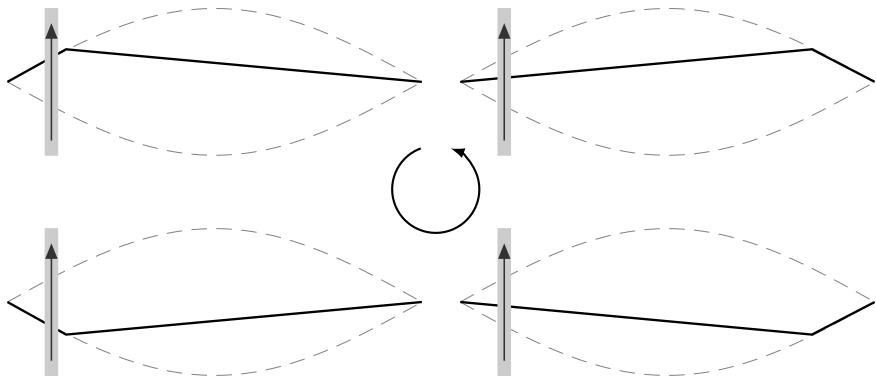


**Fig. 7.6:** The pulse train generated using Algorithm 7.2 ( $f = 440$  Hz, duty cycle = 75%).

# Chapter 8

## The Bow

The bow is an extremely interesting excitation mechanism from a simulation perspective. A bow excites a string with a force due to friction, which introduces a nonlinear element into the system. The string ‘sticks’ to the bow and ‘slips’ again when the restoring force of the string is too great and overcomes the friction force. This ‘stick-slip’ behaviour, first coined by Bowden and Leben in 1939 [72] causes the string to move in a characteristic triangular motion where the corner of the triangle moves back and forth along the string (see Figure 8.1). Herman Helmholtz was the first to discover this behaviour in the 19<sup>th</sup> century, and later got named *Helmholtz motion* in his honour [73].<sup>1</sup>



**Fig. 8.1:** Helmholtz motion. If the bow moves up on the left side of the string, the ‘Helmholtz corner’ travels anti-clockwise.

---

<sup>1</sup>Also see <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6JeyiM0YNo4>

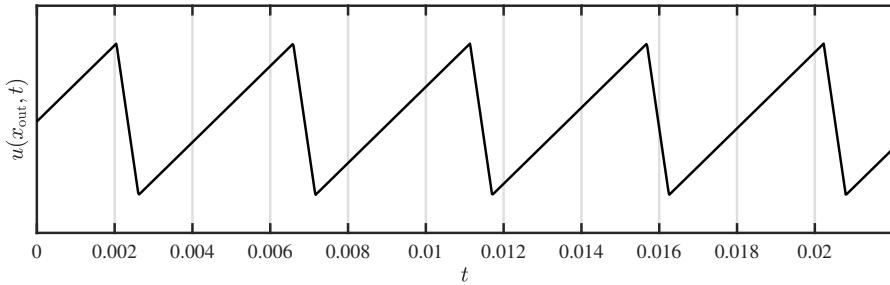


Fig. 8.2: An example of the (ideal) Helmholtz motion of a location  $x_{\text{out}}$  along a bowed string.

The Helmholtz motion gives bowed string instruments, such as the violin and cello, their characteristic sound. An ideal case is shown in Figure 8.2, where, for a string described by  $u(x, t)$ , the location of a point  $x_{\text{out}}$  along the string follows a sawtooth-like motion due to the ‘stick-slip’ behaviour.

The rest of this chapter is structured as follows: first, a brief history of bowed-string simulations is presented. Then, an introduction to interpolation and spreading operators, as well as an introduction to the Newton-Raphson method will be given, both of which are necessary to work with bow-string interaction. Finally, a static and a dynamic friction model are presented. The latter, the elasto-plastic friction model, was applied to a FD scheme of the stiff string during this project and is one of the contributions, published in paper [C].

## 8.1 Brief history of bowed-string simulation

The first nonlinear systems in the context of musical instrument simulations, including the bowed string, were presented by McIntyre, et al. in 1983 [15]. The first real-time implementation of the bowed string was due to Smith in 1986 and used digital waveguides for the string and a look-up table for the friction model [74]. Simultaneously, Florens et al. presented a real-time implementation of the bowed string, but instead, the string was modelled using mass-spring systems and the friction model used a static friction model [75] (see Section 8.4). One of the most complex friction models applied in a musical context to-date is the elasto-plastic friction model due to Dupont [76], which Serafin et al. [77, 78] applied to a digital waveguide implementation of the string.

The first appearance of FDTD methods in bowed string simulations was in a publication by Pitteroff and Woodhouse in [79]. Later, Maestre et al. in [30] used FDTD methods to implement a thermal friction model proposed by Woodhouse in [80]. In both cases, the string was implemented using digital waveguides. Desvages implemented a bowed string model using a static

friction model and a two-polarisation FDTD model for the string in [49, 48], but did not implement this in real-time. The first real-time implementation of a bowed stiff string fully modelled using FDTD methods was presented in paper [A]. Finally, paper [C] presented the first (real-time) implementation of the elasto-plastic friction model applied to a FD scheme in a musical context.

## 8.2 Interpolation and spreading operators

To listen to, or interact with a FD scheme between grid points, it is necessary to use some form of interpolation. For this end, an *interpolation operator*  $I(x_i)$  can be introduced and can be applied to a grid function [2]. This operator is a function of  $x_i$ , the (continuous) location of interest and can be defined in various levels of accuracy. In this section, a 1D system  $u(x, t)$  is assumed where  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  for spatial domain  $\mathcal{D}$ . The theory presented in this section will be extended to 2D in Section 11.1.

An interpolation operator can be applied to a grid function  $u_l^n$ , which performs the following operation:

$$I_{l,o}(x_i)u_l^n = \sum_{l \in d} I_{l,o}(x_i) \cdot u_l^n. \quad (8.1)$$

Here,  $o$  is the order of the operator, and  $l \in d$  with discrete domain  $d$ , which needs to be the same for both  $I_{l,o}(x_i)$  and  $u_l^n$ .

The simplest interpolation operator is of '0<sup>th</sup>'-order and is defined as

$$I_{l,0}(x_i) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } l = l_i, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (8.2)$$

where the grid location of interest is defined as  $l_i = \lfloor x_i/h \rfloor$  (see Figure 8.3a). Instead of actually performing an interpolation operation,  $I_0$  simply floors its input to the grid location below. A slightly more accurate way to perform 0<sup>th</sup>-order interpolation is to round  $x_i/h$  to the nearest neighbour, rather than using the flooring operation.

First-order or linear interpolation uses the fractional part of the flooring operation as well, according to  $\alpha_i = x_i/h - l_i$  and is defined as

$$I_{l,1}(x_i) = \begin{cases} (1 - \alpha_i), & \text{if } l = l_i, \\ \alpha_i, & \text{if } l = l_i + 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (8.3)$$

See Figure 8.3b.

The highest order interpolator used in this project is the Lagrange cubic

interpolator:

$$I_{l,3}(x_i) = \begin{cases} -\alpha_i(\alpha_i - 1)(\alpha_i - 2)/6, & l = l_i - 1, \\ (\alpha_i - 1)(\alpha_i + 1)(\alpha_i - 2)/2, & l = l_i, \\ -\alpha_i(\alpha_i + 1)(\alpha_i - 2)/2, & l = l_i + 1, \\ \alpha_i(\alpha_i + 1)(\alpha_i - 1)/6, & l = l_i + 2, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (8.4)$$

See Figure 8.3c. Notice that the sum of all values of  $I_{l,o}(x_i)$ , regardless of the order or the value of  $\alpha_i$ , add up to 1.

One could potentially create higher-order interpolation operators, but as one is restricted to a finite domain, the flexibility of the implementation reduces. Notice that if  $\alpha_i = 0$ , the higher-order interpolators reduce to the 0<sup>th</sup>-order interpolator in Eq. (8.2).

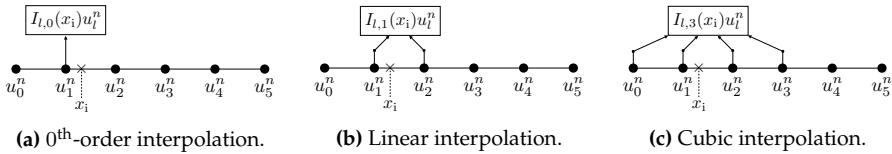


Fig. 8.3: Interpolation with varying orders of accuracy.

Apart from interpolation operators, one may define *spreading operators* which can be interpreted as an inverse interpolation operation. A spreading operator  $J(x_i)$  is used to interact with a distributed FD scheme in the form of an excitation or other interactions such as connections or collisions between multiple schemes (also see Part IV).

The spreading operators can be defined in the same way as the interpolation operators described above, yielding a 0<sup>th</sup>-order spreading operator

$$J_{l,0}(x_i) = \frac{1}{h} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } l = l_i, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (8.5)$$

a linear spreading operator

$$J_{l,1}(x_i) = \frac{1}{h} \begin{cases} (1 - \alpha_i), & \text{if } l = l_i, \\ \alpha_i, & \text{if } l = l_i + 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (8.6)$$

## 8.2. Interpolation and spreading operators

and a Lagrange cubic spreading operator

$$J_{l,3}(x_i) = \frac{1}{h} \begin{cases} -\alpha_i(\alpha_i - 1)(\alpha_i - 2)/6, & l = l_i - 1, \\ (\alpha_i - 1)(\alpha_i + 1)(\alpha_i - 2)/2, & l = l_i, \\ -\alpha_i(\alpha_i + 1)(\alpha_i - 2)/2, & l = l_i + 1, \\ \alpha_i(\alpha_i + 1)(\alpha_i - 1)/6, & l = l_i + 2, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (8.7)$$

Notice the scaling by  $1/h$  which will be more elaborated on in Chapter 11. As is the case with the interpolation operators, higher-order spreading operators reduce to Eq. (8.5) if  $\alpha_i = 0$ .

Spreading operators approximate the spatial Dirac delta function  $\delta(x - x_i)$  (in  $m^{-1}$ ), which is a test function defined as

$$\delta(x) = \begin{cases} \infty, & x = 0, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(x) dx = 1, \quad (8.8)$$

used in continuous time to locate an external force to a location  $x_i$  along a system distributed over space  $x$ . Note that the definition in (8.8) will not be used directly. Instead, it can be approximated using the spreading operators presented in this section.

### Identities

The following identity is extremely useful when solving systems including interpolation and spreading operators of the same order  $o$  for any (grid) function  $f$  and discrete domain  $d$ :

$$\langle f_l, J_{l,o}(x_i) \rangle_d = I_{l,o}(x_i) f_l, \quad (8.9)$$

where  $l \in d$ . From this, it follows that taking the norm of a spreading operator over a given domain is identical to applying to its ‘dual’ interpolation operator (of the same order  $o$  and same input  $x_i$ ):

$$\langle J_{l,o}(x_i), J_{l,o}(x_i) \rangle_d = \|J_{l,o}(x_i)\|_d^2 = I_{l,o}(x_i) J_{l,o}(x_i). \quad (8.10)$$

See Section 3.2.1 for more details on the inner product and the norm.

### Other distributions

This section presented interpolation and spreading operators that interact with the state of a FD scheme at a single location  $x_i$  and either interpolates or distributes over a range of points. Although multiple grid points might be used

for these operations, the interpolation or spreading is not *distributed*. Physical excitors such as mallets or bows have a non-zero width and thus interact with a larger part of the system. One could make an arbitrary distribution function  $E$  with elements  $e_l$  (in 1D) where  $l \in d$  for discrete domain  $d$  of the system at hand. The *distribution* and spreading operators become

$$I_l = \frac{e_l}{\sum_d e_l} \quad \text{and} \quad J_l = \frac{1}{h} I_l. \quad (8.11)$$

Although any values for  $E$  would work, to retain correct scaling, the sum of  $E$  needs to be normalised to 1 as shown in Eq. (8.11).

### 8.3 The Newton-Raphson method

Before moving on to more complex nonlinear excitation mechanisms, it is useful to go over the process of how to solve some of these mechanisms using an iterative root-finding method called the *Newton-Raphson* method (or Newton-Raphson for short).

If a FD scheme not be solved explicitly, due to an implicit dependence on a variable for example, Newton-Raphson can be used. For a continuous and differentiable function  $f(x) = 0$ , its root can be approached using the following iteration

$$x_{i+1} = x_i - \frac{f(x_i)}{f'(x_i)}, \quad (8.12)$$

with iteration number  $i$  and the tick is used to denote a derivation with respect to  $x$ . This iteration will then be carried out until the difference between the values of two consecutive iterations is smaller than a given threshold:

$$|x_{i+1} - x_i| < \epsilon, \quad (8.13)$$

where  $\epsilon$  is small, but its value depends on the situation at hand. To prevent Newton Raphson from iterating endlessly (if the iteration can not converge), one can put a cap on the number of iterations allowed.

Preferably, the starting point of the iteration,  $x_0$ , should be close to the value of where the root is expected to be. This is especially the case for a higher-ordered function with multiple roots (non-uniqueness) or many local variations.

Algorithm 8.1 shows an example of an implementation of Newton-Raphson using  $f(x) = e^x - 1 \Rightarrow f'(x) = e^x$  and Figure 8.4 visualises the iterative algorithm.

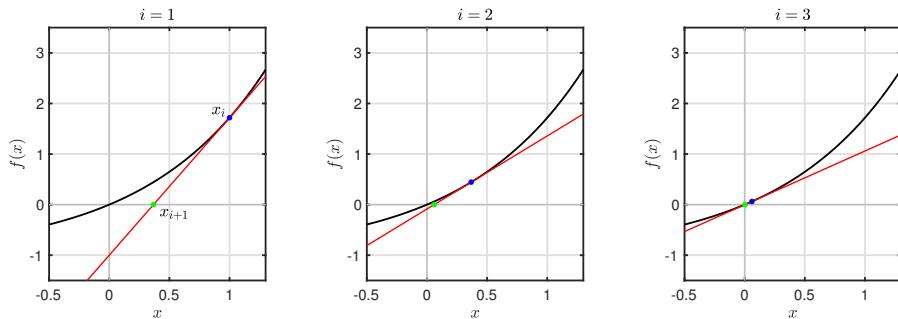
### 8.3. The Newton-Raphson method

```

1 % An example of the Newton Raphson method using f(x) = exp(x) - 1
2
3 x = 1;           % starting point
4 eps = 1e-4;      % threshold
5
6 % if the threshold has not been crossed before this number of
7 % iterations, do not iterate more
8 maxIterations = 100;
9
10 % loop until a maximum number of iterations
11 for i = 1:maxIterations
12
13     % calculate next iteration (Eq. (8.12))
14     xNext = x - (exp(x) - 1) / (exp(x));
15
16     % threshold check (Eq. (8.13))
17     if abs(xNext - x) < eps
18         break; % break out of the for loop
19     end
20
21     % update the value of x
22     x = xNext;
23 end
24 disp("The root of f(x) is at x = " + xNext)

```

**Algorithm 8.1:** Example of an implementation of the Newton-Raphson method using  $f(x) = e^x - 1$ .



**Fig. 8.4:** The Newton-Raphson method. The  $x$ -value of the root of the tangent line at  $f(x_i)$  is used to evaluate the next iteration.

### 8.3.1 Multivariate Newton-Raphson

For  $M$  functions  $f_m$  dependent on the same number of independent variables  $x_m$  with  $m = \{1, \dots, M\}$ , Newton-Raphson can be extended to

$$\mathbf{x}_{i+1} = \mathbf{x}_i - \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f_1(\mathbf{x}_i)}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial f_1(\mathbf{x}_i)}{\partial x_M} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f_M(\mathbf{x}_i)}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial f_M(\mathbf{x}_i)}{\partial x_M} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}_i)}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} f_1(\mathbf{x}_i) \\ \vdots \\ f_M(\mathbf{x}_i) \end{bmatrix}, \quad (8.14)$$

where the column vector  $\mathbf{x} = [x_1, \dots, x_M]^T$  is the collection of independent variables, and the iteration number is (again) denoted by  $i$ . The matrix in Eq. (8.14) is referred to as the *Jacobian matrix*  $\mathbf{J}$  and contains the derivatives of all functions with respect to each individual independent variable.

As an example, consider the following system of equations<sup>2</sup>:

$$f_1(\mathbf{x}) = 3x_1 - \cos(x_2 x_3) - 3/2 = 0, \quad (8.15a)$$

$$f_2(\mathbf{x}) = 4x_1^2 - 625x_2^2 + 2x_3 - 1 = 0, \quad (8.15b)$$

$$f_3(\mathbf{x}) = 20x_3 + e^{-x_1 x_2} + 9 = 0, \quad (8.15c)$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = [x_1, x_2, x_3]^T$ . The Jacobian matrix will be

$$\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & x_3 \sin(x_2 x_3) & x_2 \sin(x_2 x_3) \\ 8x_1 & -1250x_2 & 2 \\ -x_2 e^{-x_1 x_2} & -x_1 e^{-x_1 x_2} & 20 \end{bmatrix},$$

and its roots can be found by iteratively calculating Eq. (8.14).

## 8.4 Static friction models

A friction model is a nonlinear function that is (at least) dependent on the relative velocity  $v_{\text{rel}}$  between the bow and the string. This function scales how much the bow force affects the bowed object. In static friction models, the friction force is defined as a function of this relative velocity only. The first mathematical description of friction was proposed by Coulomb in 1773 [81] to which static friction, or *stiction*, was added by Morin in 1833 [82] and viscous friction, or velocity-dependent friction, by Reynolds in 1886 [83]. In 1902, Stribeck found a smooth transition between the static and the coulomb part of the friction curve now referred to as the Stribeck effect [84]. The latter is still the standard for static friction models today.

check references here

<sup>2</sup>Taken from <http://fourier.eng.hmc.edu/e176/lectures/NM/node21.html>

Many static friction models contain a discontinuity where the relative velocity between the  $v_{\text{rel}} = 0$  due to a multiplication with  $\text{sgn}(v_{\text{rel}})$  in their definition. In this project, only the following static friction model has been used [2]

$$\Phi(v_{\text{rel}}) = \sqrt{2av_{\text{rel}}} e^{-av_{\text{rel}}^2 + 1/2}, \quad (8.16)$$

as it is continuous and differentiable, but still approximating discontinuous bow models. These characteristics make this model easier to work with in implementation. A definition for  $v_{\text{rel}}$  will be given below.

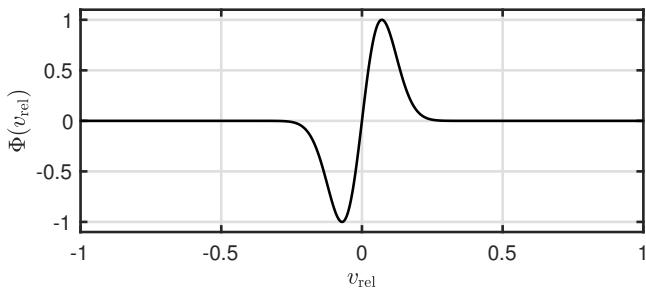


Fig. 8.5: The friction model in Eq. (8.16) with  $a = 100$ .

FULL DOC  
SWEEP: check  
figure centering

#### 8.4.1 The bowed stiff string

Consider a stiff string, its transverse displacement described by  $u(x, t)$  defined for  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  (see Chapter 4). The relative velocity between the string at bow position  $x_B = x_B(t) \in \mathcal{D}$  and the bow can then be described as

$$v_{\text{rel}} = \partial_t u(x_B, t) - v_B(t) \quad (8.17)$$

(in m/s) with bow velocity  $v_B = v_B(t)$  (in m/s).

Recalling the PDE of the stiff string in Eq. (4.4)

$$\rho A \partial_t^2 u = T \partial_x^2 u - EI \partial_x^4 u - 2\sigma_0 \rho A \partial_t u + 2\sigma_1 \rho A \partial_t \partial_x^2 u, \quad (8.18)$$

one can add the bow force to the equation according to

$$\rho A \partial_t^2 u = T \partial_x^2 u - EI \partial_x^4 u - 2\sigma_0 \rho A \partial_t u + 2\sigma_1 \rho A \partial_t \partial_x^2 u - \delta(x - x_B) f_B \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}) \quad (8.19)$$

where spatial Dirac delta function  $\delta(x - x_B)$  (in  $\text{m}^{-1}$ ) (see Section 8.2) positions the bow along the string and  $f_B = f_B(t) \geq 0$  is the bow force (in N).<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup>If the spatial Dirac delta function were omitted, the bow force would be applied to the entire string domain rather than only the bow location  $x_B$ .

## Intuition

From Eq. (8.19) it can be seen that the bow force gets scaled by the friction model  $\Phi(v_{\text{rel}})$  shown in Figure 8.5. The figure shows that if  $v_{\text{rel}}$  is too large (either positively or negatively) the bow term in (8.19) becomes 0. If, on the other hand,  $v_{\text{rel}}$  is closer to 0, the bow will have an effect on the string. This can be interpreted in terms of static and dynamic friction<sup>4</sup>. A stationary object requires more force to be moved than a moving object, i.e., the static friction coefficient is always higher than the dynamic friction coefficient. This is essentially what the friction model tries to simulate.

It might seem counter-intuitive that the bow term is subtracted from the scheme. This is due to the definition of the relative velocity in Eq. (8.17). For a negative bow velocity  $v_B$ ,  $v_{\text{rel}}$  becomes positive. As  $\text{sgn}(\Phi(v_{\text{rel}})) = \text{sgn}(v_{\text{rel}})$  through Eq. (8.16) and  $f_B \geq 0$ , the term  $\delta(x - x_B)f_B\Phi(v_{\text{rel}})$  will be positive for a positive  $v_{\text{rel}}$ . As a negative  $v_B$  needs to have a downwards, or negative, effect on the string, the sign of the bow term also needs to be negative to achieve this.

## Discrete time

Dividing all terms in Eq. (8.20) by  $\rho A$  and discretising the system yields

$$\delta_{tt}u_l^n = c^2\delta_{xx}u_l^n - \kappa^2\delta_{xxxx}u_l^n - 2\sigma_0\delta_t.u_l^n + 2\sigma_1\delta_{t-}\delta_{xx}u_l^n - J_l(x_B^n)F_B^n\Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n), \quad (8.20)$$

with  $F_B^n = f_B^n/\rho A$  and spreading operator  $J_l(x_B^n) = J_{l,o}(x_B^n)$  (in  $\text{m}^{-1}$ ) as described in Section 8.2, where the order  $o$  remains undetermined for now. As the bow position, bow velocity and bow force are time-dependent, these have a superscript  $n$  in discrete time. These parameters are called *control parameters* and will be supplied by the performer in an eventual implementation.

The relative velocity in Eq. (8.17) is discretised using a centred difference operator according to

$$v_{\text{rel}}^n = I_l(x_B^n)\delta_t.u_l^n - v_B^n, \quad (8.21)$$

with interpolation operator  $I_l(x_B^n) = I_{l,o}(x_B^n)$  and is of the same order as  $J_l(x_B^n)$ . Equation (8.21) makes the scheme implicit due to the centred difference operator as the FD scheme in Eq. (8.20) is now nonlinearly dependent on  $u_l^{n+1}$ . To solve Eq. (8.20) for  $u_l^{n+1}$ , an iterative root-finding algorithm, such as Newton-Raphson described in Section 8.3, is required. This process could be circumvented by using a backward difference operator in Eq. (8.21), but this will affect the accuracy and behaviour of the bow model.

---

<sup>4</sup>'Static' and 'dynamic' friction are unrelated to 'static' and 'dynamic' friction models.

## 8.4. Static friction models

### Solution

To find a solution for  $u_l^{n+1}$  at the bow location, an inner product of the scheme in Eq. (8.20) with spreading operator  $J_l(x_B^n)$  must be taken over the discrete domain of the string  $d$  which isolates the scheme at the bowing location. Performing this operation and using identity (8.9) yields

$$I_l(x_B^n)\delta_{tt}u_l^n = c^2 I_l(x_B^n)\delta_{xx}u_l^n - \kappa^2 I_l(x_B^n)\delta_{xxxx}u_l^n - 2\sigma_0 I_l(x_B^n)\delta_t.u_l^n + 2\sigma_1 I_l(x_B^n)\delta_{t-\delta_{xx}}u_l^n - \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2 F_B^n \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n). \quad (8.22)$$

One can rewrite Eq. (8.21) to

$$I_l(x_B^n)\delta_t.u_l^n = v_{\text{rel}}^n + v_B^n, \quad (8.23)$$

and using identity (2.27a), Eq. (8.22) can be rewritten and assigned to a function  $g(v_{\text{rel}}^n)$  according to

$$g(v_{\text{rel}}^n) = \left( \frac{2}{k} + 2\sigma_0 \right) v_{\text{rel}}^n + \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2 F_B^n \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n) + b^n = 0, \quad (8.24)$$

where the terms not dependent on  $v_{\text{rel}}$  are collected in<sup>5</sup>

$$b^n = -\frac{2}{k} I_l(x_B^n)\delta_t.u_l^n - c^2 I_l(x_B^n)\delta_{xx}u_l^n + \kappa^2 I_l(x_B^n)\delta_{xxxx}u_l^n + \left( \frac{2}{k} + 2\sigma_0 \right) v_B^n - 2\sigma_1 I_l(x_B^n)\delta_{t-\delta_{xx}}u_l^n. \quad (8.25)$$

One can then perform the Newton-Raphson method detailed in Section 8.3 to iteratively solve for  $v_{\text{rel}}$

$$(v_{\text{rel}}^n)_{i+1} = (v_{\text{rel}}^n)_i - \frac{g((v_{\text{rel}}^n)_i)}{g'((v_{\text{rel}}^n)_i)}, \quad (8.26)$$

where

$$g'(v_{\text{rel}}^n) = \frac{2}{k} + 2\sigma_0 + \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2 F_B^n \Phi'(v_{\text{rel}}^n),$$

and

$$\Phi'(v_{\text{rel}}^n) = \sqrt{2a} (1 - 2a(v_{\text{rel}}^n)^2) e^{-a(v_{\text{rel}}^n)^2 + 1/2}.$$

---

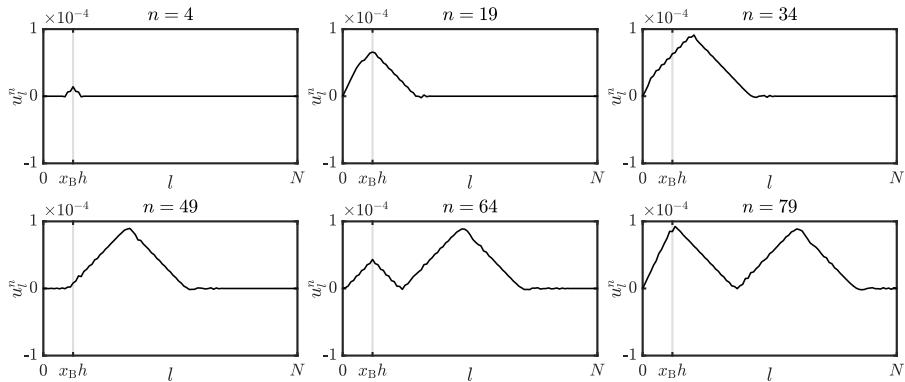
<sup>5</sup>An interpolation operator applied to a spatial derivative can be expanded in a similar fashion to when it is applied to a grid function. A first-order interpolator applied to  $\delta_{xx}u_l^n$  thus yields  $I_{l,1}(x_i)\delta_{xx}u_l^n = (1 - \alpha_i)\delta_{xx}u_{l_i}^n + \alpha\delta_{xx}u_{l_i+1}^n$ .

### 8.4.2 Implementation and output

To implement the bowed stiff string, one must perform the Newton-Raphson iteration every sample. For the implementation shown in this section, the threshold in Eq. (8.13) has been set to  $\epsilon = 10^{-7}$  and the maximum number of iterations to 100. In the following, the parameters used for the string are listed in Table 4.1 with  $T = 1000$  N and those for the bow are

$$x_B = \lfloor 0.125/h \rfloor, \quad f_B = 1 \text{ N}, \quad v_B = 0.2 \text{ m/s}, \quad \text{and} \quad a = 100.$$

Figure 8.6 shows the behaviour of a bowed stiff string at the beginning of the simulation and shows the characteristic stick-slip behaviour. Figure 8.7 shows the state of the same simulation 3 seconds later. One can observe the Helmholtz corner move in an anti-clockwise direction as presented in Figure 8.1. Finally, the time domain output of the string at the bowing location is shown in Figure 8.8 generally follows the Helmholtz motion shown in Figure 8.2.

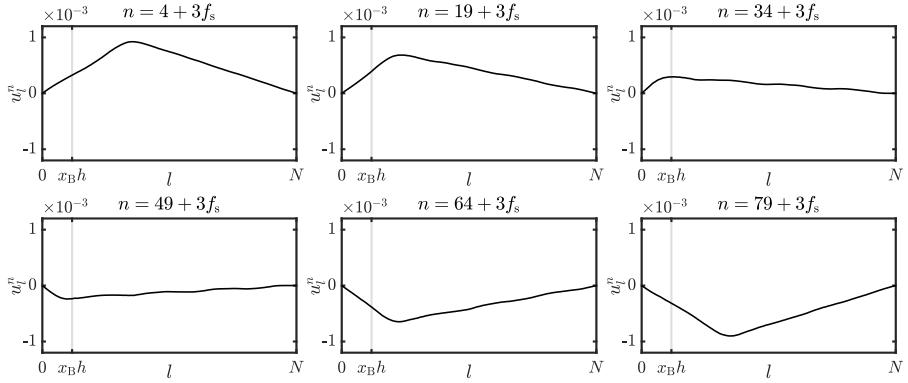


**Fig. 8.6:** Behaviour of a bowed stiff string at the beginning of the simulation.

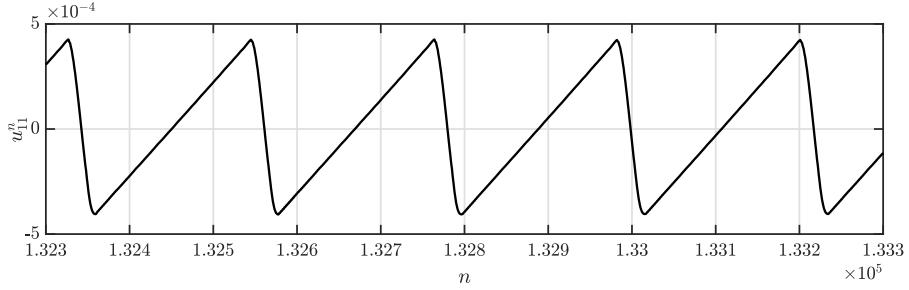
### 8.4.3 Energy analysis

Following the energy analysis of the stiff string presented in Section 4.4, taking an inner product of Eq. (8.20) (after multiplication by  $\rho A$ ) with  $(\delta_t \cdot u_l^n)$  over

#### 8.4. Static friction models



**Fig. 8.7:** Behaviour of a bowed stiff string simulation after 3 seconds. The string exhibits a Helmholtz motion as presented in Figure 8.1.



**Fig. 8.8:** Time domain output at the bowing location of a bowed stiff string using the static friction model in Eq. (8.16).

discrete domain  $d$  one arrives at the following

$$\begin{aligned}
 \delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h} + \mathfrak{q} &= -\langle (\delta_t u_l^n), J_l(x_B^n) f_B^n \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n) \rangle_d \\
 &\xleftarrow{\text{Eq. (8.9)}} -I_l(x_B^n) (\delta_t u_l^n) f_B^n \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n) \\
 &\xleftarrow{\text{Eq. (8.23)}} -\underbrace{f_B^n \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n) v_{\text{rel}}^n}_{\text{loss}} - \underbrace{f_B^n \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n) v_B^n}_{\text{power}},
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $\mathfrak{h}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}$  are as defined in Eqs. (4.32) and (4.31) respectively. As  $\text{sgn}(\Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n)) = \text{sgn}(v_{\text{rel}}^n)$  through Eq. (8.16), one can observe that the first term on the right-hand side always has a negative effect on the rate of change of the total energy. This term can therefore be interpreted as the loss of power through the bow (as indicated). The last term is of indeterminate sign and can thus be interpreted as the power supplied by the bow.

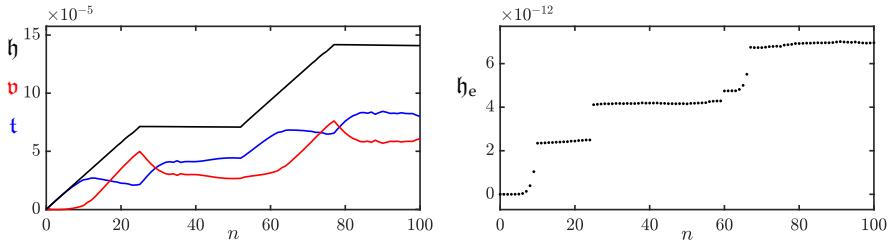
The final energy balance can thus be written as

$$\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h} = -\mathfrak{q} - \mathfrak{q}_B - \mathfrak{p} \quad (8.27)$$

where

$$\mathfrak{q}_B = f_B^n \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n) v_{\text{rel}}^n \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{p} = f_B^n \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}^n) v_B^n.$$

Figure 8.9 shows the energy of the bowed stiff string corresponding to the wave propagation in Figure 8.6. The bow only injects energy into the system when it sticks to the string.



**Fig. 8.9:** The kinetic (blue), potential (red), and total (black) energy of the bowed stiff string. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.38)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

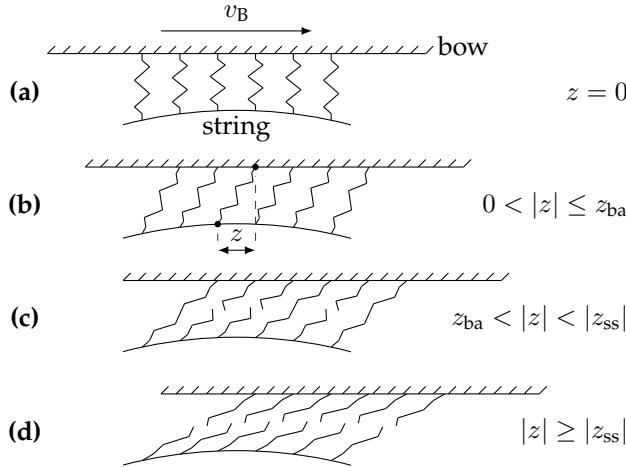
## 8.5 Dynamic friction models

As opposed to static friction models, dynamic friction models relate the relative velocity to the friction force using a differential equation. Dynamic friction models exhibit a phenomenon called *hysteresis*, which is the dependence of a system on its history. This hysteresis loop is in the force versus velocity plane and has been confirmed by measurements using a bowing machine in [80].

The first dynamic friction model was due to Dahl [85] and captured hysteresis effects. The Stribeck effect was, however, not taken into account. The LuGre model (named after the collaboration between Lund and Grenoble) was then proposed by Canudas de Wit et al. in [86, 87] and extended the Dahl model to take the Stribeck effect into account. The model assumes a large ensemble of bristles between the two sliding surfaces, each of which contributes a tiny amount to the total friction force. The drawback of this model is that it exhibits drift for extremely small external forces. In [76], Dupont et al. extended the LuGre model by allowing for a purely elastic regime that solves the drift issue. This model is referred to as the *elasto-plastic* friction model and is used in this project.

### 8.5.1 The elasto-plastic friction model

In a musical context, the elasto-plastic friction has been investigated in-depth by Serafin et al. in [77, 78, 88]. Like the LuGre model, the elasto-plastic friction model assumes that the friction between the bow and the string is caused by a large quantity of bristles, all contributing a fraction of the total amount of friction. See Figure 8.10.



**Fig. 8.10:** A visualisation of the microscopic displacements of the bristles between the bow and the string assumed by the elasto-plastic friction model. The bow moves right with a velocity of  $v_B$ . (a) The average bristle displacement  $z = 0$ . (b) The bow moves right relative to the string and the purely elastic, or ‘presliding’ regime is entered (stick). (c) After  $|z|$  gets larger than break-away displacement  $z_{ba}$ , more and more bristles start to ‘break’. This is defined as the elasto-plastic regime. (d) After  $|z| \geq |z_{ss}|$  all bristles have ‘broken’, the steady state (slip) is reached and the purely plastic regime is entered. (Adapted from paper [C].)

Unless denoted otherwise, this section follows the original model by Dupont et al. in [76], but with the appropriate corrections added as presented in paper [C]. As opposed to the static friction model described in the previous section, the friction force  $f$  (in N) is now dependent on the average bristle displacement  $z = z(t)$  (in m) as well as the relative velocity  $v = v(t)$  (in m/s). The friction force is defined as

$$f(v, z) = s_0 z + s_1 \dot{z} + s_2 v + s_3 w, \quad (8.28)$$

with bristle stiffness  $s_0 \geq 0$  (in N/m), bristle damping  $s_1 \geq 0$  (in kg/s), viscous friction  $s_2 \geq 0$  (in kg/s) and, as presented in [78], a dimensionless noise coefficient  $s_3$  multiplied onto a pseudorandom function  $w = w(t)$  (in N) generating values between  $-1$  and  $1$ . Moreover, for a string defined over domain  $\mathcal{D}$ , the relative velocity between the string at bowing location  $x_B =$

$x_B(t) \in \mathcal{D}$  and the bow is (similar to Eq. (8.17))

$$v = \partial_t u(x_B, t) - v_B, \quad (8.29)$$

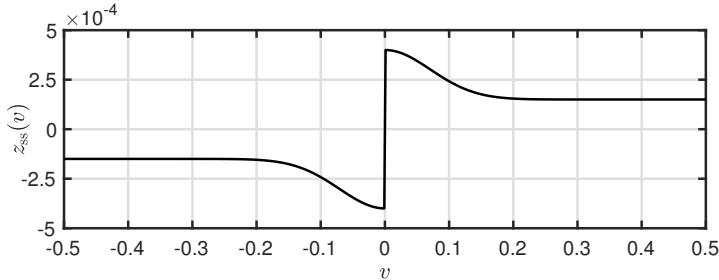
with bow velocity  $v_B = v_B(t)$  (in m/s). Lastly,  $\dot{z}$  is the rate of change of the bristle displacement (in m/s) and is related to  $v$  according to

$$\dot{z} = r(v, z) = v \left[ 1 - \alpha(v, z) \frac{z}{z_{ss}(v)} \right]. \quad (8.30)$$

Here,  $z_{ss}$  is the steady-state function

$$z_{ss}(v) = \frac{\operatorname{sgn}(v)}{s_0} \left[ f_C + (f_S - f_C) e^{-(v/v_S)^2} \right], \quad (8.31)$$

where the  $v_S$  is the Stribeck velocity (in m/s). Furthermore, using the normal force  $f_N = f_N(t)$  (in N), the Coulomb force and stiction force can be calculated according to  $f_C = f_N \mu_C$  and  $f_S = f_N \mu_S$  respectively (both in N). In these definitions  $\mu_C$  and  $\mu_S$  are the dimensionless dynamic and static friction coefficients respectively. A plot of the steady state function can be found in Figure 8.11.



**Fig. 8.11:** The steady-state function  $z_{ss}(v)$  plotted against relative velocity  $v$  with  $s_0 = 10^4$ ,  $\mu_C = 0.3$ ,  $\mu_S = 0.8$ ,  $v_S = 0.1$  and  $f_N = 5$ .

Finally,  $\alpha(v, z)$  in Eq. (8.30) is an adhesion map between the bow and the string and is defined as

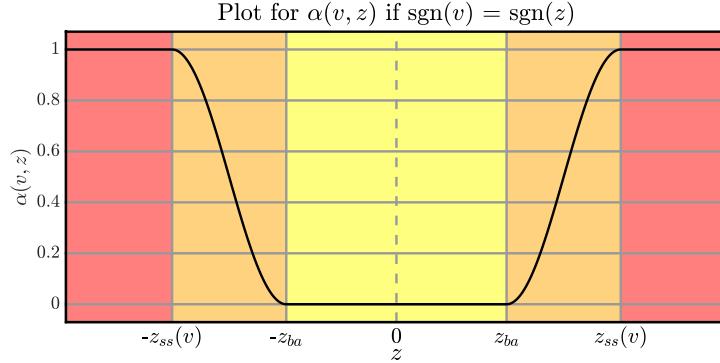
$$\alpha(v, z) = \begin{cases} 0 & |z| \leq z_{ba} \\ \alpha_m(v, z) & z_{ba} < |z| < |z_{ss}(v)| \\ 1 & |z| \geq |z_{ss}(v)| \end{cases} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{if } \operatorname{sgn}(v) = \operatorname{sgn}(z) \\ \text{if } \operatorname{sgn}(v) \neq \operatorname{sgn}(z), \end{array} \quad (8.32)$$

## 8.5. Dynamic friction models

where the transition between the elastic and plastic behaviour is defined as

$$\alpha_m = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 + \text{sgn}(z) \sin \left( \pi \frac{z - \text{sgn}(z) \frac{1}{2} (|z_{ss}(v)| + z_{ba})}{|z_{ss}(v)| - z_{ba}} \right) \right], \quad (8.33)$$

where the break-away displacement  $z_{ba} = z_{ba}(t) = 0.7f_C/s_0$  determines the value of  $z$  before bristles start to break. The adhesion map is visualised in Figure 8.12 and relates to Figure 8.10 as described in its caption.



**Fig. 8.12:** A plot of the adhesion map  $\alpha(v, z)$  in Eq. (8.32) plotted against  $z$  when  $\text{sgn}(v) = \text{sgn}(z)$ . The different coloured regions correspond to Figure 8.10 according to: yellow - a) & b), orange - c) and red - d). (Adapted from paper [C].)

### Discrete time

Equation (8.28) can be discretised to

$$f(v^n, z^n) = s_0 z^n + s_1 r^n + s_2 v^n + s_3 w^n \quad (8.34)$$

where Eq. (8.29) can be discretised to

$$v^n = I_l(x_B^n) \delta_t \cdot u_l^n - v_B^n, \quad (8.35)$$

with interpolation operator  $I_l(x_B^n) = I_{l,o}(x_B^n)$  (of unspecified order  $o$ ) and

$$r^n = r(v^n, z^n) = v^n \left[ 1 - \alpha(v^n, z^n) \frac{z^n}{z_{ss}(v^n)} \right] \quad (8.36)$$

is the discrete counterpart of Eq. (8.30). The discrete adhesion map is identical to the continuous definition given in Eqs. (8.32) and (8.33), but with superscripts  $n$  added for appearances of  $v$  and  $z$ .

### 8.5.2 Applied to a FDTD stiff string

The first appearance of a contribution in this work is the elasto-plastic friction model applied to a stiff string implemented using FDTD methods. This has been presented in paper [C] and will be summarised in this section.

In the same way as done with the static friction model in Section 8.4, one can add the friction force to the stiff string PDE in Eq. (4.4) and discretise the system as follows:

$$\delta_{tt} u_l^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} u_l^n - \kappa^2 \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n - 2\sigma_0 \delta_{t-} u_l^n + 2\sigma_1 \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n - J_l(x_B^n) \frac{f(v^n, z^n)}{\rho A}, \quad (8.37)$$

where spreading operator  $J_l(x_B^n) = J_{l,o}(x_B^n)$  and is of the same order as  $I_l(x_B^n)$  in Eq. (8.35). Following the same procedure as for the static friction model in Section 8.4, one takes an inner product with  $J_l(x_B^n)$  over discrete string domain  $d$  and using identities (8.9) and (2.27a), one can rewrite this similar to the static friction model in Eq. (8.24) as

$$g_1(v^n, z^n) = \left( \frac{2}{k} + 2\sigma_0 \right) v^n + \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2 \frac{f(v^n, z^n)}{\rho A} + b^n = 0, \quad (8.38)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} b^n = & -\frac{2}{k} I_l(x_B^n) \delta_{t-} u_l^n - c^2 I_l(x_B^n) \delta_{xx} u_l^n + \kappa^2 I_l(x_B^n) \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n \\ & + \left( \frac{2}{k} + 2\sigma_0 \right) v_B^n - 2\sigma_1 I_l(x_B^n) \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n. \end{aligned}$$

As  $g_1$  contains two unknown variables  $v^n$  and  $z^n$  that need to be solved for, the multivariate Newton-Raphson method presented in 8.3.1 must be performed. To be able to do this, an extra function must be included.

As  $r$  describes  $\dot{z}$  in Eq. (8.30), one can take another approach to approximate  $\dot{z}$  using the trapezoid rule [2]

$$a^n = (\mu_{t-})^{-1} \delta_{t-} z^n \implies a^n = \frac{2}{k} (z^n - z^{n-1}) + a^{n-1}. \quad (8.39)$$

As both  $a^n$  and  $r^n$  approximate  $\dot{z}$ , these can be used to create the second function necessary to solve the full system

$$g_2(v^n, z^n) = r^n - a^n = 0. \quad (8.40)$$

Finally, one can use the multivariate Newton-Raphson method described in

state the stability stuff here?

## 8.5. Dynamic friction models

Section 8.3.1, which results in

$$\begin{bmatrix} v^n \\ z^n \end{bmatrix}_{i+1} = \begin{bmatrix} v^n \\ z^n \end{bmatrix}_i - \left[ \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial g_1}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial g_1}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial g_2}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial g_2}{\partial z} \end{bmatrix} \right]^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} g_1 \\ g_2 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (8.41)$$

The derivatives in the Jacobian matrix are given in Appendix E.3.

### 8.5.3 Output

In the following, the same parameters as presented for the static friction model in Section 8.4.2 have been used for the string and the bow (where  $f_N = f_B$ ). Additional parameters used for the elasto-plastic friction model are given in paper [C].

Figure 8.13 shows that the implementation of the elasto-plastic friction model exhibits a hysteresis loop in the force versus velocity plane as desired from a dynamic friction model. The values around  $v = 0$  are due to sticking behaviour and the loop on the left is due to slipping behaviour. Figure 8.14 shows the output of the implementation and follows the characteristic Helmholtz motion shown in Figure 8.2. When compared to the output of the static friction model in Figure 8.8, the output of the elasto-plastic implementation seems to be more ‘smooth’ overall, which could be explained by the elasticity of the bristles.

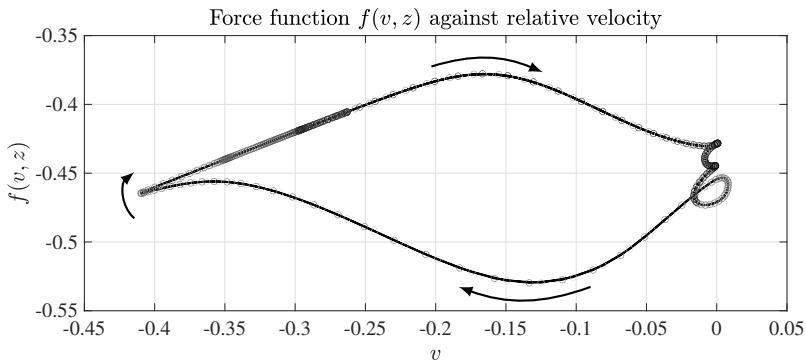
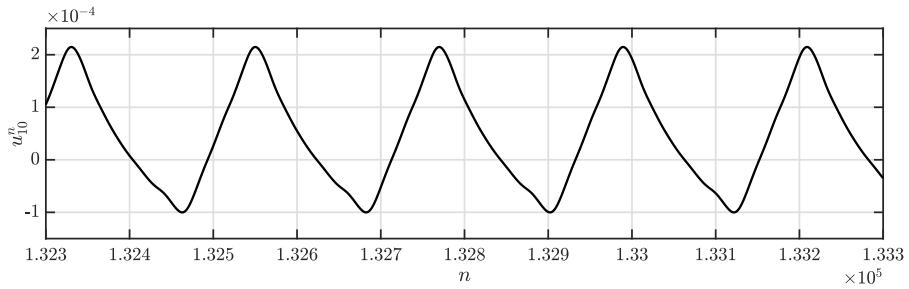


Fig. 8.13: Hysteresis loop showing 500 values up to  $n = 3f_s$ . (Adapted from paper [C].)

### 8.5.4 Stability through energy analysis

As the elasto-plastic bow model is a differential equation in itself, its approximation will need to abide a stability condition as well. As the system at hand is nonlinear, frequency domain analysis as described in Section 3.3 can not



**Fig. 8.14:** Time domain output at the bow location of a stiff string bowed using an elasto-plastic friction model.

be performed. Energy analysis, on the other hand, can be used here to determine the necessary stability condition for this model. This section follows the concepts introduced in Section 3.4.4 to obtain a stability conditions for the elasto-plastic friction model. A similar process for finding stability for the LuGre model has been done by Olsson in continuous time [89, p. 55]. The derivation below is inspired by his.

First, all terms of Eq. (8.37) are multiplied by  $\rho A$  to get the appropriate units for the analysis. Then, the inner product with  $\delta_t u_l^n$  over the string domain  $\mathcal{D}$  is taken to get

$$\delta_{t+} h_s + q_s = -p_B \quad (8.42)$$

where the definitions for the discrete Hamiltonian  $h_s$  and the damping term  $q_s$  for the string can be found in Section 4.4. The input power introduced by the bow is defined as (writing  $f(v^n, z^n) = f^n$ )

$$p_B = \langle (\delta_t u_l^n), J(x_B^n) f^n \rangle_{\mathcal{D}}$$

which, using identity (8.9) can be written as

$$p_B = I_l(x_B^n) \delta_t u_l^n f^n.$$

Finally, using Eq. (8.35) yields

$$p_B = f^n v^n + f^n v_B^n. \quad (8.43)$$

The term  $f^n v^n$  is the important one as  $f^n v_B^n$  is a driving term, and is zero when the external bow velocity is zero. This means that this does not affect the internal stability of the system. In the following, the superscript  $n$  is suppressed for brevity.

Substituting Eq. (8.34) into  $f v$  and ignoring the noise term  $s_3 w^n$  for now, yields

$$p_B = f v = \sigma_0 z v + \sigma_1 r v + \sigma_2 v^2. \quad (8.44)$$

## 8.5. Dynamic friction models

The definition for  $r^n$  in Eq. (8.36) may be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} r &= v \left[ 1 - \alpha \frac{z}{z_{ss}(v)} \right], \\ r &= v - \frac{v\alpha z}{z_{ss}(v)}, \\ v &= r + \frac{v\alpha z}{z_{ss}(v)}, \end{aligned}$$

and (following Olsson) may be substituted in Eq. (8.44) as

$$\mathfrak{p}_B = s_0 z \left( r + \frac{v\alpha z}{z_{ss}(v)} \right) + s_1 r \left( r + \frac{v\alpha z}{z_{ss}(v)} \right) + s_2 v^2, \quad (8.45)$$

or

$$\mathfrak{p}_B = s_0 z r + s_1 \left( r + \frac{v\alpha z}{2z_{ss}(v)} \right)^2 + \frac{v\alpha z^2}{z_{ss}(v)} \left( s_0 - \frac{s_1 v\alpha}{4z_{ss}(v)} \right) + s_2 v^2. \quad (8.46)$$

The power introduced by the bow can then be subdivided into the total energy in the bristles and their damping. As  $r$  approximates  $\dot{z}$  the first term, one can rewrite this to

$$\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h}_{\text{brist}} + \mathfrak{q}_{\text{brist}} \geq 0,$$

and needs to be non-negative for passivity.

Starting with the damping term, which is defined as

$$\mathfrak{q}_{\text{brist}} = s_1 \left( r + \frac{v\alpha z}{2z_{ss}(v)} \right)^2 + \frac{v\alpha z^2}{z_{ss}(v)} \left( s_0 - \frac{s_1 v\alpha}{4z_{ss}(v)} \right) + s_2 v^2. \quad (8.47)$$

one can show that, as all coefficients are non-negative and  $\text{sgn}(v) = \text{sgn}(z_{ss}(v))$  (through a multiplication by  $\text{sgn}(v)$  in the definition of in Eq. (8.31)),  $\mathfrak{q}_{\text{brist}}$  is non-negative under the following condition:

$$s_1 \leq \frac{4s_0 z_{ss}(v)}{v}. \quad (8.48)$$

This means that as long as one knows the limit of the velocity of the system, the coefficient  $s_1$  can be set accordingly.

Using identity (3.17b), the energy stored in the bristles can be shown to be

$$\mathfrak{h}_{\text{brist}} = \frac{s_0}{2} z^n e_t - z^n, \quad (8.49)$$

which is not necessarily non-negative. In [89], Olsson performs the analysis in

continuous time, where the energy in the bristles is defined as to

$$\mathfrak{H}_{\text{brist}} = \frac{s_0}{2} z^2, \quad (8.50)$$

which is clearly non-negative. See Notes below for a discussion.

### NOTES FOR STEFAN

As far as I see, to find a stability condition for the model, there are two options:

1. The  $s_0 z$  term should be discretised using the centred averaging operator, such that the system is inherently stable.

$$s_0(\mu_t.z^n)(\delta_t.z^n) \xrightarrow{\text{Eq. (3.17d)}} \frac{s_0}{2}\mu_t-(z^n)^2 \quad (8.51)$$

This introduces the issue of needing to deal with  $z^{n+1}$  issue in the multivariate NR solve..

2. If the bristles had some sort of mass, one could create a stability condition such as done for the mass-spring system in Section 3.4.4. This requires a change the model.
3. Or do you see something I don't...?

## 8.6 Discussion and conclusion

This chapter presented the bow as a mechanism to excite stiff strings. Two friction models have been presented: a static friction model where the friction force is only a function of the relative velocity between the string and the bow, and a dynamic elasto-plastic friction model, which relates this relative velocity to the friction force using a differential equation. The latter has been presented in paper [C] where it was first applied to stiff strings based on FDTD methods.

Although a successful implementation of the elasto-plastic friction model has been made, it has not been used in the project beyond paper [C]. It was found that small changes in parameters, both control and model parameters, already yield large behavioural changes. An attempt was made at using the elasto-plastic friction model with a fully modelled instrument (the tromba marina presented in papers [D] and [E]), but did not yield the desired results, and the predictable static friction model was chosen instead. Future work includes tuning the many parameters that the elasto-plastic model relies on and apply an adjusted version to fully modelled instruments.

An in-depth comparison between the static and the elasto-plastic friction model in terms of perceptual differences, is also left for future work. A preliminary comparison has been carried out by Onofrei in [90], where the author

## 8.6. Discussion and conclusion

noted that "*the elasto-plastic model seems to behave more smoothly*" than the static friction model. This is also what is observed when comparing the output of the friction models in Figures 8.8 and 8.14. As said, these observations are preliminary, and further work needs to be done to compare the various friction models.

Finally, it must be noted that the applications of the bow are not limited to strings, and can very well be extended to other resonators. In [S4], for example, the authors apply the elasto-plastic friction model to a 2D drum membrane to simulate a friction drum inspired instrument.

## Chapter 8. The Bow

# Chapter 9

## Lip Reed

The dynamics of wind instruments can be modelled by acoustic tubes as presented in Chapter 5. Excitation of these instruments happens either by blowing a jet of air across an opening, such as in a flute, or by the buzzing of a *reed*. In [23], the authors state that all wind-instrument reeds fall into one of three categories: the single reed, (clarinet, saxophone), the double reed (oboe, bassoon) and the lip reed (trumpet, trombone). The latter will be the focus of this chapter.

Sections 5.1.3 and 7.2.2 presented a physically inspired pulse train that attempts to model the opening and closing of the lips using a clipped sinusoidal signal. A more physical approach, which is bidirectional, is to model the lips as a mass-spring-damper system that interacts with the left boundary of the tube. The literature describes lip reed models with varying degrees of freedom (DoF) (see [23, 59] for an overview). Recent work includes vortex-induced vibration into the lip reed model that allows for the buzzing of the lips without the need of an acoustic tube [S1].

As the contribution of this project to a brass instrument model was mainly focused on the resonator, the simple ‘outward striking door model’ was chosen, which is a simple single one-DoF mass-spring-damper system. The model is as presented in [91] excluding the collision. An alternative collision model was added in paper [H] and will be elaborated on in Chapter 16.

check

This chapter starts by introducing the mass-spring-damper system, after which the lip reed model will be given in continuous and discrete time. The lip reed will be coupled to the first-order system of equations presented in 5.2. Unless denoted otherwise, this chapter follows [59].

## 9.1 Mass-spring systems revisited: Damping

Before moving on to the lip reed system, the mass-spring system given in Section 2.3 will be extended to contain damping.

Recall the mass spring system presented in Eq. (2.28), where  $u = u(t)$  is the displacement of the mass from its equilibrium position (in m). Damping can be easily be added to yield a mass-spring-damper system as follows:

$$M\ddot{u} = -Ku - R\dot{u}, \quad (9.1)$$

with mass  $M$  (in kg), spring constant  $K$  (N/m) and damping coefficient  $R$  (in kg/s). Figure 9.1 shows the behaviour of the system for different values of  $R$ .

Equation (9.1) can then be discretised to the following FD scheme:

$$M\delta_{tt}u^n = -Ku^n - R\delta_{t^+}u^n. \quad (9.2)$$

Expanding and solving for  $u^{n+1}$  yields the following update equation (before division with the term multiplied onto  $u^{n+1}$ ):

$$\left(1 + \frac{Rk}{2M}\right)u^{n+1} = 2u^n - u^{n-1} - \frac{Kk^2}{M}u^n + \frac{Rk}{2M}u^{n-1}. \quad (9.3)$$

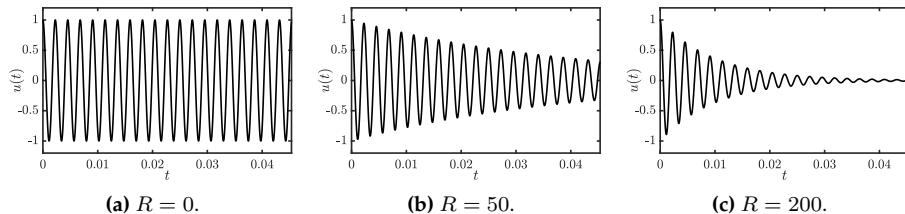
### 9.1.1 Energy analysis

Following Section 3.4 (without explicitly following the steps for brevity), one can obtain the energy of Eq. (9.2) through a multiplication of the scheme by  $(\delta_t u^n)$  to get

$$M(\delta_{tt} u^n)(\delta_{t \cdot} u^n) = -K(\delta_{t \cdot} u^n)u^n - R(\delta_{t \cdot} u^n)^2. \quad (9.4)$$

As there is damping present in the system, the energy balance will be of the form

$$\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h} = -\mathfrak{q}.$$



**Fig. 9.1:** The mass-spring-damper system in Eq. (9.1) with  $f_0 = 440$  Hz for different values of  $R$ .

## 9.2. Continuous time

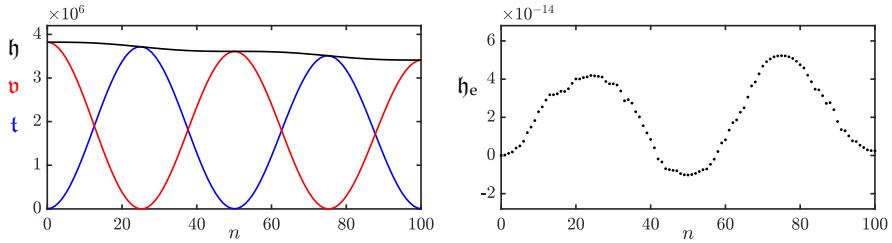
Using identities (3.17a) and (3.17b),  $\mathfrak{h}$  and  $\mathfrak{q}$  can be obtained from Eq. (9.4)

$$\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{t} + \mathfrak{v}, \quad \text{with} \quad \mathfrak{t} = \frac{M}{2}(\delta_{t-u^n})^2, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{v} = \frac{K}{2}u^n e_{t-u^n}. \quad (9.5)$$

and

$$\mathfrak{q} = R(\delta_{t-u^n})^2. \quad (9.6)$$

Figure 9.2 shows the energy output of the mass spring damper system with  $R = 50$  and  $f_0 = 2\pi\sqrt{K/M} = 440$  Hz. One can observe that the damping term causes the system to lose energy when the mass is in motion (high kinetic energy).



**Fig. 9.2:** The potential (red), kinetic (blue), and total (black) energy of the mass-spring-damper system. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.38)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

## 9.2 Continuous time

As mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, the lip reed will be modelled as a mass-spring-damper system as in Eq. (9.1). The system will be coupled to an acoustic tube described by the first-order system of PDEs described in Section 5.2, Eq. (5.38).

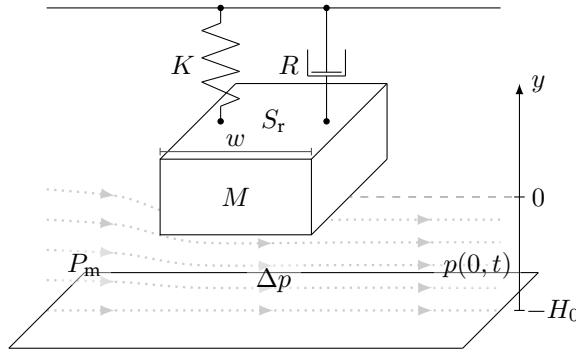
Using dots to denote derivatives with respect to time  $t$ , the PDE of the lip reed connected to an acoustic tube is defined as

$$M\ddot{y} = -Ky - R\dot{y} + S_r\Delta p. \quad (9.7)$$

with displacement of the lip reed from equilibrium  $y = y(t)$  (in m), mass of the lip reed  $M > 0$  (in kg), lip stiffness  $K \geq 0$  (in N/m), damping coefficient  $R \geq 0$  (in kg/s), and effective surface area of the lip  $S_r \geq 0$  (in m<sup>2</sup>). Furthermore,

$$\Delta p = \Delta p(t) = P_m - p(0, t) \quad (9.8)$$

is the difference between the pressure in the mouth  $P_m = P_m(t)$  and the pressure at the left boundary of the acoustic tube  $p(0, t)$  (all in Pa). The



**Fig. 9.3:** Lip-reed system with parameters as appear in Section 9.2. (Adapted from paper [H].)

acoustic tube can be described by the first-order system presented in Section 5.2. See Figure 9.3 for a schematic representation of the lip reed.

The pressure difference in Eq. (9.8) causes a volume flow velocity (in m<sup>3</sup>/s) and follows the Bernoulli equation

$$U_B = U_B(t) = w[y + H_0]_+ \operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p) \sqrt{\frac{2|\Delta p|}{\rho_0}}, \quad (9.9)$$

with effective lip-reed width  $w$  (in m), density of air  $\rho_0$  (in kg/m<sup>3</sup>), static equilibrium separation  $H_0$  (in m). Moreover,  $[\cdot]_+$  describes the ‘positive part of’ (see Chapter 10). The negative equilibrium separation  $-H_0$  can be seen as the location of the lower lip, and when  $y + H_0 \leq 0$ , the lips are closed and  $U_B$  is 0. Another volume flow (in m<sup>3</sup>/s) is generated by the lip reed itself according to

$$U_r = U_r(t) = S_r \dot{y}, \quad (9.10)$$

and assuming that the volume flow velocity is conserved, the total air volume entering the acoustic tube at the left boundary is defined as

$$S(0)v(0, t) = U_B(t) + U_r(t). \quad (9.11)$$

### Compact PDE

To reduce the number of variables in later derivations in this chapter, one can divide all terms in Eq. (9.7) by  $M$  to obtain

$$\ddot{y} = -\omega_0^2 y - \sigma_r \dot{y} + \frac{S_r}{M} \Delta p, \quad (9.12)$$

### 9.3. Discrete time

with angular frequency of the lip reed  $\omega_0 = \sqrt{K/M}$  (rad/s) and loss parameter  $\sigma_r = R/M$  ( $s^{-1}$ ).

## 9.3 Discrete time

Following [59],  $y$ ,  $\Delta p$ , and thereby  $U_B$  and  $U_r$  are placed on the interleaved temporal grid<sup>1</sup>, and the equations presented above can be discretised to the following system:

$$\delta_{tt}y^{n+1/2} = -\omega_0^2\mu_t.y^{n+1/2} - \sigma_r\delta_t.y^{n+1/2} + \frac{S_r}{M}\Delta p^{n+1/2}, \quad (9.13a)$$

$$\Delta p^{n+1/2} = P_m - \mu_{t+}p_0^n, \quad (9.13b)$$

$$U_B^{n+1/2} = w[y^{n+1/2} + H_0]_+ \operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p^{n+1/2}) \sqrt{\frac{2|\Delta p^{n+1/2}|}{\rho_0}}, \quad (9.13c)$$

$$U_r^{n+1/2} = S_r\delta_t.y^{n+1/2}, \quad (9.13d)$$

$$\mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}^{n+1/2}) = U_B^{n+1/2} + U_r^{n+1/2}. \quad (9.13e)$$

Here,  $p_0^n$  and  $S_{1/2}v_{1/2}^{n+1/2}$  are discrete values at the left boundary of an acoustic tube described by system (5.41). Expanding the operators in Eq. (9.13a) and solving for  $y^{n+3/2}$  yields

$$\alpha_r y^{n+3/2} = 4y^{n+1/2} + \beta_r y^{n-1/2} + \xi_r \Delta p^{n+1/2} \quad (9.14)$$

where (after a multiplication by 2 to reduce fractions)

$$\alpha_r = 2 + \omega_0^2 k^2 + \sigma_r k, \quad \beta_r = \sigma_r k - 2 - \omega_0^2 k^2, \quad \text{and} \quad \xi_r = \frac{2S_r k^2}{M}. \quad (9.15)$$

Although Eq. (9.14) seems to be implicitly dependent to the pressure difference  $\Delta p^{n+1/2}$  it is possible to explicitly solve it. A derivation is shown below.

### 9.3.1 Obtaining $\Delta p$

In the following, the superscript  $n + 1/2$  will be suppressed for  $y$ ,  $\Delta p$ ,  $U_B$ ,  $U_r$ ,  $S_{1/2}$  and  $v_{1/2}$  for brevity.

---

<sup>1</sup>The variables are placed on the non-interleaved spatial grid, as the lip reed interacts with the boundary of the tube ( $x = 0$ ).

**Rewrite Eq. (9.13a)**

Using identities (2.27a) and (2.27e), Eq. (9.13a) can be rewritten to

$$\frac{2}{k}(\delta_{t-} - \delta_{t+})y = -\omega_0^2(k\delta_{t-} + e_{t-})y - \sigma_r\delta_{t-}y + \frac{S_r}{M}\Delta p,$$

and, after grouping the terms,

$$a_1\delta_{t-}y - a_2\Delta p - a_3^n = 0, \quad (9.16)$$

where

$$a_1 = \frac{2}{k} + \omega_0^2 k + \sigma_r \geq 0, \quad a_2 = \frac{S_r}{M} \geq 0, \quad \text{and} \quad a_3^n = \left( \frac{2}{k}\delta_{t-} - \omega_0^2 e_{t-} \right) y. \quad (9.17)$$

Note that non-negativity property can be applied to  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  as these are calculated solely from non-negative parameters. Equation (9.13d) can then be substituted into Eq. (9.16)

$$\frac{a_1}{S_r}U_r - a_2\Delta p - a_3^n = 0,$$

and consequently Eq. (9.13e) to get

$$\frac{a_1}{S_r} \left( \mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}) - U_B \right) - a_2\Delta p - a_3^n = 0. \quad (9.18)$$

**Obtaining  $\mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2})$** 

To obtain a definition for  $\mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2})$ , one can use the FD scheme for the pressure of the first-order system in (5.41a) and evaluate this at  $l = 0$

$$\frac{\bar{S}_0}{\rho_0 c^2} \delta_{t+} p_0^n = -\delta_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}). \quad (9.19)$$

Using identity (2.27d) for  $\delta_{x-}$  and  $\delta_{t+}$ , this can be rewritten to

$$\frac{2\bar{S}_0}{\rho_0 c^2 k} (\mu_{t+} p_0^n - p_0^n) = \frac{2}{h} \left( \mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}) - S_{1/2}v_{1/2} \right). \quad (9.20)$$

and substituting Eq. (9.13b) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2\bar{S}_0}{\rho_0 c^2 k} (P_m - \Delta p - p_0^n) &= \frac{2}{h} \left( \mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}) - S_{1/2}v_{1/2} \right). \\ \mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}) &= b_1^n - b_2 \Delta p \end{aligned} \quad (9.21)$$

### 9.3. Discrete time

where

$$b_1^n = S_{1/2}v_{1/2} + \frac{\bar{S}_0 h}{\rho_0 c^2 k} (P_m - p_0^n), \quad \text{and} \quad b_2 = \frac{\bar{S}_0 h}{\rho_0 c^2 k} \geq 0. \quad (9.22)$$

#### Final steps

Equations (9.21) and (9.13c) can be substituted into Eq. (9.18) to get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a_1}{S_r} \left( b_1^n - b_2 \Delta p - w[y + H_0]_+ \operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p) \sqrt{\frac{2|\Delta p|}{\rho_0}} \right) - a_2 \Delta p - a_3^n &= 0, \\ -w[y + H_0]_+ \operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p) \sqrt{\frac{2|\Delta p|}{\rho_0}} - b_2 \Delta p - \frac{a_2 S_r}{a_1} \Delta p + b_1^n - \frac{a_3^n S_r}{a_1} &= 0, \\ -c_1^n \operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p) \sqrt{|\Delta p|} - c_2 \Delta p + c_3^n &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (9.23)$$

where

$$c_1^n = w[y + H_0]_+ \sqrt{\frac{2}{\rho_0}} \geq 0, \quad c_2 = b_2 + \frac{a_2 S_r}{a_1} \geq 0, \quad \text{and} \quad c_3^n = b_1^n - \frac{a_3^n S_r}{a_1}. \quad (9.24)$$

Equation (9.23) can be divided by  $-\operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p)$  to get a quadratic equation in  $\sqrt{|\Delta p|}$

$$c_2 |\Delta p| + c_1^n \sqrt{|\Delta p|} - \frac{c_3^n}{\operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p)} = 0. \quad (9.25)$$

As  $c_1^n, c_2 \geq 0$ , the following must be true for any real solutions to exist

$$\operatorname{sgn}(c_3^n) = \operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p) \implies \frac{c_3^n}{\operatorname{sgn}(\Delta p)} = |c_3^n|. \quad (9.26)$$

and one can solve for  $\sqrt{|\Delta p|}$ :

$$\sqrt{|\Delta p|} = \frac{-c_1^n \pm \sqrt{(c_1^n)^2 + 4c_2|c_3^n|}}{2c_2}. \quad (9.27)$$

Finally, because  $\sqrt{(c_1^n)^2 + 4c_2|c_3^n|} \geq c_1^n$ , one can only guarantee a positive solution if square root term is added. Using Eq. (9.26), the definition for the pressure difference can be found:

$$\Delta p = \operatorname{sgn}(c_3^n) \left( \frac{-c_1^n + \sqrt{(c_1^n)^2 + 4c_2|c_3^n|}}{2c_2} \right)^2. \quad (9.28)$$

which can be used in the update of the lip reed in Eq. (9.13a).

### 9.3.2 Coupling to the tube

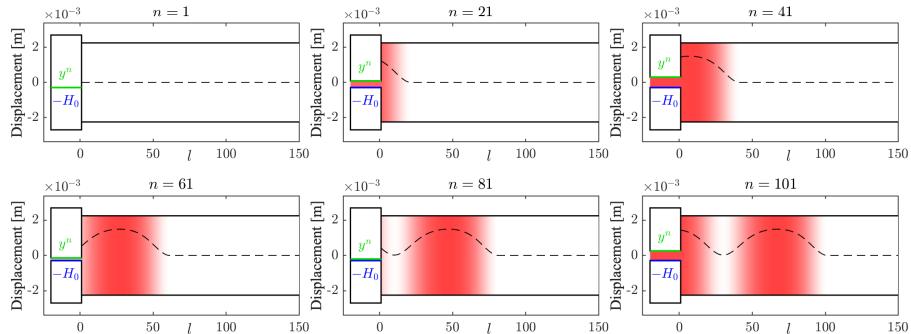
The coupling of the lip reed to the acoustic tube is easily done by rewriting Eq. (5.42a) evaluated at  $l = 0$  to

$$p_0^{n+1} = p_0^n - \frac{\rho_0 c \lambda}{S_0} \left( -2\mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}) + 2S_{1/2}v_{1/2} \right). \quad (9.29)$$

Equation (9.13e) can then be substituted to get

$$p_0^{n+1} = p_0^n - \frac{\rho_0 c \lambda}{S_0} \left( -2(U_B + U_r) + 2S_{1/2}v_{1/2} \right). \quad (9.30)$$

Figure 9.4 shows an implementation of the lip reed connected to an acoustic tube. The lip reed is shown on the left and the left boundary of the tube is on the right side of the lip reed. The frequency of the lips is set to  $f_0 = 600$  Hz ( $\omega_0 = 1200\pi$  rad/s), the input pressure  $P_m = 2000$  Pa and the other parameters are as listed in paper [H]. The initial conditions of the lip have been set to  $y^{1/2} = y^{3/2} = -H_0$  such that the lips are closed at the start of the simulation and the tube is cylindrical with a circular cross-section of  $S(x) = 5 \cdot 10^{-5}$ . The figure shows that the lips oscillate, and that when the lips are closed, i.e. when  $y \leq H_0$ , no energy enters the acoustic tube.<sup>2</sup>



**Fig. 9.4:** A lip reed (shown at the left side of the plots) exciting a cylindrical acoustic tube. The y-axis refers to the displacement of the lips and the pressure in the tube  $p_l^n$  is shown in red and highlighted with a dashed line (not related to the y-axis).

## 9.4 Energy analysis

This section performs an energy analysis on the lip reed system coupled to an acoustic tube using the steps described Section 3.4. As all physical parameters

<sup>2</sup>This is similar behaviour to what the pulse train in Section 7.2.2 attempts to model.

#### 9.4. Energy analysis

need to be written out to obtain the correct units, Eq. (9.7) is discretised to get

$$M\delta_{tt}y^{n+1/2} = -K\mu_t.y^{n+1/2} - R\delta_t.y^{n+1/2} + S_r\Delta p^{n+1/2}, \quad (9.31)$$

and will be used in this analysis. Again, the superscript  $n + 1/2$  will be suppressed for  $y, \Delta p, U_B, U_r, S_{1/2}$  and  $v_{1/2}$  for brevity.

##### Step 1: Obtain $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}$

Multiplying Eq. (9.31) by  $(\delta_t.y)$ , and moving all terms to the left-hand side, yields the rate of change of the energy in the lip reed  $\mathfrak{h}_r$

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}_r = M(\delta_t.y)(\delta_{tt}y) + K(\delta_t.y)(\mu_t.y) + R(\delta_t.y)^2 - S_r(\delta_t.y)\Delta p = 0.$$

One can substitute Eqs (9.13d), and (9.13e) thereafter, to get

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}_r &= M(\delta_t.y)(\delta_{tt}y) + K(\delta_t.y)(\mu_t.y) + R(\delta_t.y)^2 \\ &\quad - (\mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}) - U_B)\Delta p = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, substituting Eq. (9.13b), yields

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}_r &= M(\delta_t.y)(\delta_{tt}y) + K(\delta_t.y)(\mu_t.y) + R(\delta_t.y)^2 \\ &\quad + U_B\Delta p - \mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2})(P_m - \mu_{t+}p_0^n) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

One can then include the tube by recalling that  $\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}_t = -\mathfrak{b}_r + \mathfrak{b}_l$ , and that the left boundary term is defined as (Eq. (5.54))

$$\mathfrak{b}_l = (\mu_{t+}p_0)\mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2}),$$

and substituting this (ignoring the right boundary term, i.e.,  $\mathfrak{b}_r = 0$ ) to get

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_r + \mathfrak{h}_t) &= M(\delta_t.y)(\delta_{tt}y) + K(\delta_t.y)(\mu_t.y) + R(\delta_t.y)^2 \\ &\quad + U_B\Delta p - \mu_{x-}(S_{1/2}v_{1/2})P_m = 0. \end{aligned}$$

##### Step 2: Identify energy types and isolate $\delta_{t+}$

Using identities (3.17a) and (3.17d), the energy balance can be shown to be

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_t + \mathfrak{h}_r) = -\mathfrak{q}_r - \mathfrak{p}_r, \quad (9.32)$$

where the energy of the tube  $\mathfrak{h}_t$  is as defined in Eq. (5.57) and the energy of the mass is

$$\mathfrak{h}_r = \mathfrak{t}_r + \mathfrak{v}_r, \quad \text{with} \quad \mathfrak{t}_r = \frac{M}{2}(\delta_t.y)^2, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{v} = \frac{K}{2}\mu_{t-}(y^2). \quad (9.33)$$

Furthermore, the damping term is defined as

$$q_r = R(\delta_{t_r} y)^2 + U_B \Delta p, \quad (9.34)$$

and the input power as

$$p_r = -(U_B + U_r) P_m. \quad (9.35)$$

It is interesting to note that due to the choice of discretisation of the lip reed,  $t_r$ ,  $v_r$  and  $q_r$  are non-negative, making the lip reed strictly dissipative and thus inherently stable.

### Step 3: Check units

The kinetic and potential energy of the lip reed can be written in their units as

$$\begin{aligned} t_r &= \frac{M}{2} (\delta_{t_r} y)^2 \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{kg} \cdot (\text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m})^2 = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}, \\ v_r &= \frac{K}{2} \mu_{t_r} (y^2) \xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^2 = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-2}, \end{aligned}$$

and have the correct units. Recalling that the damping and input power terms need to have units of  $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-3}$ , writing the individual components of these terms in their respective units yields

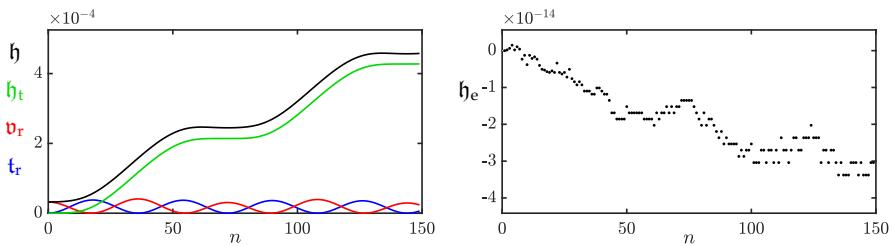
$$\begin{aligned} R(\delta_{t_r} y)^2 &\xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{kg} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot (\text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m})^2 = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-3}, \\ U_B \Delta p &\xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-2} = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-3}, \\ -(U_B + U_r) P_m &\xrightarrow{\text{in units}} \text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-2} = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-3}, \end{aligned}$$

and shows that the units are indeed correct.

### Step 4: Implementation

Figure 9.5 shows the energetic output of the lip reed exciting coupled to an acoustic tube corresponding to the behaviour shown in Figure 9.4. The total energy of the system increases due to the input pressure and is mainly transferred to the tube. The oscillations of the lip reed can be observed from the oscillations in its kinetic and potential energy. The normalised energy (using Eq. (3.38)) does not include the first time index as one full iteration of the coupling is necessary to yield a correct energy calculation. Instead, one starts at  $n = 1$  and uses  $\hbar^1$  instead of  $\hbar_0$  in Eq. (3.38). [Check with stefan](#)

#### 9.4. Energy analysis



**Fig. 9.5:** The energy of the acoustic tube (green), the potential energy (red) and the kinetic energy of the lip reed (blue), and the total energy (black) of the system corresponding to Figure 9.4. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.38) starting at  $n = 1$ ) shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

## Chapter 9. Lip Reed

# **Part IV**

# **Interactions**



# Interactions

Part II introduced various resonators in isolation. Most musical instruments are composed of several individual systems which all interact with one another. The following chapters will describe different ways of interaction between individual resonators.

Chapter 10 describes collision interactions between different systems and has been used for the interactions between the different components of the tromba marina in papers [D] and [E]. Furthermore, the theory described in this chapter has been used for the collision between the lips that excite the trombone in paper [H]. Then, Chapter 11 describes various connections between models and has been used extensively for papers [A] and [B]. Furthermore, the dynamic grid presented in paper [G], uses the principles described in this chapter.



# Chapter 10

## Collisions

Many musical instruments rely on collisions in some shape or form. Examples are the collision between a hammer and a piano string, a guitar pick and the string, and even the collision between the lips of a trumpet player.

This work uses collision models that rely on penalising methods. The colliding objects – although possibly perfectly rigid – are supposed to inter-penetrate, and collision is interpreted as a *penalty*. The eventual force acting on the colliding objects is then dependent on the level of penetration. For deformable objects, such as the hammer felt tip of a piano, the penalty is dependent on the level of deformation. These collision models were first used in a musical context by e.g. [92, 93].

The discretisations proposed in [92, 93] rely on implicit nonlinear schemes which require an iterative method, such as the Newton-Raphson method presented in Section 8.3, to obtain their solution. The exact number of iterations required per time step, especially in interactive applications, is usually unknown. This could be detrimental to real-time applications, as the number of iterations, and consequently the extra number of computations, could be very large in a particular situation. Furthermore, and perhaps more importantly, existence and uniqueness of the solution might not be available.

In [94] (co-authored by the PhD student [O3]), Ducceschi et al. propose a method based on quadratisation of the collision potential energy, that circumvents the need of an iterative method to solve nonlinear collisions. Energy quadratisation for explicit schemes first appeared in the context of Port-Hamiltonian systems and was due to Lopes et al. in [95]. The introduction of an additional state variable, which is what Ducceschi's work is based on, was introduced in [96, 97]. Papers [D] and [E] follow an earlier iteration of the non-iterative collision algorithm from [98, 99] which exhibited spurious oscillations that Ducceschi et al. resolve in [94]. Paper [H] uses the corrected collision model for the collision between the lips exciting the trombone. The

corrected model will be used in this work and presented in this chapter.

This chapter first provides a definition for the collision potential as well as its quadratisation, used as the basis for the explicit method. Then, the method will be applied to a simple mass-barrier collision and finally, to a mass-spring – string collision which can be used to model a finger-fretted string.

### Collision potential

Collisions can be modelled using a nonlinear *collision potential*, which can be defined as

$$\phi(\eta) = \frac{K_c}{\alpha_c + 1} [\eta]_+^{\alpha_c + 1}, \quad (10.1)$$

with collision stiffness  $K_c \geq 0$  (in N/m $^{\alpha_c}$ ) and dimensionless nonlinear collision coefficient  $\alpha_c \geq 1$ . Here  $\eta = \eta(t)$  describes the relative displacement between the two colliding bodies (in m). The  $[\cdot]_+$  operator, defined as

$$[\cdot]_+ = \frac{\cdot + |\cdot|}{2}, \quad (10.2)$$

describes the ‘positive part of’ and when applied to  $\eta$  in Eq. (10.1) causes the potential  $\phi$  to only be non-zero when the two colliding bodies are in contact.

The derivative of Eq. (10.1) with respect to  $\eta$  is defined as

$$\phi'(\eta) = K_c [\eta]_+^{\alpha_c} \quad (10.3)$$

and can then be used in the PDE at hand.

The issue with this form of the collision potential, is that an iterative method, such as Newton-Raphson presented in Section 8.3, needs to be used in order to solve the system [94].

### Quadratic form

In [94], the authors propose to rewrite the potential in Eq. (10.3) in a quadratic form. Using the chain rule and  $\psi = \psi(\eta)$ , Eq. (10.3) can be rewritten as

$$\phi'(\eta) = \psi \psi' \quad \text{where} \quad \psi = \sqrt{2\phi} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi' = \frac{\dot{\psi}}{\dot{\eta}}, \quad (10.4)$$

where a dot denotes a single derivative with respect to time.

This form of the potential can be discretised to a FD scheme that can be solved explicitly. This process will be shown below, using an example of the simple mass – rigid barrier collision.

## 10.1 The mass – rigid barrier collision

As a test case, a mass colliding with a rigid barrier is presented here, which is arguably the simplest case of a collision. Consider a mass at location  $u = u(t)$  (in m) colliding with a barrier at location  $b$  (in m).

If the barrier is placed above the mass, the force it exerts on the mass will be negative and its system would be described as

$$M\ddot{u} = -\psi\psi', \quad (10.5)$$

with mass  $M$  (in kg) and  $\psi = \psi(\eta)$  and  $\psi'$  are as defined in Eq. (10.4) with  $\eta = \eta(t) = u(t) - b$ .

Looking towards the discretisation the mass-barrier collision, one could use the definitions in Eq. (10.4) to rewrite Eq. (10.5) to the following system of equations

$$M\ddot{u} = -\psi g, \quad (10.6a)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = g\dot{\eta}, \quad (10.6b)$$

$$\eta(t) = u(t) - b, \quad (10.6c)$$

where  $g = \psi'$ .

### Relative location of objects

When working with multiple interacting objects, it is important to consider whether an object is located ‘above’ or ‘below’ the other, i.e., which (generally) has a more positive or negative displacement than the other. A mass with a displacement of 0.01 m will thus be ‘above’ a barrier with a displacement of  $-0.05$  m. Along these lines, a positive force acting on an element will accelerate it upwards and a negative force will accelerate it downwards.

The relative location of the two colliding objects will affect two things in system (10.6):

Firstly, the location of the object determines the direction of the collision force, i.e., the sign of the right-hand side in system (10.6). In this case, the barrier is placed above the mass, and will exert a downwards (negative) force on the mass during collision. If the barrier was placed below the mass, the opposite would have applied.

Secondly, the definition of  $\eta$  in (10.6c) is affected by the relative location of the objects. The collision potential in Eq. (10.1) is only non-zero when  $\eta$  is positive. If the barrier is placed above the mass,  $u(t) - b$  will be positive on collision. It is thus important to remember that  $\eta$  should be defined as the element above subtracted from the element below.

### 10.1.1 Discrete time

Before discretising system (10.6) in full, the discrete approximation to the collision potential will be elaborated on. Following [94],  $\psi$  is placed on an interleaved temporal grid (see Section 5.2.2) using

$$\psi^{n-1/2} = \mu_{t-}\psi^n, \quad (10.7)$$

where the interleaved temporal grid is used here as it results in energy conservation in discrete time (see Section 10.1.3). Approximations to  $\psi$  and  $g$  in Eq. (10.6) can then be made as

$$\psi \approx \mu_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2} \quad (10.8)$$

and

$$g \approx g^n = \frac{\delta_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2}}{\delta_{t-}\eta^n}, \quad (10.9)$$

respectively. Notice that applying a first-order difference operator to a grid function on an interleaved grid is second-order accurate.<sup>1</sup> The result of the approximation in Eq. (10.9) allows  $\psi$  to be treated as an independent time series:

$$\delta_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2} = g^n \delta_{t-}\eta^n. \quad (10.10)$$

With the above approximations in place, system (10.6) can be discretised and yields the following system of equations:

$$M\delta_{tt}u^n = -\left(\mu_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2}\right)g^n, \quad (10.11a)$$

$$\delta_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2} = g^n \delta_{t-}\eta^n, \quad (10.11b)$$

$$\eta^n = u^n - b. \quad (10.11c)$$

#### An explicit definition for $g^n$

To be able to calculate  $\psi^{n+1/2}$  and  $u^{n+1}$  in system (10.11) explicitly, a definition for  $g^n$  only based on known values must be found. As  $g^n \approx \psi'$  as per Eq. (10.9), the derivative can be computed analytically according to

$$g^n = \psi' \Big|_{\eta=\eta^n} \stackrel{\text{Eq. (10.4)}}{=} \frac{\phi'}{\sqrt{2\phi}} \Big|_{\eta=\eta^n}. \quad (10.12)$$

---

<sup>1</sup>  $\delta_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2} \stackrel{\text{Eq. (10.9)}}{=} \delta_{t+}\mu_{t-}\psi^n \stackrel{\text{Eq. (2.27b)}}{=} \delta_{t-}\psi^n$  which is second-order accurate (see Section 2.2.2).

### 10.1. The mass – rigid barrier collision

Recalling (10.3) and (10.1), this can conveniently be rewritten to

$$g^n = \frac{K_c [\eta^n]_+^{\alpha_c}}{\sqrt{\frac{2K_c}{\alpha_c+1} [\eta^n]_+^{\alpha_c+1}}} = K_c \sqrt{\frac{\alpha_c+1}{2K_c}} [\eta^n]_+^{\alpha_c} [\eta^n]_+^{-\frac{(\alpha_c+1)}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{K_c(\alpha_c+1)}{2}} [\eta^n]_+^{\frac{\alpha_c-1}{2}}. \quad (10.13)$$

For implementation purposes, one can expand the  $[\cdot]_+$  operator as the following (equivalent) condition:

$$g^n = \begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{K_c(\alpha_c+1)}{2}} \cdot (\eta^n)^{\frac{\alpha_c-1}{2}} & \text{if } \eta^n \geq 0 \\ 0, & \text{if } \eta^n < 0 \end{cases} \quad (10.14a)$$

$$(10.14b)$$

This implementation is the one presented in [98], but exhibited spurious oscillations and ‘sticking’ behaviour. This is due to the possibility of negative forces for positive penetrations due to the discontinuity in the definition for  $g^n$  at  $\eta^n = 0$ .

In [94], the definition for  $g^n$  in (10.14) is extended, starting out by using an implicit equation for  $g^n$  by directly discretising Eq. (10.9)

$$g_{\text{imp}}^n = 2 \frac{\psi^{n+1/2} - \psi^{n-1/2}}{\eta^{n+1} - \eta^{n-1}}. \quad (10.15)$$

If there is, however, no collision at  $n + 1/2$ ,  $\psi^{n+1/2} = 0$  and Eq. (10.15) reduces to

$$g_{\text{imp}}^n = -2 \frac{\psi^{n-1/2}}{\eta^{n+1} - \eta^{n-1}}.$$

Furthermore, due to the fact that there is no collision,  $\eta^{n+1}$  can be calculated according to  $\eta^{n+1} = \eta^* = u^* - b$ , where  $u^*$  is the value of  $u^{n+1}$  calculated using the scheme in Eq. (10.11a) without the collision force. Expanding Eq. (10.11a) without the collision force yields

$$\frac{M}{k^2} (u^* - 2u^n + u^{n-1}) = 0 \implies u^* = 2u^n - u^{n-1}.$$

Thus, if there is no collision,  $g_{\text{imp}}^n$  can now be explicitly calculated from known values and be used in the definition for  $g^n$  in Eq. (10.14) according to [94]

$$g^n = \begin{cases} \kappa \sqrt{\frac{K_c(\alpha_c+1)}{2}} \cdot (\eta^n)^{\frac{\alpha_c-1}{2}} & \text{if } \eta^n \geq 0, \end{cases} \quad (10.16a)$$

$$\begin{cases} -2 \frac{\psi^{n-1/2}}{\eta^* - \eta^{n-1}} & \text{if } \eta^n < 0 \text{ and } \eta^* \neq \eta^{n-1}, \end{cases} \quad (10.16b)$$

$$\begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } \eta^n < 0 \text{ and } \eta^* = \eta^{n-1}. \end{cases} \quad (10.16c)$$

Here,  $\kappa = 1$  if  $\psi^{n-1/2} \geq 0$ , otherwise  $\kappa = -1$  and aims to resolve the ‘sticking’ behaviour by forcing an outwardly-directed force at all times. As was done in paper [H], condition (10.16c) has been added to the definition of  $g^n$  from [94] to prevent a division by 0 in Eq. (10.16b).

This definition for  $g^n$  does not exhibit the spurious oscillations that the old definition in Eq. (10.14) did, and can still be explicitly calculated from known values of the system.

### 10.1.2 Solving the system

To implement the system in Eq. (10.11), its definitions need to be slightly rewritten. Using identity (2.27c),  $\mu_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2}$  can be rewritten to

$$\mu_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2} = \frac{k}{2}\delta_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2} + \psi^{n-1/2}.$$

Then, substituting (10.11b) into this, yields

$$\mu_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2} = \frac{k}{2}g^n\delta_t.\eta^n + \psi^{n-1/2},$$

and inserting this into (10.11a), yields

$$M\delta_{tt}u^n = -\left(\frac{k}{2}g^n\delta_t.\eta^n + \psi^{n-1/2}\right)g^n. \quad (10.17)$$

As the position of barrier  $b$  is static, the following is true:

$$\frac{d\eta}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(u - b) \implies \delta_t.\eta^n = \delta_t.u^n, \quad (10.18)$$

i.e., the time derivative of  $\eta$  equals the time derivative of  $u$ .<sup>2</sup> Eq. (10.17) can now be solved explicitly as  $u^{n+1}$  is the only unknown in the system

$$\left(\frac{M}{k^2} + \frac{(g^n)^2}{4}\right)u^{n+1} = \frac{M}{k^2}(2u^n - u^{n-1}) + \frac{(g^n)^2}{4}u^{n-1} - \psi^{n-1/2}g^n, \quad (10.19)$$

and can be solved by a simple division.

Finally,  $u^{n+1}$  can be used to calculate  $\eta^{n+1}$  by evaluating (10.11c) at  $n + 1$ :

$$\eta^{n+1} = u^{n+1} - b, \quad (10.20)$$

---

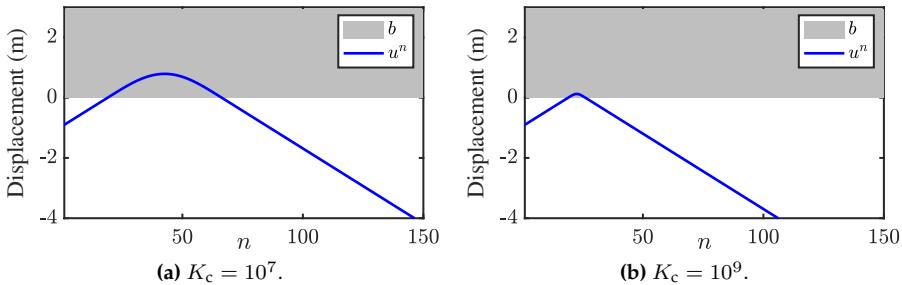
<sup>2</sup>Note that if the barrier was placed underneath the mass, making (10.11c)  $\eta^n = b - u^n$ , this would result in  $\delta_t.\eta^n = -\delta_t.u^n$ .

### 10.1. The mass – rigid barrier collision

which is used to calculate  $\psi^{n+1/2}$  by expanding and rewriting (10.11b) to

$$\psi^{n+1/2} = \psi^{n-1/2} + \frac{\eta^{n+1} - \eta^{n-1}}{2}. \quad (10.21)$$

Figure 10.1 shows the mass – rigid barrier collision over time for two values of  $K_c$ . The mass is initialised with an initial (upwards) velocity using  $u^0 = -1$  m and  $u^1 = -0.95$  m. The figure shows that the penetration of the mass with the barrier causes a downwards force on the mass. As expected, this force is higher for a larger value of  $K_c$  and causes the mass to accelerate downwards more quickly.



**Fig. 10.1:** The mass – rigid barrier collision over time with  $\alpha_c = 1.3$  for different values of  $K_c$ .

### 10.1.3 Energy analysis

To prove that the collision term does not add any additional energy into the system (retaining passivity) and that it does not add additional constraints on the stability of the system, the energy analysis techniques presented in Section 3.4 can be used. Notice that for brevity, the steps presented in Section 3.4 will not explicitly be followed.

Multiplying Eq. (10.11a) by  $(\delta_t.u^n)$  yields

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}_m = - \left( \mu_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2} \right) g^n(\delta_t.u^n)$$

where the energy of the mass is defined as (see Eq. (3.42))

$$\mathfrak{h}_m = \frac{M}{2}(\delta_{t-}u^n)^2. \quad (10.22)$$

Expanding  $g^n$  yields

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}_m &= -\left(\mu_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2}\right) \frac{\delta_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2}}{\delta_{t+}\eta^n} (\delta_{t+}u^n) \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{Eq. (10.18)}} = -\left(\mu_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2}\right) \delta_{t+}\psi^{n-1/2}, \end{aligned}$$

which, using identity (3.17c), can be rewritten to

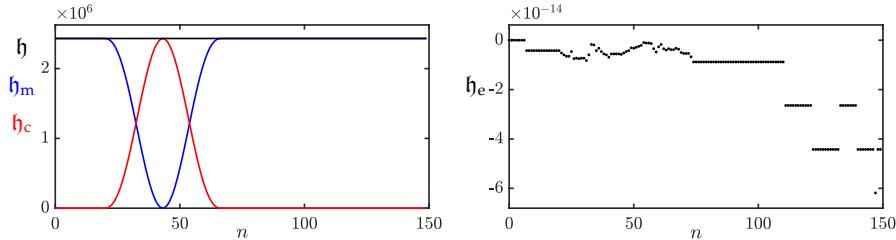
$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_m + \mathfrak{h}_c) = 0, \quad (10.23)$$

with collision energy

$$\mathfrak{h}_c = \frac{(\psi^{n-1/2})^2}{2}. \quad (10.24)$$

Recall that in order for a scheme to be passive, its energy must be non-negative, and the fact that  $\psi$  is squared proves passivity for system (10.11).

Figure 10.2 shows the energetic output of the mass – rigid barrier collision corresponding to Figure 10.1a. The left panel shows that the kinetic energy of the mass is transferred into the energy of the collision, after which it is converted into kinetic energy of the mass again.



**Fig. 10.2:** The energy of the mass (blue), the collision (green) and the total energy (black) of the mass – rigid barrier collision. The energy corresponds to the behaviour in Figure 10.1a. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37)) shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

## 10.2 Mass-spring – string collision

The mass-spring – string collision is slightly trickier than the mass – rigid barrier collision, as there are two moving components rather than one. This system is chosen as an example as it has the interesting use-case of fretting a string to change the pitch, modelling the fretting finger as a mass.

Consider a lossless stiff string of length  $L$ , its transverse displacement described by  $u = u(x, t)$  (in m) and defined for  $t \geq 0$  and  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  with domain

## 10.2. Mass-spring – string collision

$\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$ . The mass with displacement  $w = w(t)$  (in m) and  $t \geq 0$  will model the fretting finger. The PDE for the stiff string and its parameter definitions can be found in Eq. (4.1) and for the mass-spring system in Eq. (2.28). Placing the string above the mass, the following system emerges:

$$\rho A \partial_t^2 u = T \partial_x^2 u - EI \partial_x^4 u + \delta(x - x_m) \psi g \quad (10.25a)$$

$$M \ddot{w} = -Kw - \psi g \quad (10.25b)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = g \dot{\eta}, \quad (10.25c)$$

$$\eta(t) = w(t) - u(x_m, t), \quad (10.25d)$$

where spatial Dirac delta function  $\delta(x - x_m)$  localises the mass (finger) along the string at location  $x_m \in \mathcal{D}$  (see Eq. (8.8)). Furthermore,  $\psi = \psi(\eta)$  and  $g = \psi'$  are as defined in Eq. (10.4).

Discretising system (10.25), with the collision discretised according to the process explained in Section 10.1, yields

$$\rho A \delta_{tt} u_l^n = T \delta_{xx} u_l^n - EI \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n + J_l(x_m) (\mu_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2}) g^n, \quad (10.26a)$$

$$M \delta_{tt} w^n = -Kw^n - (\mu_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2}) g^n, \quad (10.26b)$$

$$\delta_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2} = g^n \delta_{t.} \eta^n, \quad (10.26c)$$

$$\eta^n = w^n - I_l(x_m) u_l^n, \quad (10.26d)$$

where  $l \in d$  with discrete domain  $d = \{0, \dots, N\}$  and number of grid points along the string  $N + 1$ . Furthermore, spreading and interpolation operators  $I_l(x_m) = I_{l,o}(x_m)$  and  $J_l(x_m) = J_{l,o}(x_m)$  are as defined in Section 8.2. The order  $o$  is left unspecified. Following the same process as in Section 10.1.2, Eqs. (10.26a) and (10.26b) can be rewritten to

$$\rho A \delta_{tt} u_l^n = T \delta_{xx} u_l^n - EI \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n + J_l(x_m) \left( \frac{k}{2} g^n \delta_{t.} \eta^n + \psi^{n-1/2} \right) g^n, \quad (10.27a)$$

$$M \delta_{tt} w^n = -Kw^n - \left( \frac{k}{2} g^n \delta_{t.} \eta^n + \psi^{n-1/2} \right) g^n, \quad (10.27b)$$

which can be used as a starting point for solving the system.

### 10.2.1 Solving the system

As the colliding objects are both moving, Eq. (10.18) is not valid anymore and another strategy needs to be used. To start, one must isolate the string at the collision location  $x_m$  by taking an inner product of Eq. (10.27a) with  $J_l(x_m)$

over discrete domain  $d$ . Using identity (8.9) and dividing all terms by  $\rho A$  yields

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{tt} I_l(x_m) u_l^n &= c^2 I_l(x_m) \delta_{xx} u_l^n - \kappa^2 I_l(x_m) \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n \\ &\quad + \frac{\|J_l(x_m)\|_d^2}{\rho A} \left( \frac{k}{2} g^n \delta_t \eta^n + \psi^{n-1/2} \right) g^n.\end{aligned}$$

with  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho A}$  and  $\kappa = \sqrt{EI/\rho A}$ . Expanding the temporal FD operators yields

$$I_l(x_m) u_l^{n+1} = u^* + \underbrace{\frac{\|J_l(x_m)\|_d^2 k^2}{\rho A}}_{\mathfrak{J}_l} \left( \frac{(g^n)^2}{4} (\eta^{n+1} - \eta^{n-1}) + \psi^{n-1/2} g^n \right), \quad (10.28)$$

where

$$u^* = I_l(x_m) (2u_l^n - u_l^{n-1}) + c^2 k^2 I_l(x_m) \delta_{xx} u_l^n - \kappa^2 k^2 I_l(x_m) \delta_{xxxx} u_l^n$$

is the result of the update equation of the string at  $x_m$  without the collision term. Then, Eq. (10.26d) evaluated at  $n+1$ , which is  $\eta^{n+1} = w^{n+1} - I_l(x_m) u_l^{n+1}$ , can be substituted into Eq. (10.28), which results in

$$\begin{aligned}\left( 1 + \mathfrak{J}_l \frac{(g^n)^2}{4} \right) I_l(x_m) u_l^{n+1} - \mathfrak{J}_l \frac{(g^n)^2}{4} w^{n+1} &= u^* \\ &\quad + \mathfrak{J}_l \left( -\frac{(g^n)^2}{4} \eta^{n-1} + \psi^{n-1/2} g^n \right).\end{aligned} \quad (10.29)$$

Performing this same process on the FD scheme of the mass in Eq. (10.27b) yields

$$\begin{aligned}-\frac{(g^n)^2 k^2}{4M} I_l(x_m) u_l^{n+1} + \left( 1 + \frac{(g^n)^2 k^2}{4M} \right) w^{n+1} &= w^* \\ &\quad - \frac{k^2}{M} \left( -\frac{(g^n)^2}{4} \eta^{n-1} + \psi^{n-1/2} g^n \right),\end{aligned} \quad (10.30)$$

where

$$w^* = 2w^n - w^{n-1} - \frac{Kk^2}{M} w^n$$

is (again) the result of the update equation of the mass without the collision term. Equations (10.29) and (10.30) can be treated as a system of linear equations (see Section B.3) with unknowns  $I_l(x_m) u_l^{n+1}$  and  $w^{n+1}$ . Writing the

## 10.2. Mass-spring – string collision

aforementioned equations in matrix form yields

$$\begin{bmatrix} I_l(x_m) u_l^{n+1} \\ w^{n+1} \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{v} \quad (10.31)$$

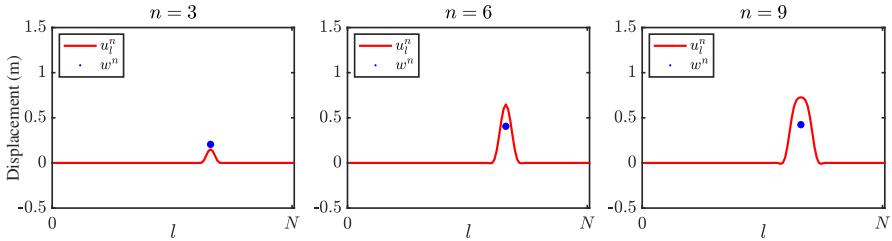
where

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \left(1 + \mathfrak{J}_l \frac{(g^n)^2}{4}\right) & -\mathfrak{J}_l \frac{(g^n)^2}{4} \\ -\frac{(g^n)^2 k^2}{4M} & \left(1 + \frac{(g^n)^2 k^2}{4M}\right) \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and}$$

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} u^* + \mathfrak{J}_l \left(-\frac{(g^n)^2}{4} \eta^{n-1} + \psi^{n-1/2} g^n\right) \\ w^* - \frac{k^2}{M} \left(-\frac{(g^n)^2}{4} \eta^{n-1} + \psi^{n-1/2} g^n\right) \end{bmatrix}.$$

From this,  $\eta^{n+1}$  can be calculated, and can consequently be applied to the string and mass in system (10.27).

Figure 10.3 shows an implementation of the mass spring collision. The mass is initialised with an upwards initial velocity, where  $w^0 = -0.2$ ,  $w^1 = -0.1$ , and collides with the string almost instantly after the start of the simulation. As the first panel shows, the collision model allows for interpenetration of the objects. Immediately after, the collision force accelerates the string upwards and the mass downwards.



**Fig. 10.3:** The collision of the mass (blue) and the string (red). The collision model allows for interpenetration of the objects as shown in the left panel.

### 10.2.2 Energy analysis

This section follows Section 3.4 without explicitly following the steps for brevity.

One can obtain the energy of the stiff string FD scheme in Eq. (10.26a) by taking the inner product of scheme by  $(\delta_t u_l^n)$  over discrete domain  $d$  to obtain

$$\delta_{t+} h_s = \left\langle (\delta_t u_l^n), J_l(x_m) \left( \mu_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2} \right) g^n \right\rangle_d \quad (10.32)$$

where the energy of the string is (see Eq. (4.32))

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{h}_s &= \mathfrak{t}_s + \mathfrak{v}_s, \quad \text{with} \quad \mathfrak{t}_s = \frac{\rho A}{2} \|\delta_{t-} u_l^n\|_d^2, \quad \text{and} \\ \mathfrak{v}_s &= \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_d + \frac{EI}{2} \langle \delta_{xx} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_d.\end{aligned}$$

Energy analysis for the mass in Eq. (10.26b) can be done by multiplying the scheme by  $(\delta_t w^n)$  to get

$$\delta_{t+} \mathfrak{h}_m = -(\delta_t w^n) \left( \mu_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2} \right) g^n, \quad (10.33)$$

where (see Eq. (3.42))

$$\mathfrak{h}_m = \mathfrak{t}_m + \mathfrak{v}_m, \quad \text{with} \quad \mathfrak{t}_m = \frac{M}{2} (\delta_{t-} w^n)^2, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{v}_m = \frac{K}{2} w^n e_{t-} w^n.$$

The total energy in the system is the addition of Eqs. (10.32) and (10.33), which, using identity (8.9) for the former, can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{t+} (\mathfrak{h}_s + \mathfrak{h}_m) &= \left( I_l(x_m) (\delta_t u_l^n) - (\delta_t w^n) \right) \left( \mu_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2} \right) g^n, \\ &= \underbrace{\delta_t. (I_l(x_m) u_l^n - w^n)}_{-\delta_t. \eta^n} \left( \mu_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2} \right) g^n.\end{aligned}$$

Then, expanding  $g^n$  according to Eq. (10.9) yields

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{t+} (\mathfrak{h}_s + \mathfrak{h}_m) &= -\delta_t. \eta^n \left( \mu_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2} \right) \frac{\delta_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2}}{\delta_t. \eta^n} \\ &= -\left( \mu_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2} \right) \delta_{t+} \psi^{n-1/2}\end{aligned}$$

which, using identity (3.17c), can be rewritten as

$$\delta_{t+} (\mathfrak{h}_s + \mathfrak{h}_m + \mathfrak{h}_c) = 0, \quad (10.34)$$

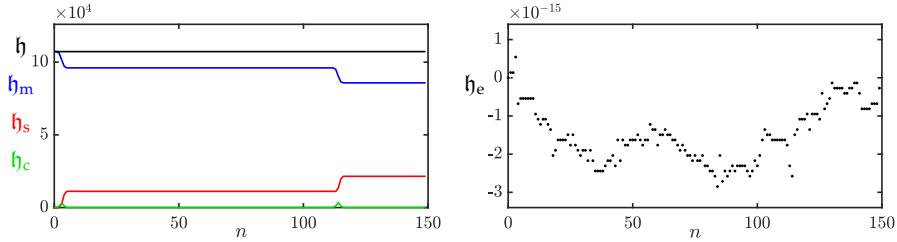
with collision energy

$$\mathfrak{h}_c = \frac{(\psi^{n-1/2})^2}{2}.$$

Again, the fact that  $\psi$  is squared here, means that  $\mathfrak{h}_c$  is non-negative, and proves passivity of the system.

Figure 10.4 shows the energy of the mass-spring collision corresponding to the behaviour shown in Figure 10.3. One can observe that energy of the mass is transferred to the string almost immediately after the start of the simulation. Furthermore, the figure shows that the mass and the string collide again at

$n \approx 110$ . The interpenetration of the two colliding objects can be observed from the small peaks in the value for  $\hbar_c$  at these times.



**Fig. 10.4:** The energy of the mass (blue), the string (red), the collision (green) and the total energy (black) of the mass-string collision. The energy corresponds to the system in Figure 10.3. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37)) shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

### 10.3 Two-sided collision: A connection

Using the methods presented in this chapter, one could devise a two-sided collision and alter the collision potential in Eq. (10.1) to [99]

$$\phi(\eta) = \frac{K}{\alpha_c + 1} |\eta|^{\alpha_c + 1}, \quad (10.35)$$

and taking its derivative with respect to  $\eta$  yields

$$\phi'(\eta) = \text{sgn}(\eta) K |\eta|^{\alpha_c}. \quad (10.36)$$

One can observe that, as opposed to the (one-sided) potential presented in Eq. (10.1), the collision force will be non-zero, for both a positive and negative  $\eta$ . This two-sided collision can be used as a connection – as an alternative to connections presented in Chapter 11 – and has been used in papers [D] and [E] in combination with Eq. (10.1) to model the mechanics of the tromba marina. See Chapter 15 for more details.

## Chapter 10. Collisions

# Chapter 11

## Connections

Many musical instruments consist of multiple subsystems like the ones presented in Part II. For example, one could simulate a guitar by modelling six separate instances of the stiff string presented in Chapter 4, and the sound board (as a simplified instrument body), using a thin plate presented in Section 6.3. The interaction between the strings and the body can then be modelled using *connections*.

Examples of connected resonators based on FDTD methods are shown in e.g. [2] and [51]. The latter presents a modular approach to connect any number of resonators in arbitrary ways using an extremely compact matrix form of the entire system.

The first example presented in this chapter is the case of two ideal strings, connected using a rigid and spring-like connection. Afterwards, the connection between a stiff string and a thin plate using a nonlinear spring will be presented, and has been used extensively in papers [A] and [B].

Before moving on to these examples, interpolation and spreading operators in 2D will be presented.

### 11.1 Interpolation and spreading in 2D

One can extend the interpolation and spreading operators presented in Section 8.2 to 2D by adding an additional argument to the operators [2]. Using  $l_i = \lfloor x_i/h \rfloor$  and  $m_i = \lfloor y_i/h \rfloor$ , a 0<sup>th</sup>-order interpolation operator  $I_0(x_i, y_i) = I_{(l,m),0}(x_i, y_i)$  is defined as

$$I_0(x_i, y_i) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } l = l_i \text{ and } m = m_i, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (11.1)$$

Notice that the same value for the grid spacing  $h$  is used for both the  $x$  and  $y$  direction.

Using the fractional part of the flooring operations  $\alpha_x = x_i/h - l_i$  and  $\alpha_y = y_i/h - m_i$ , a 2D linear interpolator  $I_1(x_i, y_i) = I_{(l,m),1}(x_i, y_i)$  can then be composed as

$$I_1(x_i, y_i) = \begin{cases} (1 - \alpha_x)(1 - \alpha_y) & \text{if } l = l_i \text{ and } m = m_i, \\ (1 - \alpha_x)\alpha_y & \text{if } l = l_i \text{ and } m = m_i + 1, \\ \alpha_x(1 - \alpha_y) & \text{if } l = l_i + 1 \text{ and } m = m_i, \\ \alpha_x\alpha_y & \text{if } l = l_i + 1 \text{ and } m = m_i + 1, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (11.2)$$

Spreading operators are defined in the same way as in Section 8.2. A 0<sup>th</sup>-order spreading operator  $J_0(x_i, y_i) = J_{(l,m),0}(x_i, y_i)$  can be defined as

$$J_0(x_i, y_i) = \frac{1}{h^2} \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } l = l_i \text{ and } m = m_i, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (11.3)$$

as well as a linear spreading operator  $J_1(x_i, y_i) = J_{(l,m),1}(x_i, y_i)$  as

$$J_1(x_i, y_i) = \frac{1}{h^2} \begin{cases} (1 - \alpha_x)(1 - \alpha_y) & \text{if } l = l_i \text{ and } m = m_i, \\ (1 - \alpha_x)\alpha_y & \text{if } l = l_i \text{ and } m = m_i + 1, \\ \alpha_x(1 - \alpha_y) & \text{if } l = l_i + 1 \text{ and } m = m_i, \\ \alpha_x\alpha_y & \text{if } l = l_i + 1 \text{ and } m = m_i + 1, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (11.4)$$

Notice that the scaling is by  $1/h^2$  (due to the 2D system) rather than  $1/h$  in the 1D case. Some intuition on this will be given below.

As in the 1D case, the spreading operator approximates a spatial Dirac delta function which – in 2D – is defined as

$$\delta(x, y) = \begin{cases} \infty, & x = y = 0, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(x, y) dx dy = 1. \quad (11.5)$$

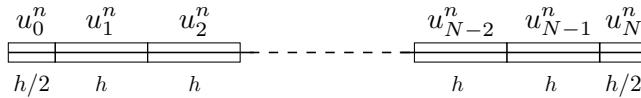
where  $\delta(x, y)$  has units of  $\text{m}^{-2}$ . Again, as described in Section 8.2, this definition will be approximated by spreading operators, rather than be used directly.

### 11.1.1 Alternative interpretation of grid points

Section 2.2.1 gives an introduction to how a continuous 1D system is subdivided into grid points in space (see Figure 2.2) through the discretisation

process. An alternative way to see grid points after discretisation is shown in Figure 11.1. Rather than grid ‘points’ with a spacing  $h$  between them, a continuous system is divided into grid ‘sections’ of width  $h$ . This interpretation allows for the ‘weight’ of a grid point to be calculated from its material properties and geometry. Notice that boundaries have a width of  $h/2$  such that the total length  $L = Nh$  m.

As an example, the weight of one grid point (or now rather grid section) of a string can be calculated as  $\rho Ah$ . The weight of one grid point of a 2D system can be calculated as  $\rho Hh^2$ . As these grid points interact with each other, the forces resulting from this interaction will scaled by their respective weight per grid point as will be shown in Section 11.5. This interpretation hopefully provides a better intuition for the interactions between components shown in this chapter.



**Fig. 11.1:** Alternative interpretation of the discretisation of  $u(x, t)$  to a grid function  $u_i^n$ . The continuous system is divided into  $N - 1$  sections of width  $h$  plus 2 sections of width  $h/2$  at the boundaries. Through this interpretation, the ‘weight’ of a grid point can be calculated from its physical parameters.

## 11.2 Connected ideal strings

One finds that when working with multiple interacting systems, notation becomes extremely important. Subscripts will be extensively used in the following extra clarity, and although this results in something of a notational jungle, it is better to be explicit and avoid confusion in the end.

As a test case for the following sections, consider two ideal strings<sup>1</sup> of length  $L_u$  and  $L_w$  (both in m) their transverse displacement denoted as  $u = u(x, t)$  and  $w = w(\chi, t)$  (both in m) respectively (see Section 2.4). The systems are defined for  $x \in \mathcal{D}_u$  with domain  $\mathcal{D}_u = [0, L_u]$  and  $\chi \in \mathcal{D}_w$  with domain  $\mathcal{D}_w = [0, L_w]$  respectively. Notice that  $\chi$  is used as the spatial coordinate for  $w$  to denote that the two systems use different coordinate systems. Connecting these systems at  $x_c \in \mathcal{D}_u$  and  $\chi_c \in \mathcal{D}_w$  yields the following system of PDEs:

$$\rho_u A_u \partial_t^2 u = T_u \partial_x^2 u - \delta(x - x_c) f, \quad (11.6a)$$

$$\rho_w A_w \partial_t^2 w = T_w \partial_\chi^2 w + \delta(\chi - \chi_c) f, \quad (11.6b)$$

---

<sup>1</sup>Recall that the ideal string is the 1D wave equation with  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho A}$ .

where subscripts  $u$  and  $w$  denote whether a variable belongs to system  $u$  or  $w$  respectively. Notice that the  $\partial_\chi$  in Eq. (11.6b) denotes a partial derivative with respect to  $\chi$  and is an identical operation to  $\partial_x$ , but on a different coordinate system. Furthermore,  $f = f(t)$  is the connection force (in N) which should be equal and opposite for the connected systems according to Newton's third law (hence the inverse signs). The definition for  $f$  depends on the connection type, and two alternatives will be given shortly. Finally, the spatial Dirac delta function  $\delta$  is defined as in Eq. (8.8), and localises the connection force along the systems.

### Relative location of objects

As explained in Chapter 10 it is important to keep in mind the relative location of two interacting objects, as this will affect the signs of the force terms added to the PDEs. As opposed to the case of collisions, the connection will have a negative effect on the object 'above' and a positive effect on the one 'below' due to the 'pulling' behaviour of a connection. From the signs of the force terms in system (11.6), it can thus be concluded that  $u$  has been placed above  $w$ . If  $f$  is positively dependent on  $\eta$  (the relative displacement between the two objects at their respective connection locations), this will be defined as the object below subtracted from the object above. For system (11.6) this will be

$$\eta(t) = u(x_c, t) - w(\chi_c, t), \quad (11.7)$$

and will be used to for a spring connection in Section 11.4.

#### 11.2.1 Discrete time

One can then discretise the state variables  $u$  and  $w$  to grid functions  $u_l^n$  and  $w_m^n$  using  $x = lh_u$  and  $\chi = mh_w$  where  $l \in \{0, \dots, N_u\}$  and  $m \in \{0, \dots, N_w\}$ .<sup>2</sup> Also see Section 2.2.1. Furthermore,  $h_u$  and  $h_w$  are the values of the grid spacing (both in m) and  $N_u + 1$  and  $N_w + 1$  are the number of grid points for  $u_l^n$  and  $w_m^n$  respectively. Dividing Eqs. (11.6a) and (11.6b) by  $\rho_u A_u$  and  $\rho_w A_w$  respectively yields

$$\delta_{tt} u_l^n = c_u^2 \delta_{xx} u_l^n - J_{l,u}(x_c) \frac{f^n}{\rho_u A_u}, \quad (11.8a)$$

$$\delta_{tt} w_m^n = c_w^2 \delta_{\chi\chi} w_m^n + J_{m,w}(\chi_c) \frac{f^n}{\rho_w A_w}, \quad (11.8b)$$

where  $c_u = \sqrt{T_u / \rho_u A_u}$  and  $c_w = \sqrt{T_w / \rho_w A_w}$ . The spreading operators  $J_{l,u}(x_c) = J_{l,o_u,u}(x_c)$  and  $J_{l,w}(\chi_c) = J_{l,o_w,w}(\chi_c)$  are as defined in Section 8.2, and their orders  $o_u$  and  $o_w$  are left unspecified.

---

<sup>2</sup>Here,  $m$  is used for the spatial index of  $w_m^n$  to avoid double subscripts  $l_u$  and  $l_w$ .

### 11.3. Rigid connection

The next step would be to solve for connection force  $f^n$ . First, one needs to isolate the schemes in system (11.8) at their respective connection locations  $x_c$  and  $\chi_c$ . This is done by taking an inner product of each scheme in system (11.8) with their respective spreading operator  $J_{l,u}(x_c)$  and  $J_{l,w}(\chi_c)$  over discrete domains  $d_u = \{0, \dots, N_u\}$  and  $d_w = \{0, \dots, N_w\}$  respectively. Using identity (8.9) one can write

$$I_{l,u}(x_c)\delta_{tt}u_l^n = c_u^2 I_{l,u}(x_c)\delta_{xx}u_l^n - \|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2 \frac{f^n}{\rho_u A_u}, \quad (11.9a)$$

$$I_{m,w}(\chi_c)\delta_{tt}w_m^n = c_w^2 I_{m,w}(\chi_c)\delta_{\chi\chi}w_m^n + \|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2 \frac{f^n}{\rho_w A_w}, \quad (11.9b)$$

Here, interpolation operators  $I_{l,u}(x_c) = I_{l,o_u,u}(x_c)$  and  $I_{m,w}(\chi_c) = I_{l,o_w,w}(\chi_c)$  are as defined in Section 8.2. Notice that the order of these operators need to match their ‘dual’ spreading operator, but the orders  $o_u$  and  $o_w$  may differ.

The definition of the force depends on the connection type. Below, two alternatives will be presented: the rigid connection and the spring connection.

## 11.3 Rigid connection

The simplest connection-type is the *rigid connection*. This connection type states that the displacement of two connected points should always be equal, and thus the distance between them should be 0 at all times. For the rigid connection, the following is true

$$u(x_c, t) = w(\chi_c, t), \quad (11.10)$$

which in discrete time becomes

$$I_{l,u}(x_c)u_l^n = I_{m,w}(\chi_c)w_m^n. \quad (11.11)$$

For a rigid connection, the following must also hold:

$$I_{l,u}(x_c)\delta_{tt}u_l^n = I_{m,w}(\chi_c)\delta_{tt}w_m^n. \quad (11.12)$$

In other words, if the displacement of two objects is equal, their acceleration must also be. This definition can then immediately be used to solve for  $f^n$  and the right-hand sides in system (11.9) can be substituted in Eq. (11.12) to get

$$c_u^2 I_{l,u}(x_c)\delta_{xx}u_l^n - \|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2 \frac{f^n}{\rho_u A_u} = c_w^2 I_{m,w}(\chi_c)\delta_{\chi\chi}w_m^n + \|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2 \frac{f^n}{\rho_w A_w},$$

which can be explicitly solved for  $f^n$  according to

$$f^n = \frac{c_u^2 I_{l,u}(x_c) \delta_{xx} u_l^n - c_w^2 I_{m,w}(\chi_c) \delta_{\chi\chi} w_m^n}{\frac{\|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2}{\rho_u A_u} + \frac{\|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2}{\rho_w A_w}}. \quad (11.13)$$

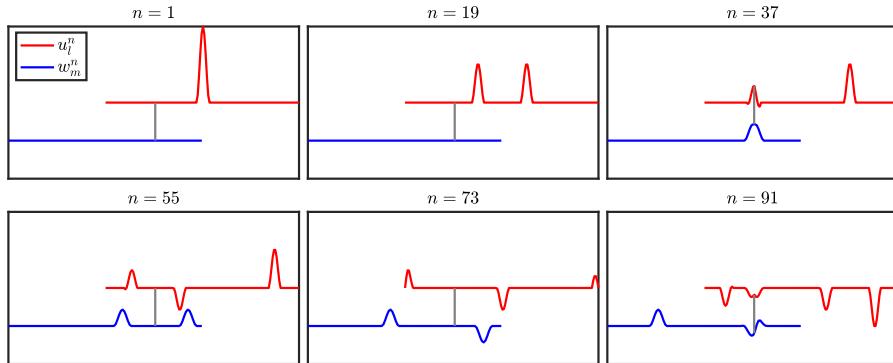
This value can then be used in the update equation obtained after expanding system (11.8) as

$$u_l^{n+1} = (2 - 2\lambda_u^2) u_l^n + \lambda_u^2 (u_{l+1}^n + u_{l-1}^n) - u_l^{n-1} - J_{l,u}(x_c) \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_u A_u} \quad (11.14a)$$

$$w_m^{n+1} = (2 - 2\lambda_w^2) w_m^n + \lambda_w^2 (w_{m+1}^n + w_{m-1}^n) - w_m^{n-1} + J_{m,w}(\chi_c) \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_w A_w} \quad (11.14b)$$

where  $\lambda_u = c_u k / h_u \leq 1$  and  $\lambda_w = c_w k / h_w \leq 1$  are the Courant numbers for each individual scheme (see Section 2.4).

Figure 11.2 shows an implementation of system (11.8) with  $x_c = 0.25$  m and  $\chi_c = 0.75$  m. The ideal strings have the same mass per unit length, i.e.,  $\rho_u A_u = \rho_w A_w$ , and the same length  $L_u = L_w = 1$  m, but operate at different wave speeds  $c_u = 300$  m/s and  $c_w = 400$  m/s. The offset between the systems is made for clarity, and the locations connected by the grey line should have the same displacement as posed by the rigid connection.



**Fig. 11.2:** The wave propagation of two connected 1D wave equations with the same mass per unit length. The systems are offset for clarity, but the relative displacement at the connection location is 0.

### Notation simplification

In the above equations, the orders of the spreading and interpolation operators have been left unspecified to retain generality. If one would like to connect two systems at specified grid points (so not in-between), the notation can greatly

### 11.3. Rigid connection

simplified.

Recalling that  $I_{l,u}(x_c) = I_{l,o_u,u}(x_c)$  and  $I_{m,w}(\chi_c) = I_{l,o_w,w}(\chi_c)$ , one can set the interpolation orders to 0, i.e.,  $o_u = o_w = 0$ , to yield the following short-hand notations

$$I_{l,0,u}(x_c)u_l^n = u_{l_c}^n, \quad \text{and} \quad I_{m,0,w}(\chi_c)w_m^n = w_{m_c}^n, \quad (11.15)$$

where  $l_c = \lfloor x_c/h_u \rfloor$  and  $m_c = \lfloor \chi_c/h_w \rfloor$ , and

$$\|J_{l,0,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2 = \frac{1}{h_u}, \quad \text{and} \quad \|J_{m,0,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2 = \frac{1}{h_w}. \quad (11.16)$$

This simplifies Eqs. (11.9) to

$$\delta_{tt}u_{l_c}^n = c_u^2\delta_{xx}u_{l_c}^n - \frac{f^n}{\rho_u A_u h_u}, \quad (11.17a)$$

$$\delta_{tt}w_{m_c}^n = c_w^2\delta_{\chi\chi}w_{m_c}^n + \frac{f^n}{\rho_w A_w h_w}, \quad (11.17b)$$

which, after rewriting Eq. (11.12) to

$$\delta_{tt}u_{l_c}^n = \delta_{tt}w_{m_c}^n, \quad (11.18)$$

one can solve for  $f^n$ , yielding the following simplified form of Eq. (11.13)

$$f^n = \frac{c_u^2\delta_{xx}u_{l_c}^n - c_w^2\delta_{\chi\chi}w_{m_c}^n}{\frac{1}{\rho_u A_u h_u} + \frac{1}{\rho_w A_w h_w}}. \quad (11.19)$$

Through this simplification, one can now clearly see that the connection forces acting on each respective ideal string in Eq. (11.17), are scaled by the mass of one grid ‘section’ as explained in Section 11.1.1.

#### 11.3.1 Energy Analysis

This section follows the energy analysis techniques shown in Section 3.4, though not explicitly following the steps for brevity. As the analysis has previously been performed on the 1D wave equation, this part will not be detailed here.

Starting with the FD scheme in Eq. (11.8a), one can take an inner product of the scheme (after a multiplication with  $\rho_u A_u$ ) with  $(\delta_t u_l^n)$  over discrete domain  $d_u$  to get

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}_u = \langle \delta_t u_l^n, -J_{l,u}(x_c) f^n \rangle_{d_u}, \quad (11.20)$$

where  $\mathfrak{h}_u$  is the total energy in system  $u$  and is as defined in Eq. (3.47). The same can be done for Eq. (11.8b) (after a multiplication with  $\rho_w A_w$ ) by taking an inner product with  $(\delta_t w_m^n)$  over discrete domain  $d_w$  to get

$$\delta_{t+}\mathfrak{h}_w = \langle \delta_t w_m^n, J_{m,w}(\chi_c) f^n \rangle_{d_w}, \quad (11.21)$$

where  $\mathfrak{h}_w$  is the total energy in system  $w$ . As the total energy in the system is an addition of  $\mathfrak{h}_u$  and  $\mathfrak{h}_w$ , and using identity (8.9) for the the right hand sides of Eqs. (11.20) and (11.21), one can write

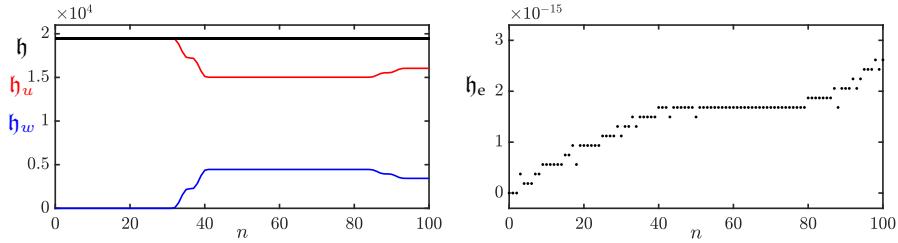
$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_u + \mathfrak{h}_w) = -I_{l,u}(x_c)\delta_t.u_l^n f^n + I_{m,w}(\chi_c)\delta_t.w_m^n f^n. \quad (11.22)$$

Finally, due to the rigid connection in Eq. (11.11),  $I_{l,u}(x_c)\delta_t.u_l^n = I_{m,w}(\chi_c)\delta_t.w_m^n$  (if the displacements are equal, their velocities must also be) and the right hand side vanishes:

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_u + \mathfrak{h}_w) = 0.$$

This shows that the rigid connection does not affect the total energy in the system and thus does not affect the stability of the scheme.

Figure 11.3 shows the energy of an implementation of the 1D wave system in (11.8). The



**Fig. 11.3:** The energy of  $u$  (red), the energy of  $w$  (blue), and the total (black) energy of the system of connected 1D wave equations in (11.8). The energy corresponds to Figure 11.2. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37) shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

### 11.3.2 Matrix form

One can write the system in Eq. (11.8) with a rigid connection in matrix form, albeit slightly more involved due to the interconnection of the schemes.

To start, the definition of the force in Eq. (11.13) must be substituted into the system, which, after expansion of the left hand side of the system, becomes

$$u_l^{n+1} = 2u_l^n - u_l^{n-1} + c^2 k^2 \delta_{xx} u_l^n - J_{l,u}(x_c) \frac{k^2}{\rho_u A_u} \left( \frac{c_u^2 I_{l,u}(x_c) \delta_{xx} u_l^n - c_w^2 I_{m,w}(\chi_c) \delta_{\chi\chi} w_m^n}{\frac{\|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2}{\rho_u A_u} + \frac{\|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2}{\rho_w A_w}} \right), \quad (11.23a)$$

$$w_m^{n+1} = 2w_m^n - w_m^{n-1} + c^2 k^2 \delta_{xx} w_m^n + J_{m,w}(\chi_c) \frac{k^2}{\rho_w A_w} \left( \frac{c_w^2 I_{l,u}(x_c) \delta_{xx} u_l^n - c_w^2 I_{m,w}(\chi_c) \delta_{\chi\chi} w_m^n}{\frac{\|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2}{\rho_u A_u} + \frac{\|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2}{\rho_w A_w}} \right). \quad (11.23b)$$

Using Dirichlet boundary conditions for both ideal strings, their values can be stored in the following vectors

$$\mathbf{u}^n = [u_1^n, \dots, u_{N_u-1}^n]^T, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{w}^n = [w_1^n, \dots, w_{N_w-1}^n]^T.$$

These vectors can then be concatenated to one larger state vector, and after the terms in Eqs. (11.23) are grouped by the grid functions at various time indices, one obtains the following compact matrix form of system (11.8):

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}^{n+1} \\ \mathbf{w}^{n+1} \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{B} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}^n \\ \mathbf{w}^n \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}^{n-1} \\ \mathbf{w}^{n-1} \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.24)$$

where

$$\mathbf{B} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B}_u & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{B}_w \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -\mathbf{j}_u \\ \mathbf{j}_w \end{bmatrix} [\mathbf{f}_u \quad -\mathbf{f}_w].$$

The matrix in the definition of  $\mathbf{B}$  contains the operations of the 1D wave equation (also see Eq. (3.5)),

$$\mathbf{B}_u = 2\mathbf{I}_{N_u-1} + c_u^2 k^2 (\mathbf{D}_{xx})_u \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{B}_w = 2\mathbf{I}_{N_w-1} + c_w^2 k^2 (\mathbf{D}_{xx})_w \quad (11.25)$$

where matrices  $(\mathbf{D}_{xx})_u$  and  $(\mathbf{D}_{xx})_w$  are as defined in Eq. (3.3) and are of the appropriate sizes. The vector multiplication in the definition of  $\mathbf{B}$  results in a matrix, and adds the effect of the connection force to the system. Here,  $\mathbf{j}_u$  and  $\mathbf{j}_w$  are column vectors of size  $(N_u - 1) \times 1$  and  $(N_w - 1) \times 1$  containing the values of the spreading operators  $J_{l,u}(x_c)$  and  $J_{m,w}(\chi_c)$  respectively. Finally,

$$\mathbf{f}_u = \frac{k^2}{\rho_u A_u} \left( \frac{c_u^2 \mathbf{i}_u (\mathbf{D}_{xx})_u}{\frac{\mathbf{i}_u \mathbf{j}_u}{\rho_u A_u} + \frac{\mathbf{i}_w \mathbf{j}_w}{\rho_w A_w}} \right), \quad \mathbf{f}_w = \frac{k^2}{\rho_w A_w} \left( \frac{c_w^2 \mathbf{i}_w (\mathbf{D}_{xx})_w}{\frac{\mathbf{i}_u \mathbf{j}_u}{\rho_u A_u} + \frac{\mathbf{i}_w \mathbf{j}_w}{\rho_w A_w}} \right),$$

where  $\mathbf{i}_u$  and  $\mathbf{i}_w$  are row vectors of size  $1 \times (N_u - 1)$  and  $1 \times (N_w - 1)$  containing the values of the interpolation operators  $I_{l,u}(x_c)$  and  $I_{m,w}(\chi_c)$  respectively. Here,  $\mathbf{i}_u \mathbf{j}_u$  and  $\mathbf{i}_w \mathbf{j}_w$  are matrix-vector forms of  $\|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_d^2$  and  $\|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_d^2$

respectively (see Eq. (8.10)) and reduce to a scalar. [check with stefan if this is a correct notation for this](#)

Equation (11.24) can then easily be rewritten in one-step form as described in Section 3.5.1 and used for modal analysis.<sup>3</sup>

## 11.4 Spring connection

An alternative connection type is the *spring connection*. As in the rigid case, forces are still equal and opposite, but spring connections allow the relative displacement between the two connected elements to be non-zero. This relative displacement is used to determine the connection force. Interestingly, a nonlinear component can be added to this connection without making the system implicit. The most complex springs used in this project have a linear and a nonlinear (cubic) component, as well as a damping term. For ease of explanation, this section will only use a linear spring. A damped nonlinear spring will appear in Section 11.5.

The force between two components connected by a linear spring can be defined as

$$f = f(t) = K\eta, \quad (11.26)$$

where  $K \geq 0$  is the spring constant (in N/m) and

$$\eta = \eta(t) = u(x_c, t) - w(\chi_c, t) \quad (11.27)$$

is the relative displacement between the two systems at their respective connection locations (in m).<sup>4</sup>

In discrete time, Eq. (11.26) becomes

$$f^n = K\mu_t \cdot \eta^n, \quad (11.28)$$

where

$$\eta^n = I_{l,u}(x_c)u_l^n - I_{m,w}(\chi_c)w_m^n. \quad (11.29)$$

Here, the centred averaging operator is used for stability (see Section 11.4.2), but when substituted into system (11.9) seems to make the system implicit. However, one can find an explicit solution, even for an arbitrary amount of connections [51]. These systems are therefore referred to as being *semi-implicit*, and the process of how to solve the system explicitly will be shown below.

<sup>3</sup>As the system does not exhibit damping, it could be analysed directly, not using a one-step form.

<sup>4</sup>Note that if  $u$  was placed ‘below’  $w$  (see Section 11.2), the signs of the force terms in system (11.8) would have been flipped and  $u(x_c, t)$  would have been subtracted from  $w(\chi_c, t)$  in Eq. (11.27) instead.

### 11.4.1 Explicit solution

Compared to the rigid connection in Section 11.3, solving for  $f^n$  requires an extra step. After isolating the schemes at their respective connection locations – resulting in Eqs. (11.9) – one needs to expand the scheme and solve for the states at  $n + 1$ :

$$I_{l,u}(x_c)u_l^{n+1} = u^* - \|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_u A_u}, \quad (11.30a)$$

$$I_{m,w}(\chi_c)w_m^{n+1} = w^* + \|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_w A_w}, \quad (11.30b)$$

where

$$u^* = I_{l,u}(x_c)(2u_l^n - u_l^{n-1}) + c_u^2 k^2 I_{l,u}(x_c) \delta_{xx} u_l^n,$$

and

$$w^* = I_{m,w}(\chi_c)(2w_m^n - w_m^{n-1}) + c_w^2 k^2 I_{m,w}(\chi_c) \delta_{xx} w_m^n,$$

are the update equations of the system at their respective connection locations without the term containing the connection force (as done in Chapter 10). Evaluating Eq. (11.29) at  $n + 1$  yields

$$\eta^{n+1} = I_{l,u}(x_c)u_l^{n+1} - I_{m,w}(\chi_c)w_m^{n+1},$$

into which Eqs. (11.30) can be substituted

$$\eta^{n+1} = u^* - \|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_u A_u} - \left( w^* + \|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_w A_w} \right). \quad (11.31)$$

A second definition for  $\eta^{n+1}$  can be obtained after expanding Eq. (11.28):

$$\eta^{n+1} = \frac{2f^n}{K} - \eta^{n-1} \quad (11.32)$$

and can be substituted into Eq. (11.31) to get

$$\frac{2f^n}{K} - \eta^{n-1} = u^* - \|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_u A_u} - \left( w^* + \|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_w A_w} \right). \quad (11.33)$$

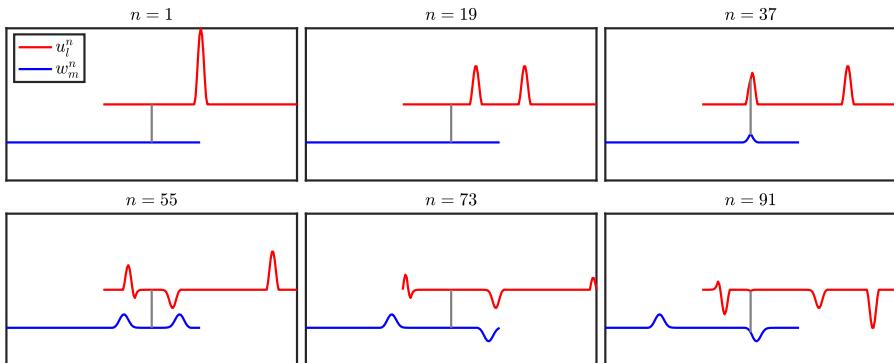
Finally, one can group the terms for  $f^n$

$$\left( \frac{2}{K} + \frac{\|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2 k^2}{\rho_u A_u} + \frac{\|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2 k^2}{\rho_w A_w} \right) f^n = u^* - w^* + \eta^{n-1}$$

and solve for the force, solely based on known values of the system

$$f^n = \frac{u^* - w^* + \eta^{n-1}}{\frac{2}{K} + \frac{\|J_{l,u}(x_c)\|_{d_u}^2 k^2}{\rho_u A_u} + \frac{\|J_{m,w}(\chi_c)\|_{d_w}^2 k^2}{\rho_w A_w}}. \quad (11.34)$$

Figure 11.4 shows the behaviour of system Eq. (11.8) connected with a spring with spring constant  $K = 5 \cdot 10^4 \text{ N/m}$ . The same parameters, excitation and connection locations are used as for the rigid connection in Section 11.3. Compared to the behaviour of the system with a rigid connection in Figure 11.2, one can observe that the distance between the two connected points gets larger as the wave passes the connection point, which corresponds to the extension of the spring.



**Fig. 11.4:** The wave propagation of two ideal strings with the same mass per unit length connected using a spring with  $K = 5 \cdot 10^4 \text{ N/m}$ .

### 11.4.2 Energy analysis

This section follows the energy analysis techniques presented in Section 3.4 (without explicitly following the steps for brevity) and shows that the discretisation of the spring force chosen in Eq. (11.28) is inherently stable.

Following the same process as in Section 11.3.1, one can analyse system (11.8), and arrive at Eq. (11.22):

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_u + \mathfrak{h}_w) = -I_{l,u}(x_c)\delta_t.u_l^n f^n + I_{m,w}(\chi_c)\delta_t.w_m^n f^n,$$

which can be rewritten to

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_u + \mathfrak{h}_w) = -\delta_t. (I_{l,u}(x_c)u_l^n - I_{m,w}(\chi_c)w_m^n) f^n.$$

One can then substitute the definitions for  $f^n$  and  $\eta^n$  from Eqs. (11.28) and

## 11.4. Spring connection

(11.29) to get

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_u + \mathfrak{h}_w) = -K(\delta_t \cdot \eta^n)(\mu_t \cdot \eta^n), \quad (11.35)$$

which, using identity (3.17d), can be rewritten to

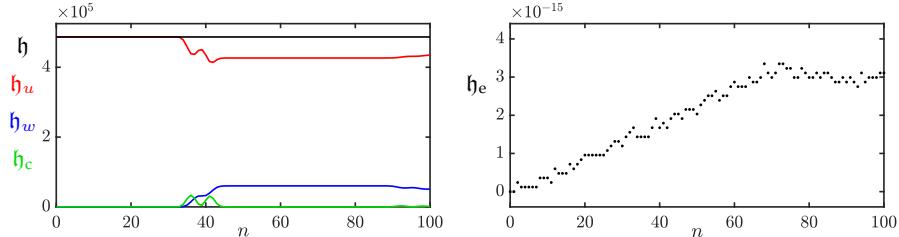
$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_u + \mathfrak{h}_w + \mathfrak{h}_c) = 0, \quad (11.36)$$

where

$$\mathfrak{h}_c = \frac{K}{2} (\mu_{t-}(\eta^n)^2) \quad (11.37)$$

is the energy stored by the connection. As this definition is non-negative it does not affect the stability of the system. The spring stiffness  $K$  could potentially be infinitely large, which would effectively reduce the spring connection to a rigid connection presented in Section 11.3.

Figure 11.5 shows the energy of an implementation of system (11.8) connected with a spring with stiffness  $K = 5 \cdot 10^4$  and other parameters are the same as for the rigid connection in Section 11.3. One can observe that when compared to Figure 11.3, less energy is transferred from  $u$  to  $w$ , and some energy is stored in the spring shown in green.



**Fig. 11.5:** The energy of  $u$  (red), the energy of  $w$  (blue), the energy of the spring connection (green) and the total energy (black) of the system of connected 1D wave equations in (11.8). The energy corresponds to the system in Figure 11.4. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37)) shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

## Unstable discretisation

To show why an averaging operator is used in Eq. (11.28), consider a more straightforward discretisation of Eq. (11.26) without the averaging operator, such that

$$f^n = K\eta^n.$$

Performing an energy analysis of the system would yield

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_u + \mathfrak{h}_w) = -K(\delta_t \cdot \eta^n)(\eta^n),$$

(instead of Eq. (11.35)) and using identity (3.17b), this can be rewritten to

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_u + \mathfrak{h}_w + \mathfrak{h}_c) = 0,$$

where

$$\mathfrak{h}_c = \frac{K}{2} (\eta^n e_{t-} - \eta^n).$$

As this is not necessarily non-negative, the connection places a larger restriction on the stability of the system at the connection location. In other words,  $\lambda \leq 1$  for the ideal strings does not ensure stability at the connection location. Also see [2, pp. 190–192].

## 11.5 String-plate connection

As an example of a more complicated connected system used in papers [A] and [B], consider a stiff string connected to a plate using a nonlinear damped spring. This could be interpreted as a simplified form of how the string would be connected to the body in a stringed instrument. In the following, subscripts ‘s’ and ‘p’ are used to denote a string or plate parameter respectively.

### 11.5.1 Continuous time

Consider a damped stiff string of length  $L$  (in m), its transverse displacement described by  $u = u(\chi, t)$  (in m) defined for  $t \geq 0$  and  $\chi \in \mathcal{D}_s$  where domain  $\mathcal{D}_s = [0, L]$ . Its PDE is described by

$$\rho_s A \partial_t^2 u = T \partial_{\chi\chi} u - E_s I \partial_{\chi\chi\chi} u - 2\sigma_{0,s} \rho_s A \partial_t u + 2\sigma_{1,s} \rho_s A \partial_t \partial_{\chi\chi} u, \quad (11.38)$$

where parameters are as in Eq. (4.4).

The transverse displacement of a damped rectangular thin plate of side lengths  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  (both in m) can be described as  $w = w(x, y, t)$  (in m), which is defined for  $t \geq 0$  and  $(x, y) \in \mathcal{D}_p$  where domain  $\mathcal{D}_p = [0, L_x] \times [0, L_y]$ . Its PDE is defined as

$$\rho_p H \partial_t^2 w = -D \Delta \Delta w - 2\sigma_{0,p} \rho_p H \partial_t w + 2\sigma_{1,p} \rho_p H \partial_t \partial_x^2 w, \quad (11.39)$$

where parameters are as in Eq. (6.38).

One can connect the above PDEs by adding a localised connection force. After a division by  $\rho_s A$  and  $\rho_p H$  respectively the connected string-plate system

## 11.5. String-plate connection

becomes

$$\partial_t^2 u = c^2 \partial_{\chi\chi} u - \kappa_s^2 \partial_{\chi\chi\chi\chi} u - 2\sigma_{0,s} \partial_t u + 2\sigma_{1,s} \partial_t \partial_{\chi\chi} u - \delta(\chi - \chi_c) \frac{f}{\rho_s A}, \quad (11.40a)$$

$$\partial_t^2 w = -\kappa_p^2 \Delta \Delta w - 2\sigma_{0,p} \partial_t w + 2\sigma_{1,p} \partial_t \partial_x^2 w + \delta(x - x_c, y - y_c) \frac{f}{\rho_p H}, \quad (11.40b)$$

where  $\delta(\chi - \chi_c)$  (in  $m^{-1}$ ) and  $\delta(x - x_c, y - y_c)$  (in  $m^{-2}$ ) are the 1D and 2D spatial Dirac delta functions defined in Eqs. (8.8) and (11.5) respectively and locate the connection force at  $\chi_c \in \mathcal{D}_s$  (in m) along the string and  $(x_c, y_c) \in \mathcal{D}_p$  (in (m, m)) on the plate.

The force between the two components (in N) is set to be a nonlinear (cubic) damped spring defined as (used in e.g. [70] and in scaled form in [51])

$$f = f(t) = K_1 \eta + K_3 \eta^3 + R \dot{\eta}, \quad (11.41)$$

with linear and nonlinear spring coefficients  $K_1$  (in N/m) and  $K_3$  (in N/m<sup>3</sup>) and damping coefficient  $R$  (in kg/s). Furthermore, the distance (in m) between the string and the plate at their respective connection locations is defined as

$$\eta = \eta(t) = u(\chi_c, t) - w(x_c, y_c, t). \quad (11.42)$$

### 11.5.2 Discrete time

To discretise  $u(\chi, t)$ , one can use grid function  $u_q^n$  where  $n \in \mathbb{N}^0$  and  $q \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  with number of grid points  $N+1$  (see Section 2.2.1). Next,  $w(x, y, t)$  can be discretised using grid function  $w_{l,m}^n$  with  $l \in \{0, \dots, N_x\}$  and  $m \in \{0, \dots, N_y\}$  where  $N_x+1$  and  $N_y+1$  are the number of grid points in the  $x$  and  $y$  direction respectively (see Section 6.1).

Using these grid functions, system (11.40) can then be discretised as

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{tt} u_q^n &= c^2 \delta_{\chi\chi} u_q^n - \kappa_s^2 \delta_{\chi\chi\chi\chi} u_q^n - 2\sigma_{0,s} \delta_t u_q^n + 2\sigma_{1,s} \delta_t \delta_{\chi\chi} u_q^n \\ &\quad - J_q(\chi_c) \frac{f^n}{\rho_s A}, \end{aligned} \quad (11.43)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{tt} w_{l,m}^n &= -\kappa_p^2 \delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta w_{l,m}^n - 2\sigma_{0,p} \delta_t w_{l,m}^n + 2\sigma_{1,p} \delta_t \delta_{xx} w_{l,m}^n \\ &\quad + J_{l,m}(x_c, y_c) \frac{f^n}{\rho_p H}, \end{aligned} \quad (11.44)$$

where  $J_q(\chi_c) = J_{q,o_s}(\chi_c)$  is a 1D spreading operator of order  $o_s$  as defined in Section 8.2 and  $J_{l,m}(x_c, y_c) = J_{(l,m),o_p}(x_c, y_c)$  is a 2D spreading operator of order  $o_p$  as defined in Section 11.1.

The definition of the force in Eq. (11.41) can be discretised as<sup>5</sup>

$$f^n = K_1 \mu_{tt} \eta^n + K_3 (\eta^n)^2 \mu_t \cdot \eta^n + R \delta_t \cdot \eta^n, \quad (11.45)$$

where

$$\eta^n = I_q(x_c) u_q^n - I_{l,m}(x_c, y_c) w_m^n. \quad (11.46)$$

Here,  $I_q(\chi_c) = I_{q,o_s}(\chi_c)$  and  $I_{l,m}(x_c, y_c) = I_{(l,m),o_p}(x_c, y_c)$  are interpolation operators of the same order as  $J_q(\chi_c)$  and  $J_{l,m}(x_c)$  respectively.

### 11.5.3 Solving for $f$

Following the same process as in Section 11.4.1, system (11.43) needs to be isolated at the connection locations. This is done by taking an inner product of the schemes in (11.43) with their respective spreading operators over discrete domains  $d_u = \{0, \dots, N\}$  and  $d_w = \{0, \dots, N_x\} \times \{0, \dots, N_y\}$  respectively. Taking these inner products, expanding the  $\delta_{tt}$  and  $\delta_t$  operators (as these contain  $u_q^{n+1}$ ) and solving for the states at  $n + 1$  yields

$$I_q(\chi_c) u_q^{n+1} = u^* - \|J_q(\chi_c)\|_{d_u}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_s A (1 + \sigma_{0,s} k)}, \quad (11.47a)$$

$$I_{l,m}(x_c) w_{l,m}^n = w^* + \|J_{l,m}(x_c, y_c)\|_{d_w}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_p H (1 + \sigma_{0,p} k)}, \quad (11.47b)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} u^* = & \left( I_q(\chi_c) (2u_q^n - u_q^{n-1}) + c^2 k^2 I_q(\chi_c) \delta_{\chi\chi} u_q^n - \kappa_s^2 k^2 I_q(\chi_c) \delta_{\chi\chi\chi\chi} u_q^n \right. \\ & \left. + \sigma_{0,s} k I_q(\chi_c) u_q^{n-1} + 2\sigma_{1,s} k^2 I_q(\chi_c) \delta_{t-} \delta_{\chi\chi} u_q^n \right) / (1 + \sigma_{0,s} k) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$w^* = \frac{-\kappa_p^2 I_{l,m}(x_c) \delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta w_{l,m}^n + \sigma_{0,p} k I_{l,m}(x_c) w_{l,m}^{n-1} + 2\sigma_{1,p} I_{l,m}(x_c) \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} w_{l,m}^n}{1 + \sigma_{0,p} k},$$

are the update equations of the schemes at their respective connection locations without the force term.

---

<sup>5</sup>The second-order averaging operator has been chosen here to show an alternative discretisation of the linear term, could also be a centred first-order averaging operator as used in Eq. (11.28).

## 11.5. String-plate connection

Evaluating Eq. (11.46) at  $n + 1$  and substituting Eqs. (11.47) yields

$$\begin{aligned}\eta^{n+1} = u^* - \|J_q(\chi_c)\|_{d_u}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_s A(1 + \sigma_{0,s} k)} \\ - \left( w^* + \|J_{l,m}(x_c, y_c)\|_{d_w}^2 \frac{k^2 f^n}{\rho_p H(1 + \sigma_{0,p} k)} \right).\end{aligned}\quad (11.48)$$

Then expanding Eq. (11.45) to

$$f^n = \underbrace{\left( \frac{K_1}{4} + \frac{K_3(\eta^n)^2}{2} + \frac{R}{2k} \right)}_{r_+^n} \eta^{n+1} + \frac{K_1}{2} \eta^n + \underbrace{\left( \frac{K_1}{4} + \frac{K_3(\eta^n)^2}{2} - \frac{R}{2k} \right)}_{r_-^n} \eta^{n-1},$$

and solving for  $\eta^{n+1}$  yields

$$\eta^{n+1} = \frac{f^n}{r_+^n} - \frac{K_1}{2r_+^n} \eta^n - \frac{r_-^n}{r_+^n} \eta^{n-1}. \quad (11.49)$$

Substituting this into Eq. (11.48), one can find a definition for the connecting force

$$f^n = \frac{u^* - w^* + \frac{K_1}{2r_+^n} \eta^n + \frac{r_-^n}{r_+^n} \eta^{n-1}}{\frac{1}{r_+^n} + \frac{\|J_q(\chi_c)\|_{d_u}^2 k^2}{\rho_s A(1 + \sigma_{0,s} k)} + \frac{\|J_{l,m}(x_c, y_c)\|_{d_w}^2 k^2}{\rho_p H(1 + \sigma_{0,p} k)}}. \quad (11.50)$$

### 11.5.4 Implementation

This section shows an example of an implementation of the string-plate system. The parameters for the stiff string can be found in Table 4.1 (with  $L = 1.5$  m and  $T = 555$  N) and for the thin plate in Table 6.1 (with  $H = 5 \cdot 10^{-4}$ ). Both systems use simply supported boundary conditions. Additional parameters used for the connection are

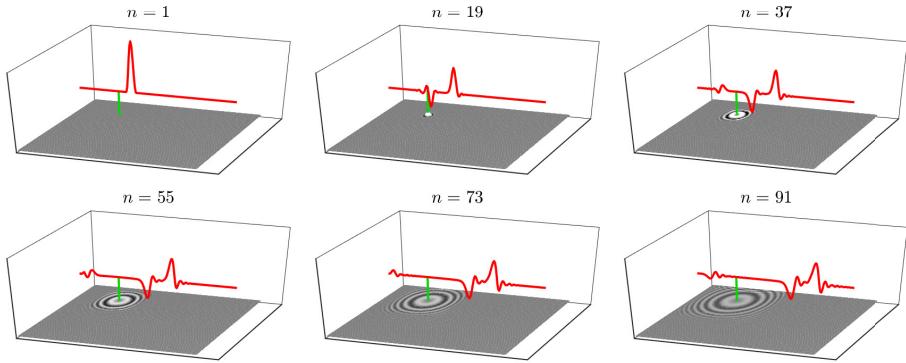
$$K_1 = 10^4 \text{ N/m}, \quad K_3 = 10^7 \text{ N/m}^3, \quad \text{and} \quad R = 10 \text{ kg/s}.$$

The MATLAB code of the implementation can be found online [100].<sup>6</sup> Figure 11.6 shows an visualisation of the string plate system excited with a raised cosine.

In the following, the **i** and **j** vectors are used as in Section 11.3.2 and are of the appropriate sizes. The matrices for the string can be found in Eq. (4.22) and those for the plate in Eq. (6.47). When implementing connections (or any other interactions for that matter), one mostly performs the following steps in the main loop:

---

<sup>6</sup>Note that in the online code,  $L$ ,  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  have been halved to reduce computations and avoid crashes on some machines.



**Fig. 11.6:** A visualisation of string-plate system. The string is shown in red, the plate in gray and the connection in green.

1. Calculate entire scheme without force terms:

$$\mathbf{u}^* = (\mathbf{B}_s \mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{C}_s \mathbf{u}^{n-1}) / A_s, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{w}^* = (\mathbf{B}_p \mathbf{w}^n + \mathbf{C}_p \mathbf{w}^{n-1}) / A_p.$$

2. Obtain  $u^*$  and  $w^*$ :

$$u^* = \mathbf{i}_u \mathbf{u}^*, \quad \text{and} \quad w^* = \mathbf{i}_w \mathbf{w}^*.$$

3. Calculate the connection force  $f^n$  (Eq. (11.50)).

4. Add force terms to the schemes without connection forces:

$$\mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \mathbf{u}^* - \mathbf{j}_u \frac{f^n k^2}{\rho_s A (1 + \sigma_{0,s})}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{w}^{n+1} = \mathbf{w}^* + \mathbf{j}_w \frac{f^n k^2}{\rho_p H (1 + \sigma_{0,p})}.$$

Calculating  $\mathbf{u}^*$  and  $\mathbf{w}^*$  beforehand reduces computations, and allows  $u^*$  and  $w^*$  to be more easily obtained.

### 11.5.5 Energy analysis

Recalling the total energy and damping terms for the string and plate in Sections 4.4 and 6.3.5 respectively, one can – similar to Eq. (11.22) – arrive at the following:

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_s + \mathfrak{h}_p) + \mathfrak{q}_s + \mathfrak{q}_p = -I_q(\chi_c)(\delta_{t.} u_q^n) f^n + I_{l,m}(x_c)(\delta_{t.} w_{l,m}^n) f^n \quad (11.51)$$

which can be rewritten to

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_s + \mathfrak{h}_p) + \mathfrak{q}_s + \mathfrak{q}_p = -\delta_{t.} (I_q(\chi_c) u_q^n - I_{l,m}(x_c) w_{l,m}^n) f^n.$$

### 11.5. String-plate connection

Substituting the definitions for  $f^n$  and  $\eta^n$  from Eqs. (11.45) and (11.46) respectively, yields

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_s + \mathfrak{h}_p) + \mathfrak{q}_s + \mathfrak{q}_p = -(\delta_t \cdot \eta^n)(K_1 \mu_{tt} \eta^n + K_3 (\eta^n)^2 \mu_t \cdot \eta^n + R \delta_t \cdot \eta^n).$$

Due to the nonlinear dependency on  $\eta^n$  one must isolate  $\delta_{t+}$  from the cubic term manually, according to

$$\begin{aligned} & K_3 (\eta^n)^2 (\delta_t \cdot \eta^n) (\mu_t \cdot \eta^n), \\ &= \frac{K_3 (\eta^n)^2}{2k} (\eta^{n+1} - \eta^{n-1}) \frac{1}{2} (\eta^{n+1} + \eta^{n-1}), \\ &= \frac{K_3 (\eta^n)^2}{4k} ((\eta^{n+1})^2 - (\eta^{n-1})^2), \\ &= \frac{K_3}{4k} ((\eta^{n+1} \eta^n)^2 - (\eta^n \eta^{n-1})^2), \\ &= \delta_{t+} \left( \frac{K_3}{4} (\eta^n \eta^{n-1})^2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

Finally, using identity (3.17e) for the linear term, the following balance follows

$$\delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_s + \mathfrak{h}_p + \mathfrak{h}_c) = -\mathfrak{q}_s - \mathfrak{q}_p - \mathfrak{q}_c, \quad (11.52)$$

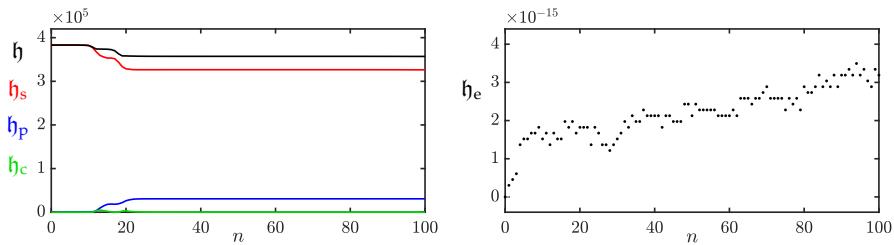
where the energy stored by the spring connection is

$$\mathfrak{h}_c = \frac{K_1}{8} (\eta^n + \eta^{n-1})^2 + \frac{K_3}{4} (\eta^n \eta^{n-1})^2,$$

and the damping term of the connection is

$$\mathfrak{q}_c = R(\delta_t \cdot \eta^n)^2.$$

Figure 11.7 shows the energetic output of the string-plate system corresponding to the behaviour in Figure 11.6. One can observe that energy is transferred from the string to the plate due to the connection. Furthermore, due to the high value for spring-damping  $R$ , the total energy decreases substantially as the excitation reaches the connection location along the string.



**Fig. 11.7:** The energy of the string (red), the plate (blue), the spring connection (green) and the total energy (black) of the connected string-plate system (11.43). The energy corresponds to the system in Figure 11.6. The right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.38)) shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

# **Part V**

# **Contributions**



# Contributions

This part presents the contributions made throughout this PhD project.

It can be seen as an extended summary of the published work in VII.

This part starts by introducing the dynamic grid in Chapter 12, a method to dynamically vary grid configurations in FDTD simulations. After this, details on the real-time implementation will be given in Chapter 13 that have been used for most of the published work. Finally, several full instrument models that have been developed during the PhD will be presented. Chapter 14 shows a three instrument-inspired case-studies using a large-scale modular environment, Chapter 15 describes the implementation of the tromba marina and Chapter 16 that of the trombone.

[add choices for instruments here as well](#)



# Chapter 12

## Dynamic Grid

This chapter provides an extended summary to the paper “Dynamic grids for Finite-Difference Schemes in Musical Instrument Simulations” [G]. The paper presents a novel method to smoothly add and remove grid points from a FD scheme which allows for dynamic parameter variations without compromising stability or quality of the simulation (see Section 2.4.4).

After a brief introduction and summary of the method, the chapter will extend on paper [G] by providing some design considerations as a result of iterations done as well as providing details on the implementation of the displacement correction and the modal analysis shown in the paper.

### 12.1 Background and motivation

Simulating musical instruments using physical modelling – as mentioned in Chapter 1 – allows for manipulations of the instrument that are impossible in the physical world. Examples of this are changes in material density or stiffness, cross-sectional area (1D), thickness (2D) and size of the system in general. Using FDTD methods to discretise PDEs constrains the simulation to a grid of a finite amount of points. As explained in Section 2.4.4, the definition of this grid closely ties the parameters set by the user to the stability and quality of the simulation, making FDTD methods extremely inflexible to parameter changes.

#### 12.1.1 Examples

Apart from being potentially sonically interesting, there are examples in the physical world where certain aspects of the instrument are manipulated in real-time.

Tension in a string is changed when tuning it

Some artists even use this in their performances [101, 102] Or gr4yhound:  
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fSQ9Dg65EFo>

The hammered dulcimer is another example where the strings are tensioned over a bridge where one can play the string at one side of the bridge, while pushing down on the same string on the other side [103].

1D:

- Trombone
- Slide whistle
- Guitar strings
  - Fretting finger pitch bend
  - Above the nut [102]
  - Tuning pegs directly [101]
- Hammered dulcimer [103]
- Erhu?

2D:

- Timpani
- Bodhrán: <https://youtu.be/b9HyB5yNS1A?t=146>
- Talking drum (hourglass drum): <https://youtu.be/B4oQJZ2TEVI?t=9>
- Flex-a-tone (could also be 1D tbh..): <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HEW1aG8XJQ>

A more relevant example is that of the trombone, where the size of the instrument is changed in order to play different pitches. Modelling this using FDTD methods would require

In his thesis, Harrison points out that in order to model the trombone, grid points need to be introduced

Something about time-dependent variable coefficient Stokes flow: <https://arxiv.org/abs/1008.0001>

Time-varying propagation speed in waveguides: <https://quod.lib.umich.edu/cgi/p/pod/idx/fractional-delay-application-time-varying-propagation-speed.pdf?c=icmc;idno=bbp2372>.

Special boundary conditions (look at!): Modeling of Complex Geometries and Boundary Conditions in Finite Difference/Finite Volume Time Domain Room Acoustics Simulation ([https://www.researchgate.net/publication/260701231\\_Modeling\\_of\\_Complex\\_Geometries\\_and\\_Boundary\\_Conditions\\_in\\_Finite\\_DifferenceFinite\\_Volume\\_Time\\_Domain\\_Room\\_Acoustics\\_Simulation](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/260701231_Modeling_of_Complex_Geometries_and_Boundary_Conditions_in_Finite_DifferenceFinite_Volume_Time_Domain_Room_Acoustics_Simulation))

## 12.2 Summary

This section summarises the method presented in paper [G]. The variations are assumed to be at sub-audio rate (i.e., human gestural control) so that analysis techniques are still valid to some degree.

### 12.2.1 Problem statement

Consider the 1D wave equation as presented in Section 2.4, describing the motion of a system of length  $L$  (in m), its state described by  $q = q(x, t)$  defined for  $t \geq 0$  and  $x \in \mathcal{D}$  with domain  $\mathcal{D} = [0, L]$ . This state variable can be discretised to a grid function  $q_l^n$  with  $n \in \mathbb{N}^0$  and  $l \in \{0, \dots, N\}$  where  $N$  is the number of intervals between the grid points. The PDE in Eq. (2.38) (using state variable  $q$ ) can then be discretised to the following FD scheme

$$\delta_{tt} q_l^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} q_l^n. \quad (12.1)$$

If one would like to dynamically vary the wave speed  $c$ , several issues arise. Performing the usual calculations for number of intervals  $N$ , Courant number  $\lambda \leq 1$  and grid spacing  $h$  through Eq. (2.53):

$$h := ck, \quad N := \left\lfloor \frac{L}{h} \right\rfloor, \quad h := \frac{L}{N}, \quad \lambda := \frac{ck}{h}. \quad (12.2)$$

shows that a change in  $c$  can cause abrupt changes in  $N$  due to the flooring operation. One could avoid this issue by fixing  $N$  at the start of the simulation and decrease  $c$ , i.e., tune it away from the stability condition. The issue here is that the simulation quality and bandwidth decreases very rapidly as explained in Section 2.4.4.

Paper [G] proposes a *fractional* number of intervals  $\mathcal{N}$ , where  $N = \lfloor \mathcal{N} \rfloor$ , that allows for smooth transitions between grid configurations (i.e., the number of grid points used), and grid points can be added and removed from the grid without causing artefacts. Furthermore, as  $N$  is fractional, this removes the flooring operation in Eq. (12.2), and the stability condition can always be satisfied with equality. Issues regarding simulation quality and bandwidth could thus be resolved. In the following, the variables  $c$ ,  $h$ ,  $\mathcal{N}$  and  $N$  will receive a superscript  $n$  as they are time-varying.

### 12.2.2 Splitting the scheme

Rather than working with this scheme directly, paper [G] proposes to split it into two to get the following system

$$\delta_{tt} u_{l_u}^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} u_{l_u}^n, \quad (12.3a)$$

$$\delta_{tt} w_{l_w}^n = c^2 \delta_{xx} w_{l_w}^n, \quad (12.3b)$$

where  $l_u \in \{0, \dots, M^n\}$  and  $l_w \in \{0, \dots, M_w^n\}$  and integers

$$M^n = \lceil 0.5N^n \rceil, \quad \text{and} \quad M_w^n = \lfloor 0.5N^n \rfloor, \quad (12.4)$$

are the number of intervals between grid points of each respective subsystem. Notice that the system has one more grid point in total than the original, but can be shown to exhibit identical behaviour to the original system, using the boundary conditions described shortly [G].

#### Boundary locations

The schemes are placed on the same domain  $x$ , where the left boundary of  $u$  and the right boundary of  $w$  – referred to as the *outer boundaries* – are placed at the following locations:

$$x_{u_0}^n = 0, \quad x_{w_{M_w^n}}^n = L. \quad (12.5)$$

Here,  $x_{q_i}^n$  is the location of a grid point (in m from the left boundary) at time index  $n$ .

The right boundary of  $u$  and the left boundary of  $w$  – referred to as the *inner boundaries* – are placed at the following locations

$$x_{u_{M^n}}^n = M^n h^n, \quad x_{w_0}^n = L - M_w^n h^n. \quad (12.6)$$

If  $\mathcal{N}$  is an integer, the inner boundaries perfectly overlap. If this is not the case, the outer boundaries will remain at their respective locations according to Eq. 12.5, and all other grid points will move to the outer boundary of their respective system. The distance between the inner boundaries is expressed as the fractional part of  $\mathcal{N}^n$

$$\alpha = \alpha^n = \mathcal{N}^n - N^n \quad (12.7)$$

and essentially states how many times the grid spacing  $h$  can fit between the inner boundaries (always less than once). See Figure 12.1.

### Boundary conditions

The outer boundaries are set to Dirichlet boundary conditions (see Eq. (2.48a)). The conditions for the inner boundaries are slightly more involved. In order for the system to exhibit the same behaviour as the original system in Eq. (12.1), the inner boundaries must have an identical displacement if they are perfectly overlapping, i.e.,

$$u_{M^n}^n = w_0^n, \quad \text{if } \alpha = 0. \quad (12.8)$$

and acts like a rigid connection between the inner boundaries (see Section 11.3). It is shown in paper [G] that quadratic Lagrange interpolation exhibits excellent behaviour when parameters are varied, and satisfies the above requirement (also see 12.3). At the inner boundaries, a definition of the virtual grid points is given as

$$u_{M^n+1}^n = \frac{\alpha - 1}{\alpha + 1} u_{M^n}^n + w_0^n - \frac{\alpha - 1}{\alpha + 1} w_1^n, \quad (12.9a)$$

$$w_{-1}^n = -\frac{\alpha - 1}{\alpha + 1} u_{M^n-1}^n + u_{M^n}^n + \frac{\alpha - 1}{\alpha + 1} w_0^n. \quad (12.9b)$$

check

### 12.2.3 Adding and removing grid points

Before continuing, it is useful to write the state of the system in vectors:

$$\mathbf{u}^n = [u_1^n, \dots, u_{M^n}^n]^T, \text{ and } \mathbf{w}^n = [w_0^n, \dots, w_{M_w^n-1}^n]^T, \quad (12.10)$$

and have  $M^n$  and  $M_w^n$  entries respectively. Notice that  $u_0^n$  and  $w_{M_w}^n$  are not included, as Dirichlet boundary conditions are used.

If  $c^n$  and  $-$  through Eq. (12.2)  $- h^n$  are decreased, it might happen that the inner boundaries surpass the virtual grid points and  $N^n > N^{n-1}$ . In this case, a grid point must be added to the system and will be done according to

$$\text{if } N^n > N^{n-1} \quad \begin{cases} \mathbf{u}^n = [(\mathbf{u}^n)^T, I_3 \mathbf{v}^n]^T & \text{if } N^n \text{ is odd,} \\ \mathbf{w}^n = [I_3^\leftarrow \mathbf{v}^n, (\mathbf{w}^n)^T]^T & \text{if } N^n \text{ is even.} \end{cases} \quad (12.11)$$

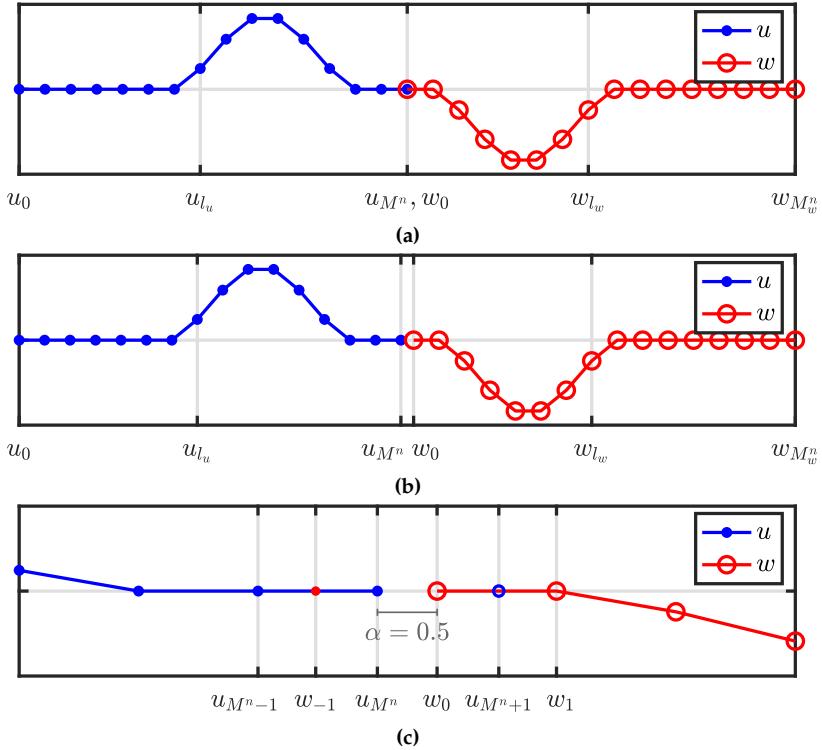
Here,

$$\mathbf{v}^n = [u_{M^n-1}^n, u_{M^n}^n, w_0^n, w_1^n]^T,$$

and cubic Lagrangian interpolator

$$I_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)}{(\alpha+2)(\alpha+3)} & \frac{2\alpha}{\alpha+2} & \frac{2}{\alpha+2} & -\frac{2\alpha}{(\alpha+3)(\alpha+2)} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (12.12)$$

where  $I_3^\leftarrow$  is a flipped version of (12.12).



**Fig. 12.1:** Illustration of the proposed method. In all figures, the x-axis shows the location of the respective grid points, but ' $x^n$ ' is omitted for brevity. (a) Locations of the states of two (1D wave) systems connected at the inner boundaries ( $N^n = 30$ ,  $x_{u,M^n}^n = x_{w,0}^n$ ). (b) When  $c^n$  – and consequently  $h^n$  – are decreased and the positions of the grid points change ( $N^n = 30.5$ ,  $x_{u,M^n}^n \neq x_{w,0}^n$ ). (c) Figure 12.1b zoomed-in around the inner boundaries. The virtual grid points  $u_{M^n+1}$  and  $w_{-1}^n$  are shown together with the distance between them expressed using  $\alpha$  in Eq. (12.7). (Taken from paper [G].)

If the opposite happens:  $c^n$  and  $h^n$  increase, and  $N^n < N^{n-1}$ , a grid point can be removed from the system according to

$$\text{if } N^n < N^{n-1} \quad \begin{cases} \mathbf{u}^n = [u_0^n, u_1^n, \dots, u_{M^n-1}^n]^T & \text{if } N^n \text{ is even,} \\ \mathbf{w}^n = [w_1^n, w_2^n, \dots, w_{M_w^n}^n]^T & \text{if } N^n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases} \quad (12.13)$$

As mentioned in [G], the inner boundaries do not have to be at the center (as presented here), but anywhere along the system, the limit being one point from the boundary. Thus, if  $M^n$  and  $M_w^n$  are calculated using  $M^n = N^n - 1$  and  $M_w^n = 1$ , the method still works. Notice that if this definition is used, grid points will only be added and removed from  $\mathbf{u}^n$ , and Eqs. (12.11) and (12.13) reduce to

$$\mathbf{u}^n = [(\mathbf{u}^n)^T, I_3 \mathbf{v}^n]^T, \quad \text{if } N^n > N^{n-1}$$

and

$$\mathbf{u}^n = [u_0^n, u_1^n, \dots, u_{M^n-1}^n]^T, \quad \text{if } N^n < N^{n-1} \quad (12.14)$$

respectively.

### 12.2.4 Displacement correction

An issue that arises when increasing  $c^n$ , is that  $u_{M^n}^n \not\approx w_0^n$  at the time of removal. As  $\alpha \approx 0$  at this moment, this violates the rigid connection in Eq. (12.8).

Paper [G] proposes to ‘correct’ the state of the grid points at the inner boundaries

### 12.2.5 Matrix form

The vectors in Eq. (12.10) can be concatenated to one larger state vector as<sup>1</sup>

$$\mathcal{U}^n = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}^n \\ \mathbf{w}^n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (12.15)$$

Rewriting (??) in one-step form (see Section 3.5.1),

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{U}^{n+1} \\ \mathcal{U}^n \end{bmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{C}_+^{-1}\mathbf{B} & \mathbf{C}_+^{-1}\mathbf{C}_- \\ \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{Q}} \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{U}^n \\ \mathcal{U}^{n-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (12.16)$$

[create](#)

where  $I$  and allows for a modal analysis to be performed. For static parameters, the complex frequency of the  $p$ 'th mode can be retrieved as

$$s_p = \frac{1}{k} \ln \left( \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{Q}) \right), \quad (12.17)$$

where the frequency (in Hz) and damping (in  $s^{-1}$ ) of the  $p$ 'th mode can be retrieved using  $f_p = \Im(s_p)/2\pi$  and  $\sigma_p = \Re(s_p)$  respectively. Here,  $\Im(\cdot)$  and  $\Re(\cdot)$  denote the ‘imaginary’ and ‘real part of’. These definitions still hold for slow variations of  $c$ .

## 12.3 Iterations

Iterations have been:

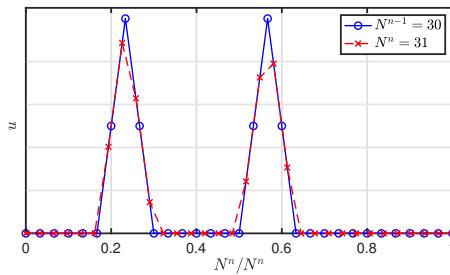
- Interpolated boundary conditions
- Linear interpolation

These sections  
are taken from  
the JASA ap-  
pendix

In this appendix, some iterations done over the course of this project will be shown in more detail. In the following, the 1D wave equation with a wave speed of  $c = 1470$  m/s, a length of  $L = 1$  m, Dirichlet boundary conditions and a sample rate of  $f_s = 44100$  Hz is considered, and – through Eq. (??) – satisfies the CFL condition with equality. These values result in  $N = 30$ , or a grid of 31 points including the boundaries. Then, the wave speed is decreased to  $c \approx 1422.6$  m/s, i.e., the wave speed that results in  $N = 31$  and satisfies the stability condition with equality again.

### 12.3.1 Full-grid interpolation

One way to go from one grid to another is performing a full-grid interpolation [2, Chap. 5]. If the number of points changes according to Eq. (12.2), i.e., if  $N^n \neq N^{n-1}$  the full state of the system ( $u_l^n, u_l^{n-1} \forall l$ ) can be interpolated to the new state. See Figure 12.2.



**Fig. 12.2:** Upsampling  $u$  (with an arbitrary state) using (linear) full-grid interpolation with  $N^{n-1} = 30$  and  $N^n = 31$ . The horizontal axis is normalised with respect to  $N^n$ .

An issue that arises using this method is that the Courant number  $\lambda$  will slightly deviate from the CFL condition as  $c$  changes. Using Eq. (??) with  $L/c\Delta t$  approaching 31 (from below), the minimum value of  $\lambda \approx 30/31 \approx 0.9677$ . This, employing Eq. (??), has a maximum frequency output of  $f_{\max} \approx 18,475$  Hz. The Courant number will deviate more for higher values of  $c$  and thus lower values for  $N$  – for instance, if  $N$  approaches 11 (from below),  $\lambda \approx 10/11 \approx 0.9091$  and  $f_{\max} \approx 16,018$  Hz.

Another problem with full-grid interpolation, is that it has a low-passing effect on the system state, and thus on the output sound. Furthermore, this state-interpolation causes artefacts or ‘clicks’ in the output sound as the method causes sudden variations in the states.

All the aforementioned issues could be solved by using a (much) higher sample rate and thus more grid points, but this would render this method impossible to work in real time.

<sup>1</sup>Note that **U** is capitalised though it is not a matrix, for coherency with paper [G].

### 12.3.2 Adding and removing points at the boundary

To solve the issues exhibited by a full-grid interpolation, points can be added and removed at a single location and leave most points unaffected by the parameter changes. A good candidate for a location to do this is at a fixed (Dirichlet) boundary. The state  $u$  at this location is always 0 so points can be added smoothly.

As  $c$  decreases,  $h$  can be calculated according to Eq. (??) and decreases as well.

This has a physical analogy with tuning a guitar string. Material enters and exits the neck (playable part of the string) at the nut, which in discrete time means grid points appearing and disappearing at one boundary.

To yield smooth changes between grid configurations, an interpolated boundary has been developed, the possibility of which has been briefly mentioned in [2, p. 145]. The Dirichlet condition in Eq. (2.39a) can be extended to be the simply supported boundary condition:

$$u(x, t) = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} u(x, t) = 0 \quad \text{where } x = 0, L, \quad (12.18)$$

or, when discretised,

$$u_l^n = \delta_{xx} u_l^n = 0, \quad \text{where } l = 0, N. \quad (12.19)$$

This means that on top of that the state of the boundary should be 0, the curvature around it should also be 0. One can again solve for the virtual grid points at the boundary locations, yielding

$$u_{-1}^n = -u_1^n \quad \text{and} \quad u_{N+1}^n = -u_{N-1}^n. \quad (12.20)$$

This is visualised in Figure 12.3.

If the flooring operation in Eq. (??) is removed this introduces a fractional number of grid points.

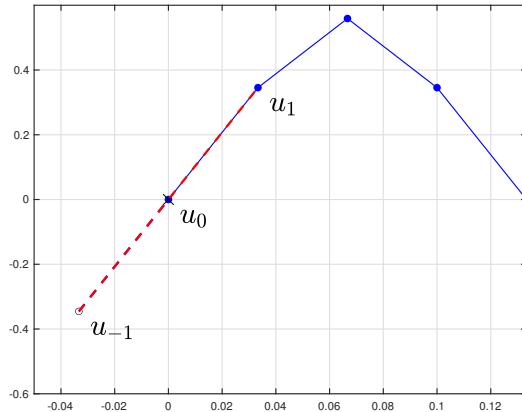
The by-product of using a fractional  $N$  this is that the CFL condition in (2.46) can now always be satisfied with equality no matter what the wave speed is.

An issue with this method is that removing points is much harder than adding.

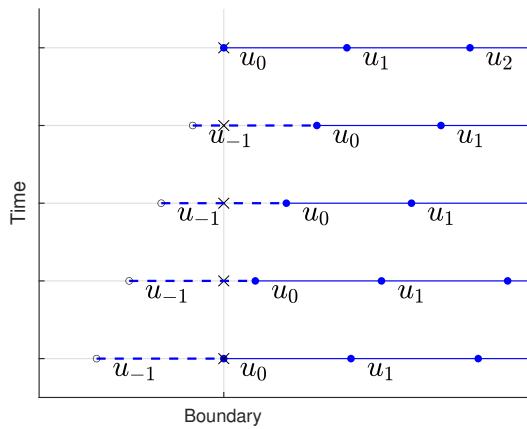
their interactions change through a change in the grid spacing and wave speed. This interaction, though, is defined by  $\lambda$  which

### 12.3.3 Cubic interpolation

### 12.3.4 Sinc interpolation



**Fig. 12.3:** The simply supported boundary condition: both the state and the curvature at the boundary – at  $t = 0$  – should be 0.



**Fig. 12.4:** The grid changing over time

## 12.4 Displacement correction implementation

One detail that was not provided in paper [G], is the implementation of the displacement correction. When the wave speed is increased and points are removed, it is not necessarily true that  $u_M = w_0$  at the time of removal and the rigid connection in (??) is violated. On top of the virtual grid point “generation” from the interpolation described above, one could add a connection force that is dependent on how close the inner boundaries  $u_M$  and  $w_0$  are.

Equation (??) can be extended to include a spring force between  $u_M$  and  $w_0$  as

$$\begin{cases} \delta_{tt} u^n &= c^2 \delta_{xx} u^n + J(x_{u_M}) F \\ \delta_{tt} w^n &= c^2 \delta_{xx} w_0^n - J(x_{w_0}) F \end{cases} \quad (12.21)$$

with

$$F = \beta \mu_t \eta^n. \quad (12.22)$$

Here,

$$\eta^n \triangleq w_0^n - u_M^n \quad (12.23)$$

is the difference in displacement between the inner boundaries and  $\beta = \beta(\alpha)$  acts as a spring coefficient that is a function of the distance between the inner boundaries along the grid, i.e.,  $\alpha$ . Furthermore, the centred temporal averaging operator  $\mu_t$ . is used in (12.22) to ensure stability [51].

We then continue by finding a definition for  $\beta$  that is inversely proportional to  $\alpha$ , i.e., the smaller  $\alpha$  is the higher the ‘correction’ effect, ideally approaching an infinite stiffness, or rigid connection, when  $\alpha = 0$  and no stiffness when  $\alpha \rightarrow 1$ . This can be achieved by defining  $\beta = \beta(\alpha)$  as

$$\beta = \frac{1 - \alpha}{\alpha + \epsilon}, \quad (12.24)$$

with  $0 < \epsilon \ll 1$  to prevent a division by 0. It will be shown that when calculating the force after expansion, a division by 0 can be prevented and  $\epsilon = 0$  will still yield a defined solution. We can observe that when  $\alpha = 0$  and the correction effect needs to be at a maximum,  $\beta \rightarrow \infty$ . When  $\alpha \rightarrow 1$ ,  $\beta \rightarrow 0$ .

We can also add a damping term to (12.22) which is also scaled by  $\beta$  as

$$F = \beta (\mu_t \cdot \eta^n + \sigma_0 \delta_t \cdot \eta^n), \quad (12.25)$$

where  $\sigma_0$  is the damping coefficient. Then, we can solve for  $\eta^{n+1}$

$$\begin{aligned} F &= \beta \left( \frac{1}{2} (\eta^{n+1} + \eta^{n-1}) + \frac{\sigma_0}{2k} (\eta^{n+1} - \eta^{n-1}) \right) \\ F &= \left( \frac{\beta(1 + \sigma_0/k)}{2} \right) \eta^{n+1} + \left( \frac{\beta(1 - \sigma_0/k)}{2} \right) \eta^{n-1} \\ \xlongequal{\text{Eq. (12.24)}} \quad \eta^{n+1} &= \left( \frac{2(\alpha + \epsilon)}{(1 + \sigma_0/k)(1 - \alpha)} \right) F - \underbrace{\frac{1 - \sigma_0/k}{1 + \sigma_0/k}}_r \eta^{n-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (12.26)$$

Using superscript I to denote an intermediate state describing of  $u_M^{n+1}$  and  $w_0^{n+1}$  without the connection force (see ??), we also know, through Eq. (12.23), that

$$\begin{aligned} \eta^{n+1} &= w_0^I - \frac{k^2}{h} F - \left( u_M^I + \frac{k^2}{h} F \right) \\ \eta^{n+1} &= w_0^I - u_M^I - \frac{2k^2}{h} F, \end{aligned} \quad (12.27)$$

which can be set equal to (12.26) and solved for  $F$  according to

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{2(\alpha + \epsilon)}{(1 + \sigma_0/k)(1 - \alpha)} \right) F - r\eta^{n-1} &= w_0^I - u_M^I - \frac{2k^2}{h} F \\ \left( \frac{2h(\alpha + \epsilon) + 2k^2(1 + \sigma_0/k)(1 - \alpha)}{h(1 + \sigma_0/k)(1 - \alpha)} \right) F &= w_0^I - u_M^I + r\eta^{n-1} \\ F &= (w_0^I - u_M^I + r\eta^{n-1}) \left( \frac{h(1 + \sigma_0/k)(1 - \alpha)}{2h(\alpha + \epsilon) + 2k^2(1 + \sigma_0/k)(1 - \alpha)} \right) \end{aligned}$$

It is clear now that no matter the value of  $\alpha$ , no division by 0 will occur, so  $\epsilon = 0$  is still defined. The final equation for  $F$  can thus be written as

$$F = (w_0^I - u_M^I + r\eta^{n-1}) \underbrace{\left( \frac{h(1 + \sigma_0/k)(1 - \alpha)}{2h\alpha + 2k^2(1 + \sigma_0/k)(1 - \alpha)} \right)}_{\Psi}. \quad (12.28)$$

This can then be filled into (12.21) and used to get  $u_M^{n+1}$  and  $w_0^{n+1}$  respectively. Using  $\alpha = 0$  and  $\sigma_0 = 0$  as a test case to see what would happen to the scheme at the inner boundaries when they perfectly overlap (and without damping,

just restoring force), we get that  $r = 1$  and (12.28) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} F &= (w_0^I - u_M^I + \eta^{n-1}) \left( \frac{h}{2k^2} \right) \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Eq. (12.27)}} \quad F &= \left( \eta^{n+1} + \frac{2k^2}{h} F + \eta^{n-1} \right) \left( \frac{h}{2k^2} \right) \\ F - F &= \eta^{n+1} + \eta^{n-1} \\ 2\mu_t \cdot \eta^n &= 0 \\ \mu_t \cdot \eta^n &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

showing that when  $\alpha = 0$ , the  $\eta^n$  should be 0 and thus boils down to a rigid connection.

### Modal analysis

Due to the damping that is present in the system, it needs to be written in one-step form. Recalling (??) we can write (12.21) in vector-matrix form

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{U}^{n+1} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{U}^n + \mathbf{C}\mathbf{U}^{n-1} \quad (12.29)$$

and rewrite to one-step form as decapitalise u!

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U}^{n+1} \\ \mathbf{U}^n \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{W}^{n+1}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{B} & \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{C} \\ \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{Q}} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U}^n \\ \mathbf{U}^{n-1} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{W}^n} \quad (12.30)$$

The most straightforward way to obtain the matrices, is to expand the forces in system (12.21) directly. Recalling  $\mathbf{U}$  from (??) (of size  $\mathcal{M} = M + M_w$ ) and including the virtual grid point definitions encapsulated in  $\mathbf{B}_2$ , we can rewrite the system to

$$\mathbf{I}\mathbf{U}^{n+1} = \mathbf{B}_2\mathbf{U}^n - \mathbf{I}\mathbf{U}^{n-1} + (\mathbf{J}\boldsymbol{\eta}) \frac{\beta k^2}{2} ((1 + \sigma_0/k)\mathbf{U}^{n+1} + (1 - \sigma_0/k)\mathbf{U}^{n-1}) \quad (12.31)$$

where

$$\mathbf{J} = [\mathbf{0}_{M-1}, 1/h, -1/h, \mathbf{0}_{M_w-1}]^T \quad (12.32)$$

where  $\mathbf{0}_i$  is a row-vector of zeros with length  $i$  and

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = [\mathbf{0}_{M-1}, -1, 1, \mathbf{0}_{M_w-1}]. \quad (12.33)$$

vectorising the effect of (12.23) on  $\mathbf{U}$ . Note that as  $\mathbf{J}$  is a column vector and  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  a row vector, the multiplication of the two yields an  $\mathcal{M} \times \mathcal{M}$  matrix.

Then refactoring to the form in (12.29) and using identity matrix  $\mathbf{I}$  with size

$\mathcal{M} \times \mathcal{M}$  yields the following matrices

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I} - \frac{\beta k^2(1 + \sigma_0/k)}{2} \mathbf{J}\boldsymbol{\eta}, \quad \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}_2, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{C} = -\left(\mathbf{I} - \frac{\beta k^2(1 - \sigma_0/k)}{2} \mathbf{J}\boldsymbol{\eta}\right) \quad (12.34)$$

Although substituting these definitions into (12.30) gives an identical result to the matrix definitions above (comparisons show a difference between the  $\mathbf{Q}$  matrices around machine precision),  $\beta$  can still go to infinity. In this case,  $\epsilon \neq 0$  in (12.24).

## 12.5 Analysis and experiments

### 12.5.1 Interpolation technique

### 12.5.2 Interpolation range

### 12.5.3 Location

... where to add and remove points

Using the whole range, we can still add/remove points at the sides.

## 12.6 Discussion and conclusion

# Chapter 13

## Real-Time Implementation

JUCE Give overall structure of code

Implementation of the physical models using FDTD methods

As mentioned in Chapter 1, FDTD methods are used for high-quality and accurate simulations, rather than for real-time applications. This is due to their lack of simplifications.

Usually, MATLAB is used for simulating

Here, an interactive application is considered real-time when

*Control of the application generates or manipulates audio with no noticeable latency.*

For human-computer interaction, the task at hand greatly determines how much latency is acceptable. Wessel and Wright [104] place the upper limit of latency when interacting with computers for musical purposes at 10 ms. Moreover, they place the a limit on the *jitter*, or of variation of the latency, at 1 ms. **It is thus important to keep the CPU usage at a fixed level, and different ways of controlling and interacting with the application should not influence the number of computations much...**

Also the application needs to be controlled continuously

Naming conventions: CamelCase...

Finite representation:  $1.80 \cdot 10^{308}$

Helps to (informally) evaluate the models by interacting with it in a natural way (rather than static parameters)

Refer to [70] somewhere here

Figure with  
programming  
languages  
sorted by  
speed

### 13.1 MATLAB vs. C++

It is usually a good idea to prototype a physical modelling application in MATLAB for several reasons:

- Easier to debug
  - Plotting functionality
  - No need for memory handling
- Instability due to programming errors

### 13.1.1 Speed

Here is where the power of C++

### 13.1.2 Syntax

Indexing in Matlab is 1-based, meaning that the index of a vector starts at 1. If  $u$  is a vector with 10 elements, the first element is retrieved as  $u(1)$  and the last as  $u(10)$ . C++, on the other hand, is 0-based and retrieving the first and last element of a size-10 vector happens through  $u[0]$  and  $u[9]$  respectively.

## 13.2 Do's and don'ts in real-time FD schemes

"The real problem is that programmers have spent far too much time worrying about efficiency in the wrong places and at the wrong times; premature optimization is the root of all evil (or at least most of it) in programming." [Knuth 1974]

(Knuth, Donald E. (Dec. 1974). "Computer Programming As an Art". In: Commun. ACM 17.12, pp. 667–673. ISSN: 0001-0782. DOI: 10.1145/361604.361612. URL: <http://doi.acm.org/10.1145/361604.361612>.) Some of the things I learned (the hard way)...

- Create a limiter
- Structure your application into classes
- Use pointer switches
- Comment your code (hehe)
- Working with JUCE: select your audio output before building the application...

### Create a limiter

Programming errors happen. To save your speakers, headphones or – most importantly – your ears, create a limiter.

```
double limit (double val)
{
    if (val < -1)
    {
        val = -1;
        return val;
    }
    else if (val > 1)
    {
        val = 1;
        return val;
    }
    return val;
}
```

---

```
1 for i = 0:lengthSound
2     uNext = ...
3 end
```

### Use pointer switches

One of the most important things in working with FD schemes for real-time audio applications is to

The maximum number of copy-operations this takes is  $2(N + 1)$  if the boundaries also need updated in the case of free or Neumann boundary conditions. For a string with simply supported or clamped boundary conditions this can be reduced to  $2N$  or  $2(N - 1)$  respectively, but does not make big difference in computational time.

A pointer switch, however, only needs 4 copy-operations per iteration as shown in Algorithm 13.1

```
1 for n = 1:lengthSound
2     ...
3     uPrev = u;
4     u = uNext;
5 end
```

---

In C++ this is done using

```
double updateStates()
{
    double* uTmp = u[2];
    u[2] = u[1];
    u[1] = u[0];
```

```

        u[0] = uTmp;
    }

```

**Algorithm 13.1:** Implementation of a pointer switch also shown in Figure 13.1b. A temporary pointer is assigned to where the  $u^{n-1}$  pointer is currently pointing at to be able to assign that location in memory to the  $u^{n+1}$  pointer in the end.

### Grouping terms and precalculating coefficients

Generally in implementations of FD schemes the most computationally expensive part of the algorithm is the calculation of the scheme itself. This is due to the rate at which it needs to be updated which usually is 44100 Hz. Graphics can be updated at rates orders of magnitude lower than the audio (say 10-20 Hz) and still be considered smooth enough.

Recall the update equation for the 1D wave update equation in Eq. (2.44)

$$u_l^{n+1} = (2 - 2\lambda^2)u_l^n - u_l^{n-1} + \lambda^2(u_{l+1}^n + u_{l-1}^n).$$

Grouping the terms like this allows for the coefficients multiplied onto the grid function at different temporal and spatial indices to be precomputed. This can significantly decrease the number of operations per sample.

The undamped stiff string FD scheme

$$\delta_{tt}u_l^n = c^2\delta_{xx}u_l^n - \kappa^2\delta_{xxxx}u_l^n, \quad (13.1)$$

can be expanded to an update equation as

$$u_l^{n+1} = 2u_l^n - u_l^{n-1} + \lambda^2(u_{l+1}^n - 2u_l^n + u_{l-1}^n) - \mu^2(u_{l+2}^n - 4u_{l+1}^n + 6u_l^n + -4u_{l-1}^n + u_{l-2}^n) \quad (13.2)$$

where  $\lambda = ck/h$  and  $\mu = \kappa k/h^2$ .

For implementation purposes there is a better way to write this scheme that reduces the number of computations. This is done by collecting the terms based on the grid function and pre-calculating the coefficients multiplied onto these. As the schemes are spatially symmetric, “neighbouring points” relative to  $u_l^n$  can also be grouped to get

$$u_l^{n+1} = \underbrace{(2 - 2\lambda^2 - 6\mu^2)}_{B1} u_l^n + \underbrace{(\lambda^2 + 4\mu^2)}_{B2} (u_{l+1}^n + u_{l-1}^n) - \underbrace{\mu^2(u_{l+2}^n + u_{l-2}^n)}_{B3} - \underbrace{u_l^{n-1}}_{C1}. \quad (13.3)$$

These coefficients can then be pre-calculated and do not have to be

---

```

//// Constructor /////
B1 = 2.0 - 2.0 * lambdaSq - 6.0 * muSq; // u_1^n
B2 = lambdaSq + 4.0 * muSq; // u_{1+1}^n
B3 = -muSq; // u_{1+2}^n

```

### 13.3. Optimisation strategies

```
C1 = -1.0; // u_1^{n-1}

//// Function where scheme is calculated ////
for (int l = 2; l < N-1; ++l) // clamped boundaries
{
    u[0][1] = B1 * u[1][1]
        + B2 * (u[1][l+1] + u[1][l-1])
        + B3 * (u[1][l+2] + u[1][l-2])
        + C1 * u[2][1];
}
```

---

Algorithm 13.2: Precalculation

#### Denormalised numbers

The damping present in FD schemes causes the state of the system to exponentially decay. What this means for the values of the state vectors in implementation, is that they keep getting closer to 0 but never reach it.

After a long period of time, which depends on the damping coefficients, state values can get in the range of  $\sim 10^{-307}$ ! Numbers in this range are referred to as *denormalised numbers* and operations with these are “extremely slow” [105].

Although it rarely happens that numbers end up in this range, especially when the application is continuously interacted with, it is good to account for the possibility. For example, due to the very high damping of the body in the Tromba Marina application in Chapter 15, denormalised numbers appear after  $\sim 10$  s of not interacting with the instrument, and the CPU usage shoots up. There are specific processor flags that can be activated to truncate denormalised numbers to 0. To retain generality (cross-platform, various processors), one could implement a simple check per buffer to see whether values are smaller than fx.  $10^{-250}$  and truncate all values of that system to 0.

## 13.3 Optimisation strategies

AVX GPU etc..[42]

## 13.4 Graphics

---

```
void Simple1DWave::paint (juce::Graphics& g)
{
    // clear the background
    g.fillAll (getLookAndFeel().findColour
(juce::ResizableWindow::backgroundColourId));
```

## Chapter 13. Real-Time Implementation

```
Path stringState = visualiseState (g, 100);

// choose your favourite colour
g.setColour (Colours::cyan);

// visualScaling depends on your excitation
g.strokePath (visualiseState (g, 100), PathStrokeType(2.0f));

}

Path Simple1DWave::visualiseState (Graphics& g, double visualScaling)
{
    // String-boundaries are in the vertical middle of the component
    double stringBoundaries = getHeight() / 2.0;

    // initialise path
    Path stringPath;

    // start path
    stringPath.startNewSubPath (0, -u[1][0] * visualScaling +
        stringBoundaries);

    double spacing = getWidth() / static_cast<double>(N);
    double x = spacing;

    for (int l = 1; l <= N; l++)
    {
        // Needs to be -u, because a positive u would visually go down
        float newY = -u[1][l] * visualScaling + stringBoundaries;
        if (isnan(x) || isinf(abs(x)) || isnan(u[1][l]) ||
            isinf(abs(u[1][l])))
            std::cout << "Wait" << std::endl;

        // if we get NAN values, make sure that we don't get an
        // exception
        if (isnan(newY))
            newY = 0;

        stringPath.lineTo (x, newY);
        x += spacing;
    }

    return stringPath;
}
```

---

```
void Simple1DWave::excite()
{
    //// Raised cosine excitation ////

    // width (in grid points) of the excitation
    double width = 10;
    double excitationLoc = 0.2;
```

```

// make sure we're not going out of bounds at the left boundary
int start = std::max (floor((N+1) * excitationLoc) - floor(width *
0.5), 1.0);

for (int l = 0; l < width; ++l)
{
    // make sure we're not going out of bounds
    // at the right boundary (this does 'cut off'
    // the raised cosine)

    if (l+start > N - 1)
        break;

    u[1][l+start] += 0.5 * (1 - cos(2.0 * double_Pi * l /
(width-1.0)));
    u[2][l+start] += 0.5 * (1 - cos(2.0 * double_Pi * l /
(width-1.0)));
}
}

```

---

## 13.5 Matrices

Library called *Eigen* [106]

### 13.5.1 Matrix inversions in real-time

For small ( $2 \times 2$  and  $3 \times 3$ ) matrices it is doable to do the inversion ‘by hand’. This requires finding the *determinant* of a matrix

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{w},$$

where

$$\mathbf{A}^{-1} = \frac{1}{a_{00} \cdot a_{11} - a_{01} \cdot a_{10}} \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & -a_{01} \\ -a_{10} & a_{00} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.4)$$


---

```

det = a00 * a11 - a01 * a10;
u0 = (w0 * a11 - w1 * a01) / det;
u1 = (-w0 * a10 + w1 * a00) / det;

```

---

The computational complexity of th inversion of an  $n \times n$  matrix is (at worst)  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$ . For real-time applications, the size of matrices one wants to invert thus need to be kept to a minimum...

The difference between inverting a  $2 \times 2$  matrix and a  $3 \times 3$

## 13.6 Control

Throughout this project, two hardware devices to expressively control the simulated instruments have been investigated. These are the Sensel Morph and the PHANTOM Omni, both of which will be briefly described here.

### 13.6.1 Sensel Morph

The *Sensel Morph*, or Sensel for short, is a high-accuracy pressure sensitive touch controller (see Figure 13.2)

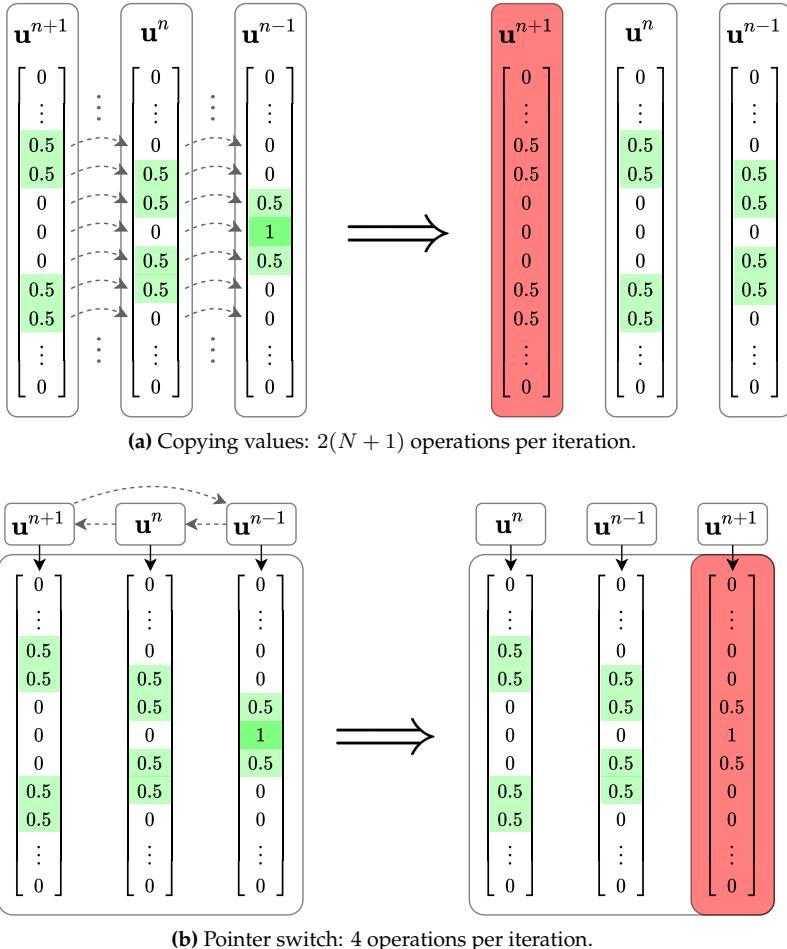
The controller has been used to control the physical models in paper

### 13.6.2 PHANTOM Omni

The PHANTOM Omni, or Omni for short, is a six-degrees-of-freedom device that provides force and vibrotactile feedback (see Figure ??)

## 13.7 Discussion and Conclusion

No proper comparisons have been done between MATLAB and C++ examples can be found in [70] and [42]



**Fig. 13.1:** Updating the state vectors by (a) copying all values individually, or (b) performing a pointer switch. Non-zero values are highlighted in green for clarity. The values of the red vector will be overwritten by the update of the scheme in the next iteration so these values will no longer be used.



**Fig. 13.2:** The Sensel Morph.

# **Chapter 14**

## **Large Scale Modular Physical Models**

This chapter will provide an extended summary for the work presented in the papers “Real-Time Control of Large-Scale Modular Physical Models using the Sensel Morph” [A] and “Physical Models and Real-Time Control with the Sensel Morph” [B]. Paper [A] presents the work done on various physical models connected by nonlinear springs using three instruments as case studies: the esraj (bowed sitar), the hammered dulcimer and the hurdy gurdy. This chapter will introduce the models used with reference to the previous chapters and will build on the contents of paper [A] by providing more details on the implementation.

### **14.1 Models**

All instruments use multiple instances of the stiff string presented in Chapter 4 and the thin plate presented in Section 6.3 same set of models: The models used are the

### **14.2 Esraj: bowed sitar**

- Stiff String
- Thin Plate
- Pluck
- Bow
- Non-linear spring connections

### 14.3 Hammered dulcimer

- Stiff String
- Thin Plate
- Hammer (simple)
- Non-linear spring connections

### 14.4 Hurdy gurdy

- Stiff String
- Thin Plate
- Pluck
- Bow
- Non-linear spring connections

# Chapter 15

## Tromba Marina

This chapter provides an extended summary for the physical model presented in the paper “Real-time Implementation of a Physical Model of the Tromba Marina” [D] and used in the paper “Resurrecting the Tromba Marina: A Bowed Virtual Reality Instrument using Haptic Feedback and Accurate Physical Modelling” [E]. After a general summary of these papers, the physical model will be summarised, with reference to the theory explained in the previous parts of this thesis. Finally, this chapter extends on the contents of paper [D] by providing more details on the implementation and an energy analysis.

### 15.1 Summary

The tromba marina is a bowed monochord instrument from medieval Europe (see Figure 15.1). It has a long quasi-trapezoidal body and is unique due to its oddly-shaped bridge that the string rests on. The bridge is often called a ‘shoe’ due to its shape and is free to rattle against the body in sympathy with the movement of the vibrating string (see Figure 15.2). This rattling causes a sound with brass or trumpet-like qualities, hence the name *tromba* which stems from the Italian word trumpet. The rarity of the instrument as well as its interesting physics makes it an ideal case for a physical modelling implementation.

#### **Real-time implementation and control**

Paper [D] presents a physical model of the tromba marina and its real-time implementation. The paper uses the Sensel morph for control of the algorithm. See Section 13.6.1 for more information on this controller. To approach the interaction paradigm of the real-life instrument, a virtual reality (VR) application was made from where the algorithm could be controlled. For this end, the PHANTOM Omni haptic device was used to control the implementation and



**Fig. 15.1:** The tromba marina from the Danish Music Museum in Copenhagen. (As shown in paper [D].)

presented in paper [E]. See Section 13.6.2 for more details on this device. The VR implementation has been evaluated and the results will be summarised below.

### Evaluation and results

The VR implementation of the tromba marina was evaluated on 14 participants. The goals of the evaluation was to determine the general experience of bowing in a VR environment, and to evaluate the playability of a VR monochord instrument. The data was collected using a combination of qualitative and quantitative methods as detailed in paper [E]. The questions asked in the quantitative part of the evaluation were divided into haptics, visuals, audio, and overall experience of the application.

The results show that the various modalities (visuals, audio and haptics) seemed to reinforce each other and that the haptic feedback provided by the PHANTOM Omni was deemed “realistic” and “natural”. The overall playability of the instrument was thus concluded to be satisfactory, though improvements could be made.



**Fig. 15.2:** The bridge of the tromba marina from the Danish Music Museum in Copenhagen. The right side of the bridge is pressed against the body by the string while the left side is free and can rattle against the body. (As shown in paper [D].)

## 15.2 Physical model

This section presents the physical model of the tromba marina with reference to the theory presented in Parts II, III and IV. As much as possible, this chapter follows the notation of paper [D], as long as it is coherent with what has already been presented in this thesis. Any discrepancies between this chapter and the paper will be clearly highlighted.

### 15.2.1 Continuous time

The full musical instrument has been divided into three parts: the string, the bridge and the body, each of which will briefly be presented here. Each resonator in isolation is of the form

$$\mathcal{L}q = 0 \quad (15.1)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}$  is a linear (partial) differential operator and  $q(\mathbf{x}, t)$  describes the state of the component in isolation.  $q$  is defined for time  $t \geq 0$  and spatial coordinate  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D}$  where the dimensions of domain  $\mathcal{D}$  depend on the dimensions of the system at hand. Using the form in Eq. (15.1) allows for a much more compact notation later on. In the following, subscripts 's', 'm' and 'p' will be used to denote the 'string', 'bridge' (mass), and 'body' (plate) respectively.

## String

The string of the tromba marina is modelled as a damped stiff string of length  $L$  (in m) (see Chapter 4). With reference to the form in (15.1), its transverse displacement is described by  $q = u(\chi, t)$  (in m) and is defined for  $\chi \in \mathcal{D}_s$  where domain  $\mathcal{D}_s = [0, L]$ .<sup>1</sup> Using partial differential operator  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_s$ , the PDE describing its motion is defined as

$$\mathcal{L}_s u = 0, \quad (15.2)$$

where (see Eq. (4.4))

$$\mathcal{L}_s = \rho_s A \partial_t^2 - T \partial_\chi^2 + E_s I \partial_\chi^4 + 2\rho_s A \sigma_{0,s} \partial_t - 2\rho_s A \sigma_{1,s} \partial_t \partial_\chi^2.$$

The parameters are as defined for Eq. (4.4) with the possible addition of the ‘s’ subscript. Compared to the schemes presented in previous chapters, using a partial differential operator to combine all operators like this, is solely different from a notational point of view, and does not change the behaviour of the system. If Eq. (15.2) is expanded and all terms except for  $\rho_s A \partial_t^2$  are moved to the right-hand side, one arrives at the damped stiff string PDE in Eq. (4.4) again.

As the string is bowed, one can extend the PDE in (15.2) to

$$\mathcal{L}_s u = -\delta(\chi - \chi_B) F_B \Phi(v_{\text{rel}}), \quad (15.3)$$

with bow position  $\chi_B = \chi_B(t) \in \mathcal{D}_s$  (in m), bow force  $F_B = F_B(t)$  and relative velocity between the bow and the string  $v_{\text{rel}} = v_{\text{rel}}(t)$ . The static friction model in Eq. (8.16) has been chosen for simplicity. For more details on this bow model, see Section 8.4.

## Bridge

The bridge is modelled using a mass-spring-damper system (see Section 9.1). With reference to Eq. (15.1), the transverse displacement of the mass is described by  $q = w(t)$  (in m) and using differential operator  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_m$ , its PDE is

$$\mathcal{L}_m w = 0, \quad (15.4)$$

where (see Eq. (9.1))

$$\mathcal{L}_m = M \frac{d^2}{dt^2} + M\omega_0^2 + M\sigma_m \frac{d}{dt}.$$

---

<sup>1</sup>Notice that  $\chi$  rather than  $x$  is used here. As  $x$  will be used as a spatial coordinate for the body later on, a different symbol is used for the string to differentiate between two coordinate-systems.

## 15.2. Physical model

Here,  $\omega_0 = \sqrt{K/M}$  (in  $s^{-1}$ ) and  $\sigma_m = R/M$  (in  $s^{-1}$ ) and other parameters are as in Eq. (9.1).<sup>2</sup>

Notice that when using a differential operator for an ODE, the dots to denote a temporal derivative (as e.g. Eq. (9.1)) need to be written in an operator form. Here, Leibniz's notation is chosen (see Section 2.1).

### Body

The body of the instrument is simplified to a damped rectangular thin plate of side lengths  $L_x$  and  $L_y$  (in m) (see Section 6.3). Again, with reference to Eq. (15.1), its transverse displacement is described by  $q = z(x, y, t)$  (in m) and is defined for  $(x, y) \in \mathcal{D}_p$  where domain  $\mathcal{D}_p = [0, L_x] \times [0, L_y]$ . Using partial differential operator  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_p$ , the PDE describing the motion of the body is

$$\mathcal{L}_p z = 0, \quad (15.5)$$

where (see Eq. (6.38))

$$\mathcal{L}_p = \rho_p H \partial_t^2 + D \Delta \Delta + 2\rho_p H \sigma_{0,p} \partial_t - 2\rho_p H \sigma_{1,p} \partial_t \Delta,$$

with  $D = E_p H^3 / 12(1 - \nu^2)$ . Again, parameters are as defined in Eq. (6.38).

### Interactions

The three components interact using the non-iterative collision methods presented in Chapter 10. Recalling the importance of the relative location of the various objects (see Section 10.1), the string is placed above the bridge, which is placed above the body. This arrangement will, in turn, determine the definitions of  $\eta$  and the directions of the forces in the eventual system. In the following, subscripts 'sm' and 'mp' are used to denote a 'string-mass' and 'mass-plate' interaction respectively.

klopt dit?

The bridge-body interaction is modelled using the collision-potential in Eq. (10.1):

$$\phi(\eta) = \frac{K_{mp}}{\alpha_{mp} + 1} [\eta_{mp}]_+^{\alpha_{mp} + 1}, \quad (15.6)$$

where  $\eta_{mp} = \eta_{mp}(t) = w(t) - z(x_{mp}, y_{mp}, t)$  and the location on the plate where the bridge collides is  $(x_{mp}, y_{mp}) \in \mathcal{D}_p$ .

The string interacts with the bridge using the two-sided collision potential presented in Eq. (10.35):

$$\phi(\eta_{sm}) = \frac{K_{sm}}{\alpha_{sm} + 1} |\eta_{sm}|^{\alpha_{sm} + 1}, \quad (15.7)$$

---

<sup>2</sup>In paper [D], the symbol  $R$  is used for the damping coefficient, but for coherence in this work,  $\sigma_m$  is used instead.

which acts as a connection. Here,  $\eta_{\text{sm}} = \eta_{\text{sm}}(t) = u(\chi_{\text{sm}}, t) - w(t)$  (in m) and the location of where the bridge is connected along the string is  $\chi_{\text{sm}} \in \mathcal{D}_{\text{s}}$ .

Recalling the process of writing the collision potential in quadratic form in Eq. (10.4)

$$\phi'(\eta) = \psi\psi' \quad \text{where} \quad \psi = \sqrt{2\phi} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi' = \frac{\dot{\psi}}{\dot{\eta}}, \quad (15.8)$$

the complete system can be written next.

### Complete system

Looking towards discretisation, the separate variables  $g_{\text{sm}} = \psi'_{\text{sm}}$  and  $g_{\text{mp}} = \psi'_{\text{mp}}$  are used and the full system can be written as

$$\mathcal{L}_s u = -\delta(\chi - \chi_B) F_B + \delta(\chi - \chi_{\text{sm}}) \psi_{\text{sm}} g_{\text{sm}}, \quad (15.9a)$$

$$\mathcal{L}_m w = -\psi_{\text{sm}} g_{\text{sm}} + \psi_{\text{mp}} g_{\text{mp}}, \quad (15.9b)$$

$$\mathcal{L}_p z = -\delta(x - x_{\text{mp}}, y - y_{\text{mp}}) \psi_{\text{mp}} g_{\text{mp}}, \quad (15.9c)$$

$$\dot{\psi}_{\text{sm}} = g_{\text{sm}} \dot{\eta}_{\text{sm}}, \quad (15.9d)$$

$$\dot{\psi}_{\text{mp}} = g_{\text{mp}} \dot{\eta}_{\text{mp}}, \quad (15.9e)$$

$$\eta_{\text{sm}}(t) = w(t) - u(\chi_{\text{sm}}, t), \quad (15.9f)$$

$$\eta_{\text{mp}}(t) = z(x_{\text{mp}}, y_{\text{mp}}, t) - w(t). \quad (15.9g)$$

Notice that when compared to the system presented in paper [D], Eqs. (15.9d) and (15.9e) have been added for coherence with the theory presented in Chapter 10, as well as the introduction of  $g_{\text{sm}}$  and  $g_{\text{mp}}$  already in the continuous system.

[Insert figure 4 of the SMC paper here](#)

#### 15.2.2 Discrete time

Using the process explained in Section 10.1.2 for discretising the collision terms and introducing<sup>3</sup>

$$\xi^n = \frac{k}{2} g^n \delta_t \cdot \eta^n + \psi^{n-1/2}, \quad (15.10)$$

for brevity, system (15.9) can be discretised as follows:<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup>The definition for  $\xi^n$  was wrong in paper [D], where  $\psi^{n-1/2}$  was subtracted rather than added. It has been corrected here and included in Appendix A.

<sup>4</sup>Notice that subscript  $l$  is used as a spatial index for both the string and the plate for coherency with the paper, but are used as an index for different coordinate systems.

## 15.2. Physical model

$$\ell_s u_l^n = -J_{l,3}(\chi_B) F_B + J_{l,0}(\chi_{sm}) \xi_{sm}^n g_{sm}^n, \quad (15.11a)$$

$$\ell_m w^n = -\xi_{sm}^n g_{sm}^n + \xi_{mp}^n g_{mp}^n, \quad (15.11b)$$

$$\ell_p z_{l,m}^n = -J_{(l,m),0}(x_{mp}, y_{mp}) \xi_{mp}^n g_{mp}^n, \quad (15.11c)$$

$$\delta_t \psi_{sm}^{n-1/2} = g_{sm}^n \delta_t \eta_{sm}^n, \quad (15.11d)$$

$$\delta_t \psi_{mp}^{n-1/2} = g_{mp}^n \delta_t \eta_{mp}^n, \quad (15.11e)$$

$$\eta_{sm}^n = w^n - u_{br}^n, \quad (15.11f)$$

$$\eta_{mp}^n = z_{br}^n - w^n, \quad (15.11g)$$

where the discrete linear (partial) differential operators  $\ell$  are the discrete counterparts of  $\mathcal{L}$  in system (15.9) and are discretised as shown in their respective chapters as

$$\ell_s = \rho_s A \delta_{tt} - T \delta_{\chi\chi} + EI \delta_{\chi\chi\chi\chi} + 2\rho_s A \sigma_{0,s} \delta_t - 2\rho_s A \sigma_{1,s} \delta_{t-\delta_{\chi\chi}}, \quad (15.12a)$$

$$\ell_b = M \delta_{tt} + M \omega_0^2 + M \sigma_m \delta_t, \quad (15.12b)$$

$$\ell_p = \rho_p H \delta_{tt} + D \delta_\Delta \delta_\Delta + 2\rho_p H \sigma_{0,p} \delta_t - 2\rho_p H \sigma_{1,p} \delta_{t-\delta_\Delta}. \quad (15.12c)$$

Furthermore, the definitions for  $g_{sm}^n$  and  $g_{mp}^n$  can be found in Eq. (10.16)<sup>5</sup> and  $J_{l,0}(\chi_{sm})$  and  $J_{l,3}(\chi_B)$  are the 0<sup>th</sup>-order and cubic spreading operators respectively, as defined in Section 8.2 and  $J_{(l,m),0}(x_{mp}, y_{mp})$  is a 0<sup>th</sup>-order 2D spreading operator as defined in Section 11.1.

As 0<sup>th</sup>-order spreading operators are used for the collision terms in the string and body FD schemes, the definitions of Eqs. (15.11f) and (15.11g) do not use interpolation operators to obtain the string and plate values. Instead, for brevity,  $u_{br}^n = u_{l_{sm}}^n$  with  $l_{sm} = \lfloor \chi_{sm}/h_s \rfloor$  and  $z_{br}^n = z_{(l_{mp}, m_{mp})}^n$  with  $(l_{mp}, m_{mp}) = (\lfloor x_{mp}/h_p \rfloor, \lfloor y_{mp}/h_p \rfloor)$  are introduced for the string and the plate respectively. Here  $h_s$  is the grid spacing for the string and  $h_p$  that for the plate.

There are a few components presented in paper [D] that the system does not include here. These are the offset  $w_{off}$  between the mass and the plate as well as the damping finger that interacts with the string to play different pitches. As the focus of this chapter is on the process of solving the system at the bridge for which these two components are not important, these will be ignored to avoid additional complexity. Further details on these components are provided in the paper.

---

<sup>5</sup>Paper [D] still uses the old definition of  $g^n$  in Eq. (10.14).

### 15.3 Implementation details

This section extends on paper [D] by providing more details on the solution of the string-bridge-body interaction.

Following Section 10.2 one could expand Eqs. (15.11a), (15.11b) and (15.11c) and treat these as a system of linear equations (see Section B.3). This would require an inversion of a  $3 \times 3$  matrix each iteration. To simplify things slightly, and looking towards real-time implementation, one could instead solve for  $\delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{sm}}^n$  and  $\delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{mp}}^n$  directly, which would require a  $2 \times 2$  matrix inversion each iteration and requires much fewer operations (see Section 13.5).

As it is assumed that one will not bow the bridge, i.e.  $\chi_B \neq \chi_{\text{sm}}$ , the bowing term will be disregarded when calculating the interaction between the components.

Recalling (15.11f) and (15.11g), one can write the following:

$$\delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{sm}}^n = \delta_t \cdot (w^n - u_{\text{br}}^n) \quad \text{and} \quad \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{mp}}^n = \delta_t \cdot (z_{\text{br}}^n - w^n),$$

and expanding the right-hand sides yields

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{sm}}^n &= \frac{w^{n+1} - w^{n-1} - u_{\text{br}}^{n+1} + u_{\text{br}}^{n-1}}{2k} \quad \text{and} \\ \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{mp}}^n &= \frac{z_{\text{br}}^{n+1} - z_{\text{br}}^{n-1} - w^{n+1} + w^{n-1}}{2k}. \end{aligned} \quad (15.13)$$

To solve the system, inner product of Eqs. (15.11a) and (15.11c) are taken with  $J_{l,0}(\chi_{\text{sm}})$  and  $J_{(l,m),0}(x_{\text{mp}}, y_{\text{mp}})$  respectively. As 0<sup>th</sup>-order spreading operators are used, their norms over discrete string domain  $d_s$  and discrete plate domain  $d_p$ , respectively, reduce as follows (also see Eq. (11.16)):  $\|J_{l,0}(\chi_{\text{sm}})\|_{d_s}^2 = 1/h_s$  and  $\|J_{(l,m),0}(x_{\text{mp}}, y_{\text{mp}})\|_{d_p}^2 = 1/h_p^2$ . This yields the following updates for Eqs. (15.11a), (15.11b) and (15.11c) at the locations of interaction

$$u_{\text{br}}^{n+1} = u_{\text{br}}^* + \frac{k^2}{h_s \rho_s A (1 + \sigma_{0,s} k)} \left( \frac{(g_{\text{sm}}^n)^2 k}{2} \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{sm}}^n + \psi_{\text{sm}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{sm}}^n \right), \quad (15.14a)$$

$$w^{n+1} = w^* - \frac{k^2}{M (1 + \frac{\sigma_m k}{2})} \left( \frac{(g_{\text{sm}}^n)^2 k}{2} \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{sm}}^n + \psi_{\text{sm}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{sm}}^n \right) \quad (15.14b)$$

$$+ \frac{k^2}{M (1 + \frac{\sigma_m k}{2})} \left( \frac{(g_{\text{mp}}^n)^2 k}{2} \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{mp}}^n + \psi_{\text{mp}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{mp}}^n \right),$$

$$z_{\text{br}}^{n+1} = z_{\text{br}}^* - \frac{k^2}{h_p^2 \rho_p H (1 + \sigma_{0,p} k)} \left( \frac{(g_{\text{mp}}^n)^2 k}{2} \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{mp}}^n + \psi_{\text{mp}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{mp}}^n \right), \quad (15.14c)$$

where the update equations of the components in isolation (without the colli-

### 15.3. Implementation details

sion terms) at their respective interaction locations are

$$\begin{aligned} u_{\text{br}}^* &= \frac{2u_{\text{br}}^n - u_{\text{br}}^{n-1} + c^2 k^2 \delta_{xx} u_{\text{br}}^n - \kappa_s^2 k^2 \delta_{xxxx} u_{\text{br}}^n + \sigma_{0,s} k u_{\text{br}}^{n-1} + 2\sigma_{1,s} k^2 \delta_t - \delta_{xx} u_{\text{br}}^n}{1 + \sigma_{0,s} k}, \\ w^* &= \frac{2w^n - w^{n-1} - k^2 \omega_0^2 w^n + \frac{\sigma_m k}{2} w^{n-1}}{1 + \frac{\sigma_m k}{2}}, \\ z_{\text{br}}^* &= \frac{2z_{\text{br}}^n - z_{\text{br}}^{n-1} - \kappa_p^2 k^2 \delta_\Delta \delta_{\Delta} z_{\text{br}}^n + \sigma_{0,p} k z_{\text{br}}^{n-1} + 2\sigma_{1,p} k^2 \delta_t - \delta_\Delta z_{\text{br}}^n}{1 + \sigma_{0,p} k}, \end{aligned}$$

with  $c = \sqrt{T/\rho_s A}$ ,  $\kappa_s = \sqrt{E_s I/\rho_s A}$  and  $\kappa_p = \sqrt{D/\rho_p H}$ .

The definitions in Eqs. (15.14) can then be inserted into Eqs. (15.13) and solved for  $\delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{sm}}^n$  and  $\delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{mp}}^n$ . This can be treated as a system of linear equations and be solved according to

$$\begin{bmatrix} \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{sm}}^n \\ \delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{mp}}^n \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{v}, \quad (15.15)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A} &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 + \frac{(g_{\text{sm}}^n)^2 k^2}{2M(2+\sigma_m k)} + \frac{(g_{\text{sm}}^n)^2 k^2}{4\rho_s A h_s (1+\sigma_{0,s} k)} & -\frac{(g_{\text{mp}}^n)^2 k^2}{2M(2+\sigma_m k)} \\ -\frac{(g_{\text{sm}}^n)^2 k^2}{2M(2+\sigma_m k)} & 1 + \frac{(g_{\text{mp}}^n)^2 k^2}{2M(2+\sigma_m k)} + \frac{(g_{\text{mp}}^n)^2 k^2}{4h_p^2 \rho_p H (1+\sigma_{0,p} k)} \end{bmatrix}, \\ \mathbf{v} &= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{w^* - w^{n-1} - u_{\text{br}}^* + u_{\text{br}}^{n-1}}{2k} - \frac{k(\psi_{\text{sm}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{sm}}^n - \psi_{\text{mp}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{mp}}^n)}{M(2+\sigma_m k)} - \frac{\psi_{\text{sm}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{sm}}^n k}{2\rho_s A h_s (1+\sigma_{0,s} k)} \\ \frac{z_{\text{br}}^* - z_{\text{br}}^{n-1} - w^* + w^{n-1}}{2k} + \frac{k(\psi_{\text{sm}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{sm}}^n - \psi_{\text{mp}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{mp}}^n)}{M(2+\sigma_m k)} - \frac{\psi_{\text{mp}}^{n-1/2} g_{\text{mp}}^n k}{2h_p^2 \rho_p H (1+\sigma_{0,p} k)} \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

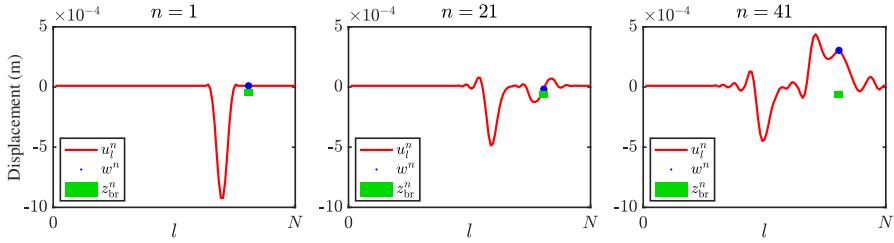
The solutions obtained for  $\delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{sm}}^n$  and  $\delta_t \cdot \eta_{\text{mp}}^n$ , can then be used directly in  $\xi_{\text{sm}}^n$  and  $\xi_{\text{mp}}^n$  in Eqs. (15.11a), (15.11b) and (15.11c) to calculate  $u_l^{n+1}$ ,  $w^{n+1}$  and  $z_{(l,m)}^{n+1}$  respectively. They can also be used directly to calculate  $\psi_{\text{sm}}^{n+1/2}$  and  $\psi_{\text{mp}}^{n+1/2}$  in Eqs. (15.11d) and (15.11e) respectively.

Figure 15.3 shows three consecutive plots of the system excited with a raised cosine. The bow is not used here, to highlight the collision. One can observe that the string forces the mass downwards through their connection, causing the latter to collide with the plate.

#### 15.3.1 Energy analysis

Using the energy analysis techniques presented in Section 3.4, the total energy of the system can be shown to be of the following form:

$$\delta_{t+} (\mathfrak{h}_s + \mathfrak{h}_m + \mathfrak{h}_p + \mathfrak{h}_{\text{sm}} + \mathfrak{h}_{\text{mp}}) = -\mathfrak{q}_s - \mathfrak{q}_m - \mathfrak{q}_p - \mathfrak{q}_B - \mathfrak{p}_B. \quad (15.16)$$



**Fig. 15.3:** The string of the tromba marina (red) excited using a raised cosine. The string-mass interaction forces the mass (blue) downwards, which collides with the plate (green).

Here, the total energy of the string is (Eq. (4.32)),

$$\mathfrak{h}_s = \frac{\rho_s A}{2} \|\delta_t - u_l^n\|_{d_s}^2 + \frac{T}{2} \langle \delta_{x+} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{x+} u_l^n \rangle_{d_s} + \frac{E_s I}{2} \langle \delta_{xx} u_l^n, e_{t-} \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_{d_s},$$

the total energy of the mass is (Eq. (9.5))

$$\mathfrak{h}_m = \frac{M}{2} (\delta_t - w^n)^2 + \frac{K}{2} w^n e_{t-} w^n,$$

and the total energy of the plate is (Eq. (6.52))

$$\mathfrak{h}_p = \frac{\rho_p H}{2} \|\delta_t - z_{l,m}^n\|_{d_p}^2 + \frac{D}{2} \langle \delta_\Delta z_{l,m}^n, e_{t-} \delta_\Delta z_{l,m}^n \rangle_{d_p}.$$

The energy of the string-mass connection and the mass-plate collision are (Eq. (10.24))

$$\mathfrak{h}_{sm} = \frac{(\psi_{sm}^{n-1/2})^2}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{h}_{mp} = \frac{(\psi_{mp}^{n-1/2})^2}{2},$$

respectively.

The damping terms are defined for the string as (Eq. (4.31))

$$q_s = 2\sigma_{0,s}\rho_s A \|\delta_t \cdot u_l^n\|_{d_s}^2 - 2\sigma_{1,s}\rho_s A \langle \delta_t \cdot u_l^n, \delta_t - \delta_{xx} u_l^n \rangle_{d_s},$$

for the mass as (Eq. (9.6))

$$q_m = R (\delta_t \cdot w^n)^2$$

and for the plate as (Eq. (6.51))

$$q_p = 2\sigma_0 \rho_p H \|\delta_t \cdot z_{l,m}^n\|_{d_p}^2 - 2\sigma_1 \rho_p H \langle \delta_t \cdot z_{l,m}^n, \delta_t - \delta_\Delta z_{l,m}^n \rangle_{d_p}.$$

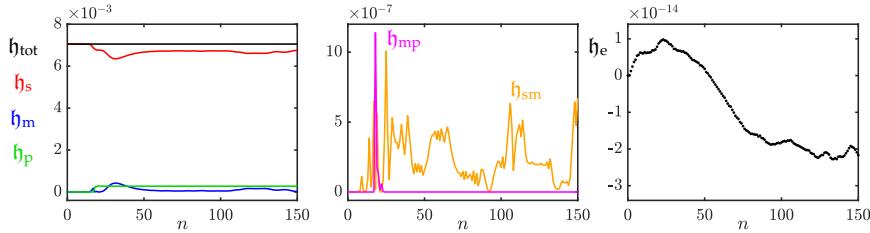
Finally, the power dissipated and supplied by the bow are defined as (Eq. (8.27))

$$q_B = f_B^n \Phi(v_{rel}^n) v_{rel}^n \quad \text{and} \quad p_B = f_B^n \Phi(v_{rel}^n) v_B^n,$$

### 15.3. Implementation details

respectively.

Figure 15.4 shows the plots of the energy for an implementation of the tromba marina presented in this chapter without losses. The system is excited with a raised cosine for clarity of the figures and plots correspond to the system states shown in Figure 15.3.



**Fig. 15.4:** The energy of the tromba marina excited with a raised cosine (see Figure 15.3). The left panel shows the total energy (black) present in the system as well as the energy of the string (red), mass (blue) and plate (green) respectively. The second panel shows the energy of the mass-plate (magenta) and string-mass (orange) interactions and the right panel shows the normalised energy (according to Eq. (3.37)) and shows that the deviation of the energy is within machine precision.

## Chapter 15. Tromba Marina

# Chapter 16

## Trombone

Published in [H]

The air propagation in the trombone has been modelled using a system of two first-order PDEs, presented in Section 5.2. Although Webster's equation (see Section 5.1) could have been used, the state-of-the-art models for brass instruments using FDTD methods use first-order PDEs [65, 59]. Some extensions, such as the state-of-the-art radiation model used in [59] and viscothermal losses in [65], could then easily be added, although the latter has been left for future work.

### 16.1 Introduction

Interesting read: <https://newt.phys.unsw.edu.au/jw/brassacoustics.html>

### 16.2 Physical model

Most has been described in Chapter 5

#### 16.2.1 Tube

Just to save the conversation with Stefan about Webster's equation:

Using operators  $\partial_t$  and  $\partial_x$  denoting partial derivatives with respect to time  $t$  and spatial coordinate  $x$ , respectively, a system of first-order PDEs describing the wave propagation in an acoustic tube can then be written as [A]

$$\frac{S}{\rho_0 c^2} \partial_t p = -\partial_x (Sv) \quad (16.1a)$$

$$\rho_0 \partial_t v = -\partial_x p \quad (16.1b)$$

with acoustic pressure  $p = p(x, t)$  (in N/m<sup>2</sup>), particle velocity  $v = v(x, t)$  (in m/s) and (circular) cross-sectional area  $S(x)$  (in m<sup>2</sup>). Furthermore,  $\rho_0$  is the density of air (in kg/m<sup>3</sup>) and  $c$  is the speed of sound in air (in m/s). System (16.1) can be condensed into a second-order equation in  $p$  alone, often referred to as Webster's equation [?]. Interesting! In NSS it is the acoustic potential right? Can you go from that to a second-order PDE in  $p$ ? There is a time-derivative hidden there somewhere right? (Just wondering :)) Yes, the form in  $p$  alone is the one you usually see. You get it by differentiating the first equation, giving you a  $\dot{v}$  on the RHS, and then you can substitute the second equation in... I used the velocity potential one because it has direct energy balance properties. Right. So Webster's eq. in  $p$  and  $\Psi$  are identical (will exhibit identical behaviour), except for the unit of the state variable..? yes that's right... using the velocity potential allows you to do all the energy analysis easily, in terms of physical impedances. But the scheme you get to in the end is the same, just one derivative down. Alright cool! Thanks for the explanation :) For simplicity, effects of viscothermal losses have been neglected in (16.1). For a full time domain model of such effects in an acoustic tube, see, e.g. [65].

### 16.2.2 Discrete

### 16.2.3 Lip-reed with collision

We can use Michele's tricks to add a non-linear collision to the lip. As the collision happens at the interleaved temporal grid, we move the potential half a time step forward. We extend Eq. (9.13a) to be

$$M_r \delta_{t\bar{t}} y = -M_r \omega_0^2 \mu_t \cdot y - M_r \sigma_r \delta_t \cdot y + S_r \Delta p + \psi^{n+1/2} (\psi^{n+1/2})', \quad (16.2)$$

which, when using  $\mu_{t+} \psi^n = \psi^{n+1/2}$ , we can then rewrite to

$$M_r \delta_{t\bar{t}} y = -M_r \omega_0^2 \mu_t \cdot y - M_r \sigma_r \delta_t \cdot y + S_r \Delta p + (\mu_{t+} \psi^n) g^{n+1/2} \quad (16.3)$$

with

$$g^{n+1/2} = \frac{\delta_{t+} \psi^n}{\delta_t \cdot \eta^{n+1/2}}, \quad (16.4)$$

distance between the lips

$$\eta^{n+1/2} = b - y^{n+1/2} \quad (16.5)$$

and the location of the lower lip  $b = -H_0$ . Rewriting Eq. (16.4) to

$$\delta_{t+} \psi^n = g^{n+1/2} \delta_t \cdot \eta^{n+1/2} \quad (16.6)$$

## 16.2. Physical model

and using identity

$$\mu_{t+}\psi^n = \frac{k}{2}\delta_{t+}\psi^n + \psi^n \quad (16.7)$$

we arrive at

$$M_r\delta_{tt}y = -M_r\omega_0^2\mu_{t.}y - M_r\sigma_r\delta_{t.}y + S_r\Delta p + \left(\frac{k}{2}g^{n+1/2}\delta_{t.}\eta^{n+1/2} + \psi^n\right)g^{n+1/2}, \quad (16.8)$$

where  $g^{n+1/2}$  can be analytically obtained through

$$g^{n+1/2} = (\psi^{n+1/2})' \Big|_{\eta=\eta^{n+1/2}} = \sqrt{\frac{K_c(\alpha_c + 1)}{2}}[\eta^{n+1/2}]_+^{\frac{\alpha_c - 1}{2}}, \quad (16.9)$$

with collision stiffness  $K_c$  (in N/m if  $\alpha_c = 1$ ) and non-linear collision coefficient  $\alpha_c$ . Finally, because the barrier is static and below  $y$  through (16.5), this implies that

$$\delta_{t.}\eta = -\delta_{t.}y \quad (16.10)$$

and we can solve for  $y^{n+3/2}$  (suppressing the  $n + 1/2$  superscript for)  $y$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{k^2}(y^{n+3/2} - 2y^{n+1/2} + y^{n-1/2}) &= -\frac{\omega_0^2}{2}(y^{n+3/2} + y^{n-1/2}) - \frac{\sigma_r}{2k}(y^{n+3/2} - y^{n-1/2}) \\ &\quad + \frac{S_r}{M_r}\Delta p - \frac{g^2}{4M_r}(y^{n+3/2} - y^{n-1/2}) + \frac{g}{M_r}\psi^n \\ \left(2 + \omega_0^2k^2 + \sigma_r k + \frac{g^2k^2}{2M_r}\right)y^{n+3/2} &= 4y^{n+1/2} + \left(\sigma_r k - 2 - \omega_0^2k^2 + \frac{g^2k^2}{2M_r}\right)y^{n-1/2} \\ &\quad + \frac{2S_r k^2}{M_r}\Delta p + \frac{2gk^2}{M_r}\psi^n. \end{aligned}$$

Finally we get

$$\alpha_r y^{n+3/2} = 4y^{n+1/2} + \beta_r y^{n-1/2} + \xi_r \Delta p + 4\psi^n \gamma_r \quad (16.11)$$

with

$$\alpha_r = 2 + \omega_0^2k^2 + \sigma_r k + g\gamma_r, \quad \beta_r = \sigma_r k - 2 - \omega_0^2k^2 + g\gamma_r,$$

$$\xi_r = \frac{2S_r k^2}{M_r}, \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_r = \frac{gk^2}{2M_r}.$$

For calculating  $\Delta p$  we follow the same steps as in Section 9.3.1 to get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2}{k}(\delta_{t-} - \delta_{t+})y &= -\omega_0^2(k\delta_{t-} + e_{t-})y - \sigma_r\delta_{t-}y + \frac{S_r}{M_r}\Delta p + \frac{1}{M_r}\left(-\frac{k}{2}g\delta_{t-}y + \psi^n\right)g \\ a_1\delta_{t-}y - a_2\Delta p - a_3^n &= 0, \end{aligned} \quad (16.12)$$

with

$$a_1^n = \frac{2}{k} + \omega_0^2 k + \sigma_r + \frac{g^2 k}{2M_r} \geq 0, \quad a_2 = \frac{S_r}{M_r} \geq 0, \quad \text{and} \quad a_3^n = \left(\frac{2}{k}\delta_{t-} - \omega_0^2 e_{t-}\right)y + \frac{g}{M_r}\psi^n. \quad (16.13)$$

Note that  $a_1^n$  is now time-dependent through  $g$  but remains non-negative. The rest of the variables and process in Section 9.3.1 are unchanged.

Knowing  $y^{n+3/2}$  we can calculate  $\psi^{n+1}$  through Eqs. (16.5) and (16.6) with

$$\psi^{n+1} = \psi^n - \frac{g}{2} \left( y^{n+3/2} - y^{n-1/2} \right) \quad (16.14)$$

## Energy

The added energy to the system can be calculated by multiplying the added term with  $\delta_{t+}y$

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_t + \mathfrak{h}_r) + \mathfrak{Q}_r + \mathfrak{p}_r - (\mu_{t+}\psi^n) \frac{\delta_{t+}\psi^n}{\delta_{t+}\eta^{n+1/2}} (\delta_{t+}y^{n+1/2}) &= 0 \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Eq. (16.10)}} \quad \dots + (\mu_{t+}\psi^n)(\delta_{t+}\psi^n) &= 0 \\ \dots + \frac{1}{2k}(\psi^{n+1} + \psi^n)(\psi^{n+1} - \psi^n) &= 0 \\ \dots + \frac{1}{2k}((\psi^{n+1})^2 - (\psi^n)^2) &= 0 \\ \dots + \frac{1}{2}\delta_{t+}((\psi^n)^2) &= 0 \\ \delta_{t+}(\mathfrak{h}_t + \mathfrak{h}_r + \mathfrak{h}_c) + \mathfrak{Q}_r + \mathfrak{p}_r &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (16.15)$$

with

$$\mathfrak{h}_c = \frac{(\psi^n)^2}{2}$$

## 16.3 Real-Time implementation

Unity??

## 16.4 Discussion

**more for your info, don't think I want to include this:** To combat the drift, experiments have been done involving different ways of connecting the left and right tube. One involved alternating between applying the connection to the pressures and the velocity. Here, rather than adding points to the left and right system in alternating fashion, points were added to pressures  $p$  and  $q$  and velocities  $v$  and  $w$  in an alternating fashion. Another experiment involved a “staggered” version of the connection where (fx.) for one system (either left or right), a virtual grid point of the velocity was created from known values according to (12.9), rather than both from pressures. This, however, showed unstable behaviour. No conclusory statements can be made about these experiments at this point. ← which is exactly why I don't want to include this section

As the geometry varies it matters a lot where points are added and removed as this might influence the way that the method is implemented. **speculative section coming up** The middle of the slide crook was chosen, both because it would be reasonable for the air on the tube to “go away from” or “go towards” that point as the slide is extended or contracted, and because the geometry does not vary there. Experiments with adding / removing grid points where the geometry varies have been left for future work. **even more speculative.. →** It could be argued that it makes more sense to add points at the ends of the inner slides as “tube material” is also added there. This would mean that the system should be split in three parts: “inner slide”, “outer slide” and “rest”, and would complicate things even more.

## Chapter 16. Trombone

## **Part VI**

# **Conclusions and Perspectives**



# Chapter 17

## Conclusions and Perspectives

Both the good and bad thing about physical modelling musical instruments is that you are never done..

title is the exact same as [2]

There is always more work to be done

### 17.1 Applications

The implementations presented in this work, as well as real-time physical models of musical instruments in general, have several applications in the real world. First of all, the implementations can be used as audio plug-ins that music producers could use if they do not have

The now-digital musical instrument

What a keyboard is to a piano, many other controllers inspired by their real-life counterpart could be made to trigger physical models of their respective instrument. [Put this work into perspective of the literature \(higher level\)](#)

### 17.2 Realism

We are not there yet..

Physical modelling is not here to replace the original instruments and the musicians playing them. Instead, it can be used as a tool to understand the physics of existing instruments and possibly go beyond. Simulated instruments are not restricted by physics anymore and could provide new ways of expression for the musician.

#### Parameter design

Many parameters that can always be improved

Possible perspectives could be machine learning based on audio files (literature...)

### 17.3 Dynamic grid

In this work, the dynamic grid in Chapter 12 the test case of the 1D wave equation has been explored.

### 17.3. Dynamic grid

check whether  
all references  
are used

## Chapter 17. Conclusions and Perspectives

# References

- [1] J. O. Smith, "Physical audio signal processing (online book)," 2010. [Online]. Available: <http://ccrma.stanford.edu/~jos/pasp/>
- [2] S. Bilbao, *Numerical Sound Synthesis: Finite Difference Schemes and Simulation in Musical Acoustics*. John Wiley & Sons, 2009.
- [3] M. Puckette, "Max at seventeen," *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 26, pp. 31–43, 2002.
- [4] C. Roads, *The Computer Music Tutorial*. MIT Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1996.
- [5] J. Chowning, "The synthesis of complex audio spectra by means of frequency modulation," *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society*, vol. 21, no. 7, 526–534.
- [6] M. L. Lavengood, "What makes it sound '80s?: The yamaha DX7 electric piano sound," *Journal of Popular Music Studies*, vol. 31, pp. 73–94, 2019.
- [7] J. O. Smith, "Virtual acoustic musical instruments: Review and update," *Center for computer research in music and acoustics (CCRMA)*, 2010.
- [8] M. Paradiso, "To save the sound of a stradivarius, a whole city must keep quiet," 2019. [Online]. Available: <https://www.nytimes.com/2019/01/17/arts/music/stradivarius-sound-bank-recording-cremona.html>
- [9] C. Livesay, "An italian town fell silent so the sounds of a stradivarius could be preserved," 2019. [Online]. Available: <https://www.npr.org/2019/02/17/694056444/an-italian-town-fell-silent-so-the-sounds-of-a-stradivarius-could-be-preserved>
- [10] J. Kelly and C. Lochbaum., "Speech synthesis," in *Proceedings of the Fourth International Congress on Acoustics*, 1962, pp. 1–4.
- [11] P. Ruiz, "A technique for simulating the vibrations of strings with a digital computer," Master's thesis, University of Illinois, 1969.

## References

- [12] L. Hiller and P. Ruiz, "Synthesizing musical sounds by solving the wave equation for vibrating objects: Part I," *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society (JASA)*, vol. 19, no. 6, pp. 462–470, 1971.
- [13] ——, "Synthesizing musical sounds by solving the wave equation for vibrating objects: Part II," *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society (JASA)*, vol. 19, no. 7, pp. 542–550, 1971.
- [14] C. Cadoz, A. Luciani, and J.-L. Florens, "Responsive input devices and sound synthesis by simulation of instrumental mechanisms: the CORDIS system," *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 8, no. 3, pp. 60–73, 1983.
- [15] M. McIntyre, R. Schumacher, and J. Woodhouse, "On the oscillations of musical instruments," *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, vol. 74, no. 5, pp. 1325–1345, 1983.
- [16] K. Karplus and A. Strong, "Digital synthesis of plucked-string and drum timbres," *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 7, pp. 43–55, 1983.
- [17] J. O. Smith, "Music applications of digital waveguides," Technical Report, CCRMA Stanford University, 1987.
- [18] ——, "Physical modeling using digital waveguides," *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 16, no. 4, pp. 74–91, 1992.
- [19] J.-M. Adrien, "The missing link: Modal synthesis," in *Representations of Musical Signals*, G. De Poli, A. Picalli, and C. Roads, Eds. MIT Press, 1991, pp. 269–298.
- [20] J. D. Morrison and J.-M. Adrien, "Mosaic: A framework for modal synthesis," *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 17, no. 1, pp. 45–56, 1993.
- [21] G. Borin, G. De Poli, and A. Sarti, "A modular approach to excitator-resonator interaction in physical models syntheses," *Proceedings of the International Computer Music Conference*, 1989.
- [22] G. De Poli and D. Rocchesso, "Physically based sound modelling," *Organised Sound*, vol. 3, no. 1, pp. 61–76, 1998.
- [23] N. H. Fletcher and T. D. Rossing, *The Physics of Musical Instruments*. Springer, 1998.
- [24] V. Välimäki, J. Pakarinen, C. Erkut, and M. Karjalainen, "Discrete-time modelling of musical instruments," *Institute of Physics Publishing*, 2006.
- [25] S. Bilbao, B. Hamilton, R. L. Harrison, and A. Torin, "Finite-difference schemes in musical acoustics: A tutorial." *Springer handbook of systematic musicology*, pp. 349–384, 2018.

## References

- [26] R. Michon, S. Martin, and J. O. Smith, "MESH2FAUST: a modal physical model generator for the faust programming language - application to bell modeling," in *Proceedings of the 2017 International Computer Music Conference, ICMC*, 2017.
- [27] A. Chaigne, "On the use of finite differences for musical synthesis. Application to plucked stringed instruments," *Journal d'Acoustique*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 181–211, 1992.
- [28] A. Chaigne and A. Askenfelt, "Numerical simulations of struck strings. I. A physical model for a struck string using finite difference methods," *Journal of Acoustical Society of America*, vol. 95, no. 2, pp. 1112–1118, 1994.
- [29] C. Erkut and M. Karjalainen, "Finite difference method vs. digital waveguide method in string instrument modeling and synthesis," *International Symposium on Musical Acoustics*, 2002.
- [30] E. Maestre, C. Spa, and J. O. Smith, "A bowed string physical model including finite-width thermal friction and hair dynamics," *Proceedings ICMC | SMC | 2014*, pp. 1305–1311, 2014.
- [31] C. Cadoz, "Synthèse sonore par simulation de mécanismes vibratoires," 1979, thèse de Docteur Ingénieur, I.N.P.G. Grenoble, France.
- [32] C. Cadoz, A. Luciani, and J.-L. Florens, "CORDIS-ANIMA: a modeling and simulation system for sound and image synthesis: the general formalism," *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 17, no. 1, pp. 19–29, 1993.
- [33] J. Villeneuve and J. Leonard, "Mass-interaction physical models for sound and multi-sensory creation: Starting anew," in *Proceedings of the 16th Sound and Music Computing Conference*, 2019.
- [34] J. Leonard and J. Villeneuve, "MI-GEN~: An efficient and accessible mass interaction sound synthesis toolbox," *Proceedings of the 16th Sound and Music Computing Conference (SMC)*, 2019.
- [35] G. E. Moore, "Cramming more components onto integrated circuits," *Electronics*, vol. 38, no. 8, pp. 114—117, 1965.
- [36] S. Mehes, M. van Walstijn, and P. Stapleton, "Towards a virtual-acoustic string instrument," *Proceedings of the 13th Sound and Music Computing Conference (SMC)*, 2016.
- [37] F. Pfeifle and R. Bader, "Real-time finite difference physical models of musical instruments on a field programmable gate array (FPGA)," *Proceedings of the 15th International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx)*, 2012.

## References

- [38] ——, “Real-time finite-difference method physical modeling of musical instruments using field-programmable gate array hardware,” *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society (JASA)*, vol. 63, no. 12, pp. 1001–1016, 2015.
- [39] F. Pfeifle, “Real-time physical model of a wurlitzer and a rhodes electric piano,” *Proceedings of the 20th International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx)*, 2017.
- [40] J. Bybee, “COSM REVISITED,” Accessed June 28, 2021. [Online]. Available: [https://www.boss.info/us/community/boss\\_users\\_group/1319/](https://www.boss.info/us/community/boss_users_group/1319/)
- [41] S. Bilbao, C. Desvages, M. Ducceschi, B. Hamilton, R. Harrison-Harsley, A. Torin, and C. Webb, “Physical modeling, algorithms, and sound synthesis: The ness project,” *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 43, no. 2-3, pp. 15–30, 2019.
- [42] S. Bilbao, J. Perry, P. Graham, A. Gray, K. Kavoussanakis, G. Delap, T. Mudd, G. Sassoon, T. Wishart, and S. Young, “Large-scale physical modeling synthesis, parallel computing, and musical experimentation: The ness project in practice,” *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 43, no. 2-3, pp. 31–47, 2019.
- [43] C. E. Shannon, “Communication in the presence of noise,” *Proceedings of the IRE*, vol. 37, no. 1, pp. 10–21, 1949.
- [44] S. Yantis and R. A. Abrams, *Sensation and Perception*, 2nd ed. Worth Publishers, 2016.
- [45] Sensel Inc., “Sensel | Interaction Evolved,” 2021. [Online]. Available: <https://sensel.com/>
- [46] 3D Systems, Inc, “3D Systems Touch Haptic Device,” 2021. [Online]. Available: <https://www.3dsystems.com/haptics-devices/touch>
- [47] B. Hamilton, “Finite difference and finite volume methods for wave-based modelling of room acoustics,” Ph.D. dissertation, The University of Edinburgh, 2016.
- [48] C. G. M. Desvages, “Physical modelling of the bowed string and applications to sound synthesis,” Ph.D. dissertation, The University of Edinburgh, 2018.
- [49] C. Desvages and S. Bilbao, “Two-polarisation physical model of bowed strings with nonlinear contact and friction forces, and application to gesture-based sound synthesis,” *Applied Sciences*, vol. 6, no. 5, 2016.

## References

- [50] S. Bilbao and J. Parker, "A virtual model of spring reverberation," *IEEE transactions on audio, speech, and language processing*, vol. 18, pp. 799–808, 2009.
- [51] S. Bilbao, "A modular percussion synthesis environment," in *Proceedings of the 12th International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-09)*, 2009.
- [52] R. Courant, K. Friedrichs, and H. Lewy, "Über die partiellen differenzengleichungen de mathematischen physik," *Mathematische Annalen*, vol. 100, pp. 32–74, 1928.
- [53] J. Sauveur, "Syst'eme général des intervalles des sons, et son application 'a tous les syst'emes et 'a tous les instrumens de musique," *Histoire de L'Académie Royale des Sciences. Année 1701, Mémoires de Mathematique & de Physique*, pp. 297–364, 1701.
- [54] T. H. Park, *Introduction To Digital Signal Processing: Computer Musically Speaking*. World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd, 2010.
- [55] J. G. Charney, R. Fjörtoft, and J. V. Neumann, "Numerical integration of the barotropic vorticity equation," *Tellus*, vol. 2, no. 4, 1950.
- [56] J. C. Strikwerda, *Finite Difference Schemes and Partial Differential Equations*. Pacific Grove, California: Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole Advanced Books and Software, 1989.
- [57] R. Zucker, *Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables*. National Bureau of Standards Applied Mathematics Series 55, 1972, ch. 4: Elementary Transcendental Functions, pp. 65–226, Tenth Printing.
- [58] B. Gustafsson, H.-O. Kreiss, and J. Oliger, *Time-Dependent Problems and Difference Methods*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons, 2013.
- [59] R. L. Harrison-Harsley, "Physical modelling of brass instruments using finite-difference time-domain methods," Ph.D. dissertation, University of Edinburgh, 2018.
- [60] J. Bensa, S. Bilbao, R. Kronland-Martinet, and J. O. Smith, "The simulation of piano string vibration: From physical models to finite difference schemes and digital waveguides," *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America (JASA)*, vol. 114, no. 2, pp. 1095–1107, 2003.
- [61] J. A. Kemp, "Theoretical and experimental study of wave propagation in brass musical instruments," Ph.D. dissertation, The University of Edinburgh, 2002.

## References

- [62] P. Eveno, J. P. Dalmont, R. Caussé, and J. Gilbert, "Wave propagation and radiation in a horn: Comparisons between models and measurements," *Acta Acustica united with Acustica*, vol. 98, pp. 158–165, 2012.
- [63] A. Webster, "Acoustical impedance, and the theory of horns and of the phonograph," in *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, vol. 5, no. 7, 1919, pp. 275–282.
- [64] M. Atig, J.-P. Dalmont, and J. Gilbert, "Termination impedance of open-ended cylindrical tubes at high sound pressure level," *Comptes Rendus Mécanique*, vol. 332, pp. 299–304, 2004.
- [65] S. Bilbao and R. Harrison, "Passive time-domain numerical models of viscothermal wave propagation in acoustic tubes of variable cross section," *J. Acoust. Soc. Am.*, vol. 140, pp. 728–740, 2016.
- [66] S. A. van Duyne and J. O. Smith, "Physical modeling with the 2-D digital waveguide mesh," in *ICMC Proceedings*, 1993.
- [67] R. A. Horn and C. R. Johnson, *Topics in Matrix Analysis*. Cambridge University Press, 1991.
- [68] P. Morse and U. Ingard., *Theoretical Acoustics*. Princeton University Press, 1968.
- [69] V. Välimäki, S. Bilbao, J. O. Smith, J. S. Abel, J. Pakarinen, and D. Berners, "Virtual analog effects," in *DAFx: Digital Audio Effects*, 2nd ed., U. Zölzer, Ed. John Wiley & Sons Ltd., 2011, pp. 473–522.
- [70] C. Webb and S. Bilbao, "On the limits of real-time physical modelling synthesis with a modular environment," in *Proceedings of the 18th International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx)*, 2015.
- [71] O. Richards, "Investigation of the lip reed using computational modelling and experimental studies with an artificial mouth," Ph.D. dissertation, The University of Edinburgh, 2003.
- [72] F. P. Bowden and L. Leben, "The nature of sliding and the analysis of friction," in *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London*, vol. 169, 1939.
- [73] H. L. F. von Helmholtz, *On the Sensations of Tone as a Physiological Basis for the Theory of Music*. Dover Publications, 1954, english translation of 1863 (German) edition by A. J. Ellis.
- [74] J. O. Smith, "Efficient simulation of the reed bore and bow string mechanics," *ICMC 86*, pp. 275–280, 1986.

## References

- [75] J.-L. Florens, A. Razafindrakoto, A. Luciani, and C. Cadoz, "Optimized real time simulation of objects for musical synthesis and animated image synthesis," *ICMC 86*, pp. 65–70, 1986.
- [76] P. Dupont, V. Hayward, B. Armstrong, and F. Altpeter, "Single state elastoplastic friction models," *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control*, vol. 47, no. 5, pp. 787–792, 2002.
- [77] S. Serafin, F. Avanzini, and D. Rocchesso, "Bowed string simulation using an elasto-plastic friction model," *SMAC 03*, pp. 95–98, 2003.
- [78] S. Serafin, "The sound of friction: Real-time models, playability and musical applications," Ph.D. dissertation, CCRMA, 2004.
- [79] R. Pitteroff and J. Woodhouse, "Mechanics of the contact area between a violin bow and a string. Part II: Simulating the bowed string," *Acta Acustica united with Acustica*, vol. 84, no. 4, pp. 744–757, 1998.
- [80] J. Woodhouse, "Bowed string simulation using a thermal friction model," *Acta Acustica united with Acustica*, vol. 89, pp. 355–368, 2003.
- [81] C. A. Coulomb, "Sur une application des règles de maximis et minimis à quelques problèmes de statique, relatifs à l'architecture [On maximums and minimums of rules to some static problems relating to architecture]," *Mémoires de Mathematique de l'Académie Royale de Science*, vol. 7, pp. 343–382, 1773.
- [82] A. Morin, "New friction experiments carried out at metz in 1831-1833," in *Proceedings of the French Royal Academy of Sciences*, 1833, pp. 1–128.
- [83] O. Reynolds, "On the theory of lubrication and its application to Mr. Beauchamp tower's experiments, including an experimental determination of the viscosity of olive oil," in *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London*, vol. 40, 1886, pp. 191–203.
- [84] R. Stribeck, "Die wesentlichen eigenschaften der gleit- und rollenlager [The essential properties of sliding and roller bearings]," *Zeitschrift des Vereins Deutscher Ingenieure*, vol. 46, no. (38,39), pp. 1342–48, 1432–37, 1902.
- [85] P. Dahl, "A solid friction model," Technical report, The Aerospace Corporation, 1968.
- [86] C. Canudas de Wit, H. Olsson, K. J. rAström, and P. Lischinsky, "Dynamic friction models and control design," *Proceedings of the 1993 American Control Conference*, pp. 1920–1926, 1993.

- [87] ——, “A new model for control of systems with friction,” *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control*, vol. 40, no. 3, pp. 419–425, 1995.
- [88] F. Avanzini, S. Serafin, and D. Rocchesso, “Interactive simulation of rigid body interaction with friction-induced sound generation,” *IEEE Transactions on Speech and Audio Processing*, vol. 13, no. 5, pp. 1073–1080, 2005.
- [89] H. Olsson, “Control systems with friction,” Ph.D. dissertation, Lund University, 1996.
- [90] M. G. Onofrei, “Real-time implementation of bowed instruments using static and dynamic friction models,” Master’s thesis, Aalborg University, 2021.
- [91] S. Bilbao, “Direct simulation of reed wind instruments,” *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 33, no. 4, 2009.
- [92] V. Chatzioannou and M. van Walstijn, “An energy conserving finite difference scheme for simulation of collisions,” in *Proceedings of the Sound and Music Computing Conference 2013*, 2013, pp. 584–591.
- [93] S. Bilbao, A. Torin, and V. Chatzioannou, “Numerical modeling of collisions in musical instruments,” *Acta Acustica united with Acustica*, vol. 101, no. 1, pp. 155–173, 2014.
- [94] M. Ducceschi, S. Bilbao, S. Willemsen, and S. Serafin, “Linearly-implicit schemes for collisions in musical acoustics based on energy quadratization,” *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America (JASA)*, vol. 149, pp. 3502–3516, 2021.
- [95] N. Lopes, T. Hèlie, and A. Falaize, ““explicit second-order accurate method for the passive guaranteed simulation of port-hamiltonian systems,” in *Proceedings of the 5th IFAC 2015*, 2015, pp. 223–228.
- [96] X. Yang, “Linear and unconditionally energy stable schemes for the binary fluid-surfactant phase field model,” *Computer Methods in Applied Mechanics and Engineering*, vol. 318, pp. 1005–1029, 2017.
- [97] C. Jiang, W. Cai, and Y. Wang, “A linearly implicit and local energy-preserving scheme for the sine-gordon equation based on the invariant energy quadratization approach,” *Journal of Scientific Computing*, vol. 80, 2019.
- [98] M. Ducceschi and S. Bilbao, “Non-iterative solvers for nonlinear problems: The case of collisions,” *Proceedings of the 22th International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-19)*, 2019.

## References

- [99] S. Bilbao, M. Ducceschi, and C. Webb, "Large-scale real-time modular physical modeling sound synthesis," in *Proceedings of the 22th International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-19)*, 2019.
- [100] S. Willemsen, "connectedStringPlate.m," 2021. [Online]. Available: <https://gist.github.com/SilvinWillemsen/91d10f6279af7fd0da7fb65fb7647da>
- [101] J. Gomm, "Passionflower," 2011. [Online]. Available: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nY7GnAq6Znw>
- [102] J. Mayer, "Gravity (Live in L.A.)," 2008. [Online]. Available: <https://youtu.be/dBFW8OvcIU?t=284>
- [103] T. L. Glenn, "Amazing hammered dulcimer musician - joshua messick," 2014. [Online]. Available: <https://youtu.be/veuGTnzgNRU?t=215>
- [104] D. Wessel and M. Wright, "Problems and prospects for intimate musical control of computers," *Computer Music Journal*, vol. 26, no. 3, 2002.
- [105] exception, "double - and how to use it," 2008. [Online]. Available: <http://www.cplusplus.com/articles/Nb07M4Gy/>
- [106] G. Guennebaud, B. Jacob *et al.*, "Eigen," 2021. [Online]. Available: <http://eigen.tuxfamily.org>

check whether  
to sort refer-  
ences or not

## References

**Part VII**

**Papers**



# Paper A

## Real-Time Control of Large-Scale Modular Physical Models using the Sensel Morph

Silvin Willemse, Nikolaj Andersson, Stefania Serafin  
and Stefan Bilbao

The paper has been published in the  
*Proceedings of the 16th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, pp.  
275–280, 2019.



# Paper B

## Physical Models and Real-Time Control with the Sensel Morph

Silvin Willemse, Stefan Bilbao, Nikolaj Andersson  
and Stefania Serafin

The paper has been published in the  
*Proceedings of the 16th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, pp.  
95–96, 2019.



# Paper C

## Real-Time Implementation of an Elasto-Plastic Friction Model applied to Stiff Strings using Finite-Difference Schemes

Silvin Willemse, Stefan Bilbao and Stefania Serafin

The paper has been published in the  
*Proceedings of the 22nd International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-19)*, pp. 40–46, 2019.



# Paper D

## Real-time Implementation of a Physical Model of the Tromba Marina

Silvin Willemsen, Stefania Serafin, Stefan Bilbao and Michele  
Ducceschi

The paper has been published in the  
*Proceedings of the 17th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, pp.  
161–168, 2020.



# Paper E

## Resurrecting the Tromba Marina: A Bowed Virtual Reality Instrument using Haptic Feedback and Accurate Physical Modelling

Silvin Willemse, Razvan Paisa and Stefania Serafin

The paper has been published in the  
*Proceedings of the 17th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, pp.  
300–307, 2020.



# Paper F

## DigiDrum: A Haptic-based Virtual Reality Musical Instrument and a Case Study

Silvin Willemse, Anca-Simona Horvath and Mauro Nascimben

The paper has been published in the  
*Proceedings of the 17th Sound and Music Computing (SMC) Conference*, pp.  
292–299, 2020.



# Paper G

## Dynamic Grids for Finite-Difference Schemes in Musical Instrument Simulations

Silvin Willemse, Stefan Bilbao, Michele Ducceschi and Stefania Serafin

The paper has been published in the  
*Proceedings of the 23rd International Conference on Digital Audio Effects*  
(DAFx2020in21), 2021.



# Paper H

## A Physical Model of the Trombone using Dynamic Grids for Finite-Difference Schemes

Silvin Willemse, Stefan Bilbao, Michele Ducceschi and Stefania Serafin

The paper has been published in the  
*Proceedings of the 23rd International Conference on Digital Audio Effects*  
(DAFx2020in21), 2021.

Paper H.

# **Part VIII**

# **Appendix**



# Appendix A

## Paper Errata

This appendix shows some errors that appeared in the published papers.

### **Real-Time Implementation of an Elasto-Plastic Friction Model applied to Stiff Strings using Finite Difference Schemes [C]**

- The authors in reference [15] are a bit shuffled.

### **Real-time Implementation of a Physical Model of the Tromba Marina [D]**

- The minus sign in Eq. (28) (and thus Eqs. (31) and (35)) should be a plus sign.
- $\sigma_{1,s}$  in Eq. (21) should be  $\sigma_{1,p}$
- The unit of the spatial Dirac delta function  $\delta$  should be  $m^{-1}$

### **DigiDrum: A Haptic-based Virtual Reality Musical Instrument and a Case Study [F]**

- $\sigma_0$  and  $\sigma_1$  should be multiplied by  $\rho H$  in order for the stability condition to hold.
- stability condition is wrong. Should be:

$$h \geq \sqrt{c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k + \sqrt{(c^2 k^2 + 4\sigma_1 k)^2 + 16\kappa^2 k^2}} \quad (\text{A.1})$$

- Unit for membrane tension is N/m.

## Appendix A. Paper Errata

# Appendix B

# Matrices

This appendix aims to provide some fundamental knowledge on matrices and linear algebra used throughout this thesis.

A matrix is a rectangular array with numerical elements and its dimensions are denoted using “*row* × *column*”. A  $3 \times 5$  matrix, for example, thus has 3 rows and 5 columns (see Figure B.1a). Along those lines, a *row vector* is a matrix with 1 row and more than 1 column and a *column vector* is a matrix with 1 column and more than 1 row.

In this document, matrices and vectors are written using bold symbols. A matrix is denoted by a capital letter – such as  $\mathbf{A}$  – whereas vectors are decapitalised – such as  $\mathbf{u}$ . An element in a matrix is denoted with a non-bold, decapitalised variable, where the subscripts indicate the indices of the row and column. For example, the element in the 2<sup>nd</sup> row and the 4<sup>th</sup> column of a matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is denoted as  $a_{24}$ . An element in a vector only has one subscript, regardless of whether it is a row or a column vector.

## B.1 Operations

Multiplying and dividing a matrix by a scalar (a single number) is valid and happens on an element-by-element basis. For a  $2 \times 2$  matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  and scalar  $p$  the following operations hold

$$p\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}p = \begin{bmatrix} p \cdot a_{11} & p \cdot a_{12} \\ p \cdot a_{21} & p \cdot a_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{A}/p = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}/p & a_{12}/p \\ a_{21}/p & a_{22}/p \end{bmatrix}.$$

Notice that although a matrix can be divided by a scalar, a scalar can not necessarily be divided by a matrix. See Section B.2 for more information.

### Matrix transpose

A matrix or vector can be *transposed*, which is indicated by the  $T$  operator. Transposing a matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is denoted by  $\mathbf{A}^T$ . This means that the elements in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  row and the  $j^{\text{th}}$  column of the original matrix become the elements in the  $j^{\text{th}}$  row and the  $i^{\text{th}}$  column of the transposed matrix. Essentially the row and column indices of the elements inside the matrix get switched according to

$$a_{ij} = a_{ji}. \quad (\text{B.1})$$

Also see Figure B.1. For a row vector, the transpose operation simply changes it to a column vector and vice versa. Another way of seeing a transpose is that all the elements get flipped over the *main diagonal* of the matrix. The main diagonal comprises the elements  $a_{ij}$  where  $i = j$  and a transpose does not affect the location of these elements.

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} & a_{15} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} & a_{25} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} & a_{34} & a_{35} \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{A}^T = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{21} & a_{31} \\ a_{12} & a_{22} & a_{32} \\ a_{13} & a_{23} & a_{33} \\ a_{14} & a_{24} & a_{34} \\ a_{15} & a_{25} & a_{35} \end{bmatrix}$$

(a) A  $3 \times 5$  matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ .

(b) A transposed matrix  $\mathbf{A}^T$  of size  $5 \times 3$ .

**Fig. B.1:** A matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  and its transpose  $\mathbf{A}^T$ . The elements get flipped along the main diagonal of the matrix according to Eq. (B.1).

### Matrix multiplication

Matrix multiplication (this includes matrix-vector multiplication) is different from regular multiplication in that it needs to abide several extra rules. The multiplication of two matrices  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  to a resulting matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  is defined as

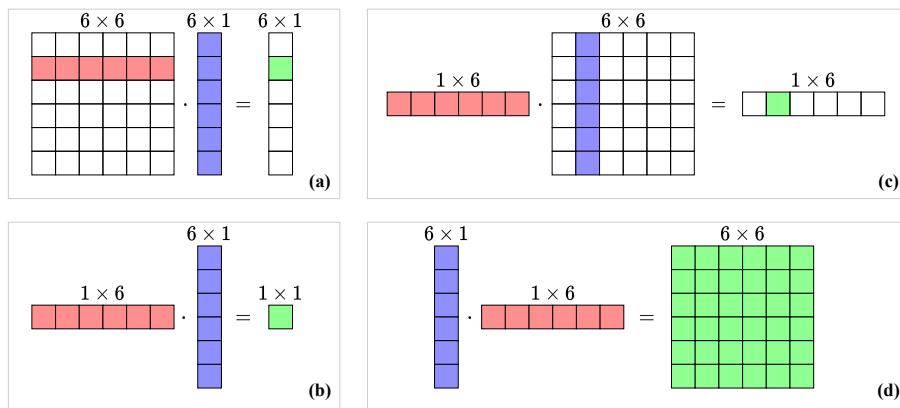
$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^K a_{ik} b_{kj}, \quad (\text{B.2})$$

where  $K$  is both the number columns of matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  and the number of rows in matrix  $\mathbf{B}$ . It thus follows that, in order for a matrix multiplication to be valid, the number of columns of the first matrix needs to be equal to the number of rows in the second matrix. The result will then be a matrix with a number of rows equal to that of the first matrix and a number of columns equal to that of

the second matrix. See Figure B.2 for reference.

As an example, consider the  $L \times M$  matrix **A** and a  $M \times N$  matrix **B** with  $L \neq N$ . The multiplication **AB** is defined as the number of columns of matrix **A** ( $M$ ) is equal to the number of rows of matrix **B** (also  $M$ ). The result, **C**, is a  $L \times N$  matrix. The multiplication **BA** is undefined as the number of columns of the first matrix does not match the number of rows in the second matrix. A valid multiplication of two matrices written in their dimensions is

$$\overbrace{(L \times M)}^{\mathbf{A}} \cdot \overbrace{(M \times N)}^{\mathbf{B}} = \overbrace{(L \times N)}^{\mathbf{C}}. \quad (\text{B.3})$$



**Fig. B.2:** Visualisation of valid matrix multiplications (see Eq. (B.2)). The “inner” dimensions (columns of the left matrix and rows of the right) must match and result in a matrix with a size of “outer” dimensions (rows of the left matrix and columns of the right).

## B.2 Matrix inverse

If a matrix has the same number of rows as columns, it is called a *square matrix*. Square matrices have special properties, one of which is that it (usually) can be *inverted*. A square matrix **A** is invertible if there exists a matrix **B** such that

$$\mathbf{AB} = \mathbf{BA} = \mathbf{I}. \quad (\text{B.4})$$

This matrix **B** is then called the *inverse* of **A** and can be written as  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ . Not all square matrices have an inverse, in which case it is called *singular*. Rather than going through manually inverting a matrix, or determining whether it is singular, the following function in MATLAB will provide the inverse of a matrix **A**:

```
A_inverted = inv(A);
```

The inverse of a *diagonal matrix* (a matrix with non-zero elements on its main diagonal and the rest zeros) is obtained by replacing the diagonal elements by their reciprocal. So for a diagonal  $3 \times 3$  matrix, the following holds:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & a_{12} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{a_{11}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{a_{12}} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{a_{33}} \end{bmatrix}.$$

### B.3 Systems of linear equations

Matrices can be conveniently used to solve *systems of linear equations*, a set of linear equations containing the same set of variables.

For example, take the system of linear equations

$$\begin{aligned} x + z &= 6, \\ z - 3y &= 7, \\ 2x + y + 3z &= 15, \end{aligned}$$

with independent variables  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ . The goal is to find a solution for these variables that satisfy all three equations. This system could be solved by hand using algebraic methods, but alternatively, the system can be written in matrix form:

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{w}. \quad (\text{B.5})$$

Here, column vector  $\mathbf{u}$  contains the independent variables  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ , matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  contains the coefficients multiplied onto these variables and  $\mathbf{w}$  contains the right-hand side, i.e., the coefficients not multiplied onto any of the variables:

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -3 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{A}} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{u}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 7 \\ 15 \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{w}}$$

This can be solved for  $\mathbf{u}$  by taking the inverse of  $\mathbf{A}$  (see Section B.2) and multiplying this onto  $\mathbf{w}$

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{w}. \quad (\text{B.6})$$

Generally, if  $X$  unknowns are described by  $X$  equations, the unknowns can be solved for, by using this method.

Solving a system of linear equations can be implemented in MATLAB by using the code given in Section B.2 and multiplying this onto a vector  $\mathbf{w}$

$$\mathbf{u} = \text{inv}(\mathbf{A}) * \mathbf{w};$$

or more compactly, by using the ‘\’ operator:

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{A} \backslash \mathbf{w};$$

## B.4 Eigenvalue problems

A square matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is characterised by its *eigenvalues* and corresponding *eigenvectors*. In a FDTD context, these are usually associated with the modes of a system, where the eigenvalues relate to the modal frequencies and the eigenvectors to the modal shapes. Section 3.5 provides more information on this.

To find these characteristic values for a  $p \times p$  matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ , an equation of the following form must be solved

$$\mathbf{A}\phi = \lambda\phi. \quad (\text{B.7})$$

This is called is an *eigenvalue problem* and has  $p$  solutions (corresponding to the dimensions of  $\mathbf{A}$ ). These are the  $p^{\text{th}}$  eigenvector  $\phi_p$  and the corresponding eigenvalue  $\lambda_p$  which is calculated using

$$\lambda_p = \text{eig}_p(\mathbf{A}), \quad (\text{B.8})$$

where  $\text{eig}_p(\cdot)$  denotes the ‘ $p^{\text{th}}$  eigenvalue of’. Instead of delving too deep into eigenvalue problems and the process of how to solve them, an easy way to obtain the solutions using MATLAB is provided here:

```
[phi, lambda] = eig(A, 'vector');
```

The  $p^{\text{th}}$  eigenvector appears in the  $p^{\text{th}}$  column of  $p \times p$  matrix `phi` and the corresponsding eigenvalues are given in a  $p \times 1$  column vector `lambda`.

## Appendix B. Matrices

# Appendix C

## Code Snippets

### C.1 Mass-spring system (Section 2.3)

```
1 %% Initialise variables
2 fs = 44100; % sample rate [Hz]
3 k = 1 / fs; % time step [s]
4 lengthSound = fs; % length of the simulation (1 second) [samples]
5
6 f0 = 440; % fundamental frequency [Hz]
7 omega0 = 2 * pi * f0; % angular (fundamental) frequency [Hz]
8 M = 1; % mass [kg]
9 K = omega0^2 * M; % spring constant [N/m]
10
11 %% initial conditions (u0 = 1, d/dt u0 = 0)
12 u = 1;
13 uPrev = 1;
14
15 % initialise output vector
16 out = zeros(lengthSound, 1);
17
18 %% Simulation loop
19 for n = 1:lengthSound
20
21     % Update equation Eq. (2.35)
22     uNext = (2 - K * k^2 / M) * u - uPrev;
23
24     out(n) = u;
25
26     % Update system states
27     uPrev = u;
28     u = uNext;
29 end
```

## C.2 1D wave equation (Section 2.4)

```

1 %% Initialise variables
2 fs = 44100; % Sample rate [Hz]
3 k = 1 / fs; % Time step [s]
4 lengthSound = fs; % Length of the simulation (1 second) [samples]
5
6 c = 300; % Wave speed [m/s]
7 L = 1; % Length [m]
8 h = c * k; % Grid spacing [m] (from CFL condition)
9 N = floor(L/h); % Number of intervals between grid points
10 h = L / N; % Recalculation of grid spacing based on integer N
11
12 lambdaSq = c^2 * k^2 / h^2; % Courant number squared
13
14 % Boundary conditions ([D]irichlet or [N]eumann)
15 bcLeft = "D";
16 bcRight = "D";
17
18 %% Initialise state vectors (one more grid point than the number of
19 % intervals)
20 uNext = zeros(N+1, 1);
21 u = zeros(N+1, 1);
22
23 %% Initial conditions (raised cosine)
24 loc = round(0.8 * N); % Center location
25 halfWidth = round(N/10); % Half-width of raised cosine
26 width = 2 * halfWidth; % Full width
27 rcX = 0:width; % x-locations for raised cosine
28
29 rc = 0.5 - 0.5 * cos(2 * pi * rcX / width); % raised cosine
30 u(loc-halfWidth : loc+halfWidth) = rc; % initialise current state
31
32 % Set initial velocity to zero
33 uPrev = u;
34
35 % Range of calculation
36 range = 2:N;
37
38 % Output location
39 outLoc = round(0.3 * N);
40
41 %% Simulation loop
42 for n = 1:lengthSound
43
44     % Update equation Eq. (2.44)
45     uNext(range) = (2 - 2 * lambdaSq) * u(range) ...
46                     + lambdaSq * (u(range+1) + u(range-1)) - uPrev(range);
47
48     % boundary updates Eq. (2.49)
49     if bcLeft == "N"
50         uNext(1) = (2 - 2 * lambdaSq) * u(1) - uPrev(1) ...
51                     + 2 * lambdaSq * u(2);

```

### C.3. 2D wave equation (Section 6.2)

```

51 end
52
53 % Eq. (2.50)
54 if bcRight == "N"
55     uNext(N+1) = (2 - 2 * lambdaSq) * u(N+1) - uPrev(N+1) ...
56     + 2 * lambdaSq * u(N);
57 end
58
59 out(n) = u(outLoc);
60
61 % Update system states
62 uPrev = u;
63 u = uNext;
64 end

```

## C.3 2D wave equation (Section 6.2)

```

1
2 %% Initialise variables
3 fs = 44100;           % Sample rate [Hz]
4 k = 1 / fs;           % Time step [s]
5 lengthSound = fs;     % Length of the simulation (1 second) [samples]
6
7 rho = 7850;           % Material density [kg/m^3]
8 H = 0.0005;            % Thickness [m]
9 T = 1000000;          % Tension per unit length [N/m]
10 c = sqrt(T / (rho * H)); % Wave speed [m/s]
11
12 Lx = 1;               % Length in x direction [m]
13 Ly = 2;               % Length in y direction [m]
14
15 h = sqrt(2) * c * k; % Grid spacing [m]
16 Nx = floor(Lx/h);    % Number of intervals in x direction
17 Ny = floor(Ly/h);    % Number of intervals in y direction
18 h = min(Lx/Nx, Ly/Ny); % Recalculation of grid spacing
19
20 lambdaSq = c^2 * k^2 / h^2; % Courant number squared
21 h = max(Lx/Nx, Ly/Ny); % Recalculation of grid spacing
22
23 %% Create scheme matrices with Dirichlet boundary conditions
24 Nxu = Nx - 1;
25 Nyu = Ny - 1;
26 Dxx = toeplitz([-2, 1, zeros(1, Nxu-2)]);
27 Dyy = toeplitz([-2, 1, zeros(1, Nyu-2)]);
28
29 % Kronecker sum
30 D = kron(speye(Nxu), Dyy) + kron(Dxx, speye(Nyu));
31 D = D / h^2;
32

```

## Appendix C. Code Snippets

```
33 % Total number of grid points
34 Nu = Nxu * Nyu;
35
36 %% Initialise state vectors (one more grid point than the number of
   intervals)
37 uNext = zeros(Nu, 1);
38 u = zeros(Nu, 1);
39
40 %% Initial conditions (2D raised cosine)
41 halfWidth = floor(min(Nx, Ny) / 5);
42 width = 2 * halfWidth + 1;
43 xLoc = floor(0.3 * Nx);
44 yLoc = floor(0.6 * Ny);
45 xRange = xLoc-halfWidth : xLoc+halfWidth;
46 yRange = yLoc-halfWidth : yLoc+halfWidth;
47
48 rcMat = zeros(Nyu, Nxu);
49 rcMat(yRange, xRange) = hann(width) * hann(width)';
50
51 % initialise current state
52 u = reshape(rcMat, Nu, 1);
53
54 % Set initial velocity to zero
55 uPrev = u;
56
57 % Output location
58 xOut = 0.45;
59 yOut = 0.25;
60 outLoc = round((xOut + yOut * Nyu) * Nxu);
61 out = zeros(lengthSound, 1);
62
63 %% Simulation loop
64 for n = 1:lengthSound
65
66     %% Update equation Eq. (6.22)
67     uNext = (2 * eye(Nu) + c^2 * k^2 * D) * u - uPrev;
68
69     % Update system states
70     uPrev = u;
71     u = uNext;
72
73 end
```

## Appendix D

# Intuition for the Damping Terms in the Stiff String PDE

This appendix will delve deeper into the damping terms in the PDE of the stiff string presented in Chapter 4, especially the frequency-dependent damping term  $2\sigma_1 \partial_t \partial_x^2 u$ . Recalling the compact version of the PDE of the stiff string in Eq. (4.5):

$$\partial_t^2 u = c^2 \partial_x^2 u - \kappa^2 \partial_x^4 u - 2\sigma_0 \partial_t u + 2\sigma_1 \partial_t \partial_x^2 u \quad (\text{D.1})$$

Consider first the frequency-independent damping term  $-2\sigma_0 \partial_t u$ . The more positive the velocity  $\partial_t u$  is, i.e., the string is moving upwards the more this term applies a negative, or downwards force (/effect) on the string. Vice versa, a more negative velocity will make this term apply a more positive force on the string.

As for the frequency-dependent damping term, apart from the obvious  $\sigma_1$ , the effect of the term increases with an increase of  $\partial_t \partial_x^2 u$  which literally describes the ‘rate of change of the curvature’ of the string.

Let’s first talk about positive and negative curvature, i.e., when  $\partial_x^2 u > 0$  or  $\partial_x^2 u < 0$ . Counterintuitively, in the positive case, the curve points downwards. Think about the function  $f(x) = x^2$ . It has a positive curvature (at any point), but has a minimum. This can be proven by taking  $x = 0$  and setting grid spacing  $h = 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{xx} f(x) &= \frac{1}{h^2} (f(-1) - 2f(0) + f(1)), \\ &= \frac{1}{1^2} ((-1)^2 - 2 \cdot 0^2 + 1^2), \\ &= (1 - 0 + 1) = 2. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.2})$$

In other words, the second derivative of the function  $f(x) = x^2$  around  $x = 0$  is positive.

As the term does not only include a second-order spatial derivative but also a first-order time derivative, this is referred to as a positive or negative *rate of change* of the curvature, i.e., when  $\partial_t \partial_x^2 u > 0$  or  $\partial_t \partial_x^2 u < 0$ . A positive rate of change of curvature means that the string either has a positive curvature and is getting more positive, i.e., the string gets more curved over time, or that the string has a negative curvature and is getting less negative, i.e., the string gets less curved or ‘loosens up’ over time. In the same way, a negative rate of change of curvature means that the string either has a negative curvature and is getting more negative, or that the string has a positive curvature and is getting less positive.

Let’s see some examples. Take the same function described before, but now  $f$  changes over time,  $f(x, t) = tx^2$ . When  $t$  increases over time, the curvature gets bigger. Repeating the above with  $x = 0$  and grid spacing  $h = 1$ , but now with  $t = 2$  and step size  $k = 1$ , but now with a backwards time derivative yields:

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{t-} \delta_{xx} f(x, t) &= \frac{1}{kh^2} \left( f(-1, 2) - 2f(0, 2) + f(1, 2) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - (f(-1, 1) - 2f(0, 1) + f(1, 1)) \right), \\ &= \frac{1}{1 \cdot 1^2} \left( 2 \cdot (-1)^2 - 2 \cdot 2 \cdot (0)^2 + 2 \cdot 1^2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. - (1 \cdot (-1)^2 - 2 \cdot 1 \cdot (0) + 1 \cdot (1^2)) \right), \\ &= 2 + 2 - (1 + 1) = 2. \end{aligned}$$

So the rate of change of the curvature is positive, i.e., the already positively curved function  $x^2$  gets more curved over time.

If the curvature around a point along a string gets more positive (or less negative) over time, the force applied to that point will be positive, effectively ‘trying’ to reduce the curvature. Vice versa, if the curvature around a point along a string gets more negative (or less positive) over time, the force applied will be negative, again ‘trying’ to reduce the curvature.

From an auditory point of view, higher curvature generally means higher frequency. As the frequency-dependent damping term reduces curvature along the string it effectively damps higher frequencies.

# Appendix E

## Derivations

### E.1 Webster's update equation (Eq. (5.9))

This section derives the update equation for Webster's equation in Eq. (5.9):

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{\bar{S}}{k^2}(\Psi_l^{n+1} - 2\Psi_l^n + \Psi_l^{n-1}) &= c^2 \left( (\delta_{x-} S_{l+1/2})(\mu_{x-} \delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n) \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + (\mu_{x-} S_{l+1/2})(\delta_{x-} \delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n) \right), \\
 \Psi_l^{n+1} - 2\Psi_l^n + \Psi_l^{n-1} &= \frac{c^2 k^2}{\bar{S}} \left( \frac{1}{h} (S_{l+1/2} - S_{l-1/2}) \underbrace{\frac{1}{2h} (\Psi_{l+1}^n - \Psi_{l-1}^n)}_{\mu_{x+} \delta_{x-} \Psi_l^n = \delta_x \cdot \Psi_l^n} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \frac{1}{2} (S_{l+1/2} + S_{l-1/2}) \frac{1}{h^2} (\Psi_{l+1}^n - 2\Psi_l^n + \Psi_{l-1}^n) \right), \\
 \Psi_l^{n+1} &= 2\Psi_l^n - \Psi_l^{n-1} + \underbrace{\frac{\lambda^2}{2\bar{S}}}_{\lambda = \frac{ck}{h}} \left( S_{l+1/2} \Psi_{l+1}^n - S_{l+1/2} \Psi_{l-1}^n \right. \\
 &\quad \left. - S_{l-1/2} \Psi_{l+1}^n + S_{l-1/2} \Psi_{l-1}^n + S_{l+1/2} \Psi_{l+1}^n + S_{l+1/2} \Psi_{l-1}^n \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + S_{l-1/2} \Psi_{l+1}^n + S_{l-1/2} \Psi_{l-1}^n - 2(S_{l+1/2} + S_{l-1/2}) \Psi_l^n \right), \\
 \Psi_l^{n+1} &= 2\Psi_l^n - \Psi_l^{n-1} + \frac{\lambda^2}{2\bar{S}} \left( 2S_{l+1/2} \Psi_{l+1}^n + 2S_{l-1/2} \Psi_{l-1}^n - 4\bar{S} \Psi_l^n \right), \\
 \Psi_l^{n+1} &= 2\Psi_l^n - \Psi_l^{n-1} + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{l+1/2}}{\bar{S}} \Psi_{l+1}^n + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{l-1/2}}{\bar{S}} \Psi_{l-1}^n - 2\lambda^2 \Psi_l^n, \\
 \Psi_l^{n+1} &= 2(1 - \lambda^2) \Psi_l^n - \Psi_l^{n-1} + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{l+1/2}}{\bar{S}} \Psi_{l+1}^n + \frac{\lambda^2 S_{l-1/2}}{\bar{S}} \Psi_{l-1}^n.
 \end{aligned}$$

## E.2 Boundary terms Webster's equation (Eq. (5.31))

This section derives process of obtaining the values for  $\epsilon_l$  and  $\epsilon_r$  such that the boundary terms in Webster's equation are strictly dissipative.

Starting with the second term in the energy balance in Eq. (5.27):

$$-c^2 \langle \delta_t \cdot \Psi_l^n, \delta_{x-} (S_{l+1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n)) \rangle_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r}. \quad (\text{E.1})$$

Using identity (3.15a)

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f_l^n, \delta_{x-} g_l^n \rangle_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} &= -\langle \delta_{x+} f_l^n, g_l^n \rangle_d + f_N^n g_{N-1}^n - f_0^n g_{-1}^n \\ &\quad + \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} f_N^n (g_N^n - g_{N-1}^n) + \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} f_0^n (g_0^n - g_{-1}^n), \end{aligned}$$

this can be rewritten to (with  $f = \delta_t \cdot \Psi$  and  $g = S_{l+1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi)$ )

$$-c^2 \langle \delta_t \cdot \Psi_l^n, \delta_{x-} (S_{l+1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n)) \rangle_d^{\epsilon_l, \epsilon_r} = c^2 \langle \delta_t \cdot \delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n, (S_{l+1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_l^n)) \rangle_d - b.$$

where

$$b = b_r - b_l \quad (\text{E.2})$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} b_r &= c^2 (\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) \left( S_{N-1/2} \underbrace{(\delta_{x+} \Psi_{N-1}^n)}_{(\delta_{x-} \Psi_N^n)} \right) \\ &\quad + \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} (\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) \left( S_{N+1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_N^n) - S_{N-1/2} \underbrace{(\delta_{x+} \Psi_{N-1}^n)}_{(\delta_{x-} \Psi_N^n)} \right) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} b_l &= c^2 (\delta_t \cdot \Psi_0^n) \left( S_{1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_0^n) \right) \\ &\quad - \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} (\delta_t \cdot \Psi_0^n) \left( S_{1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_0^n) - S_{-1/2} \underbrace{(\delta_{x+} \Psi_{-1}^n)}_{(\delta_{x-} \Psi_0^n)} \right) \end{aligned}$$

which can be rewritten to

$$b_r = c^2 (\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) \left( \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} S_{N+1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_N^n) + \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} \right) S_{N-1/2}(\delta_{x-} \Psi_N^n) \right), \quad (\text{E.3})$$

$$b_l = c^2 (\delta_t \cdot \Psi_0^n) \left( \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} S_{-1/2}(\delta_{x-} \Psi_0^n) + \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_l}{2} \right) S_{1/2}(\delta_{x+} \Psi_0^n) \right). \quad (\text{E.4})$$

Then, for the centred radiating boundary condition in Eq. (5.17) to be strictly dissipative, i.e.,  $\delta_x \cdot \Psi_l^n = 0 \Rightarrow b_r = 0$  the special choice for  $\epsilon_r =$

### E.3. Derivatives for Newton-Raphson for the elasto-plastic friction model (Eq. (8.41))

$S_{N-1/2}/\mu_{xx}S_N$  needs to be made:

$$\begin{aligned}
 b_r &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) \left( \frac{S_{N-1/2}}{2\mu_{xx}S_N} S_{N+1/2}(\delta_{x+}\Psi_N^n) + \left(1 - \frac{S_{N-1/2}}{2\mu_{xx}S_N}\right) S_{N-1/2}(\delta_{x-}\Psi_N^n) \right), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} \left( \frac{S_{N+1/2}}{2\mu_{xx}S_N} (\delta_{x+}\Psi_N^n) + \left(1 - \frac{S_{N-1/2}}{2\mu_{xx}S_N}\right) (\delta_{x-}\Psi_N^n) \right), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} \left( 1 - \frac{S_{N-1/2}}{2\mu_{xx}S_N} \right) \left( \frac{\frac{S_{N+1/2}(\delta_{x+}\Psi_N^n)}{2\mu_{xx}S_N}}{\left(1 - \frac{S_{N-1/2}}{2\mu_{xx}S_N}\right)} + \delta_{x-}\Psi_N^n \right), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} \right) \left( \frac{\frac{S_{N+1/2}(\delta_{x+}\Psi_N^n)}{2\mu_{xx}S_N}}{\frac{2\mu_{xx}S_N - S_{N-1/2}}{2\mu_{xx}S_N}} + \delta_{x-}\Psi_N^n \right), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} \right) \left( \frac{S_{N+1/2}(\delta_{x+}\Psi_N^n)}{2\mu_{xx}S_N - S_{N-1/2}} + \delta_{x-}\Psi_N^n \right), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} \right) \left( \frac{S_{N+1/2}(\delta_{x+}\Psi_N^n)}{S_{N+1/2} + S_{N-1/2} - S_{N-1/2}} + \delta_{x-}\Psi_N^n \right), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} \right) (\delta_{x+}\Psi_N^n + \delta_{x-}\Psi_N^n), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} \right) \left( \frac{1}{h} (\Psi_{N+1}^n - \Psi_N^n + \Psi_N^n - \Psi_{N-1}^n) \right), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} \left( 1 - \frac{\epsilon_r}{2} \right) 2(\delta_x \cdot \Psi_N^n), \\
 &= c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_N^n) S_{N-1/2} (2 - \epsilon_r) (\delta_x \cdot \Psi_N^n).
 \end{aligned} \tag{E.5}$$

The same can be done for  $b_l$  with  $\epsilon_l = S_{1/2}/\mu_{xx}S_0$  to get

$$b_l = c^2(\delta_t \cdot \Psi_0^n) S_{1/2} (2 - \epsilon_l) (\delta_x \cdot \Psi_0^n). \tag{E.6}$$

### E.3 Derivatives for Newton-Raphson for the elasto-plastic friction model (Eq. (8.41))

Recalling the functions needed for to compute the Newton-Raphson iteration for the elasto-plastic bow model in Section 8.5.1, being Eq. (8.38)

$$g_1(v^n, z^n) = \left( \frac{2}{k} + 2\sigma_0 \right) v^n + \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2 \frac{f(v^n, z^n)}{\rho A} + b^n = 0,$$

and Eq. (8.40):

$$g_2(v^n, z^n) = r^n - a^n = 0,$$

the derivatives needed to solve the Newton-Raphson iteration in Eq. (8.41)

$$\begin{bmatrix} v^n \\ z^n \end{bmatrix}_{i+1} = \begin{bmatrix} v^n \\ z^n \end{bmatrix}_i - \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial g_1}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial g_1}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial g_2}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial g_2}{\partial z} \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} g_1 \\ g_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

can be shown to be

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial g_1}{\partial v} &= \frac{2}{k} + 2\sigma_0 + \frac{s_1 \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2}{\rho A} \frac{\partial r}{\partial v} + \frac{s_2 \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2}{\rho A}, \\ \frac{\partial g_1}{\partial z} &= \frac{s_0 \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2}{\rho A} + \frac{s_1 \|J_l(x_B^n)\|_d^2}{\rho A} \frac{\partial r}{\partial z}, \\ \frac{\partial g_2}{\partial v} &= \frac{\partial r}{\partial v} \\ \frac{\partial g_2}{\partial z} &= \frac{\partial r}{\partial z} - \frac{2}{k}. \end{aligned}$$

Recalling from Eq. (8.36) that

$$r^n = r(v^n, z^n) = v^n \left[ 1 - \alpha(v^n, z^n) \frac{z^n}{z_{ss}(v^n)} \right]$$

its derivatives can be computed as

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial r}{\partial v} &= 1 - z^n \left( \frac{(\alpha^n + \frac{\partial \alpha^n}{\partial v} v^n) z_{ss}^n - \frac{\partial z_{ss}^n}{\partial v} \alpha^n v^n}{(z_{ss}^n)^2} \right), \\ \frac{\partial r}{\partial z} &= -\frac{v^n}{z_{ss}^n} \left( \frac{\partial \alpha^n}{\partial z} z^n + \alpha^n \right), \end{aligned}$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \alpha^n}{\partial v} &= \operatorname{sgn}(z_{ss}^n) \frac{\partial z_{ss}^n}{\partial v} \frac{z_{ba} - |z^n|}{(|z_{ss}^n| - z_{ba})^2} \frac{\pi}{2} \cos(\operatorname{sgn}(z^n) \Phi), \\ \frac{\partial \alpha^n}{\partial z} &= \frac{\operatorname{sgn}(z^n) \pi \cos(\operatorname{sgn}(z^n) \Phi)}{2(|z_{ss}^n| - z_{ba})}, \\ \frac{\partial z_{ss}^n}{\partial v} &= -\frac{2|v^n|}{v_S^2 s_0} (f_S - f_C) e^{-(v^n/v_S)^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Digital versions of musical instruments have been created for several decades, and for good reason! They are more compact, more easy to maintain, and less difficult to play than their real-life counterparts. One way to digitise an instrument is to record it and play back the samples, but this does not capture the entire range of expression of the real instrument. Simulating an instrument based on its physics, including its geometry and material properties, is much more flexible to player control. Although it requires more computational power to generate the sound in real time, the simulation could possibly go beyond what is physically possible. A violin growing into a cello, bowing your trumpet, your imagination is the limit...

format the  
blurb